Introduction

Congratulations! Your selection of a 2010 Acura TSX was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the maintenance minder shown in the instrument panel helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Introduction

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders. These devices record front seat belt use, front passenger seat occupancy, airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component. This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠ DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠ WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠ CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Contents

Owner's Identification Form

Your Vehicle at a Glance (main controls) 3

Driver and Passenger Safety (seat belts, SRS, and child protection) 5

Instruments and Controls (indicators, gauges, multi-information display, dashboard, and steering column) 57

Features (climate control, audio, steering wheel, security, cruise control, HomeLink®, and other convenience items) 165

Before Driving (fuel, vehicle break-in, and cargo loading) 345

Driving (engine and transmission operation) 365

Maintenance (minder, fluid checking, minor services, and vehicle storage) 401

Taking Care of the Unexpected (flat tire, jump starting, overheating, and fuses) 457

Technical Information (vehicle specifications, tires, and emissions controls) 485

Warranty and Client Relations (U.S. and Canada only) (warranty and contact information) 505

Authorized Manuals (U.S. only) (how to order) 509

Index I

Service Information Summary (fluid capacities and tire pressures)

00X31-TL1-6100
© 2009 American Honda Motor Co., Inc. - All Rights Reserved

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Overview of Contents

Contents
A convenient reference to the sections in this manual.

Your Vehicle at a Glance
A quick reference to the main controls in your vehicle.

Driver and Passenger Safety
Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.

Instruments and Controls
Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator and gauge, the multi-information display, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.

Features
How to operate the climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.

Before Driving
What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.

Driving
The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park; plus what you need to know if you're planning to tow a trailer.

Maintenance
The maintenance minder shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer for maintenance service. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.

Taking Care of the Unexpected
This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.

Technical Information
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.

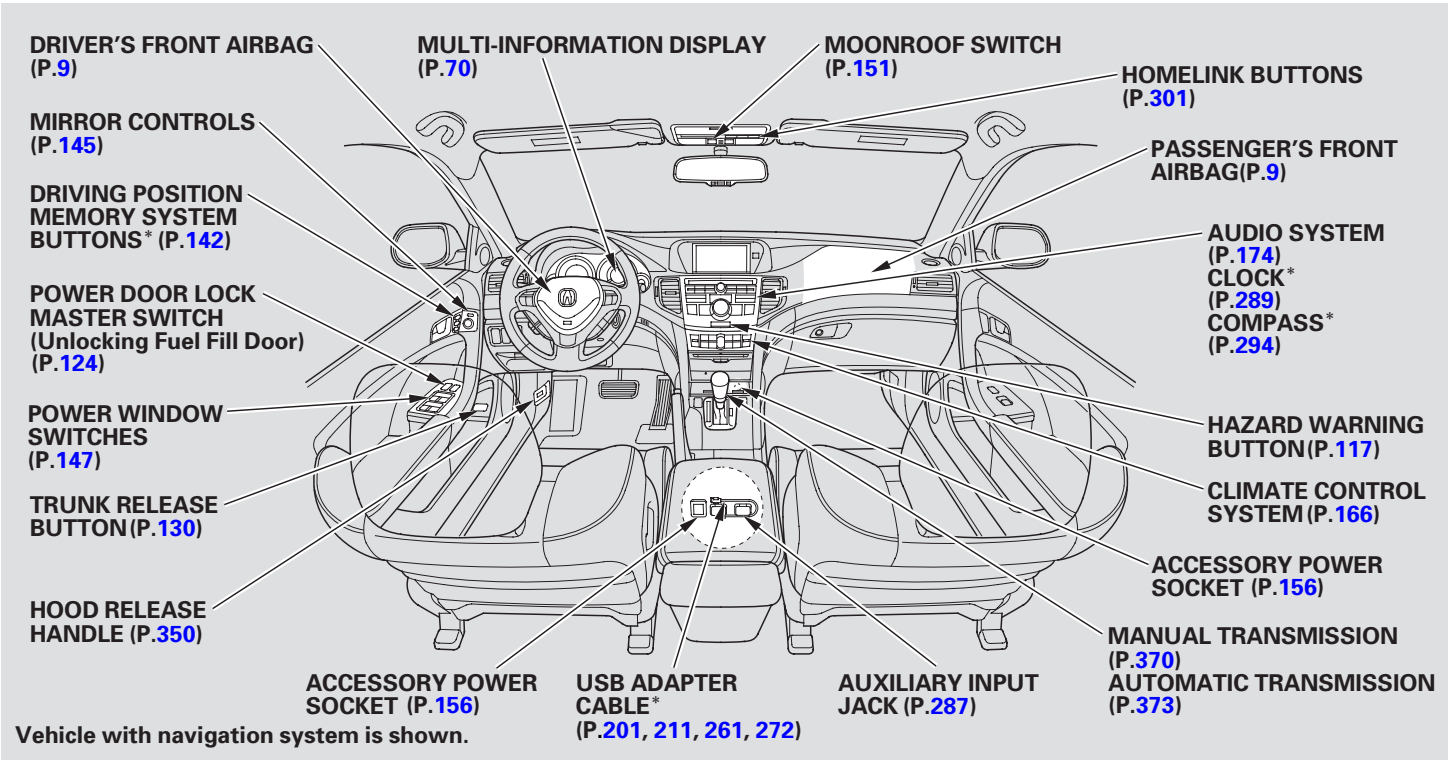
Warranty and Client Relations (U.S. and Canada only)
A summary of the warranties covering your new vehicle, and how to contact us for any reason. Refer to your warranty manual for detailed information.

Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)
How to order manuals and other technical literature.

Index

Service Information Summary
A summary of the information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



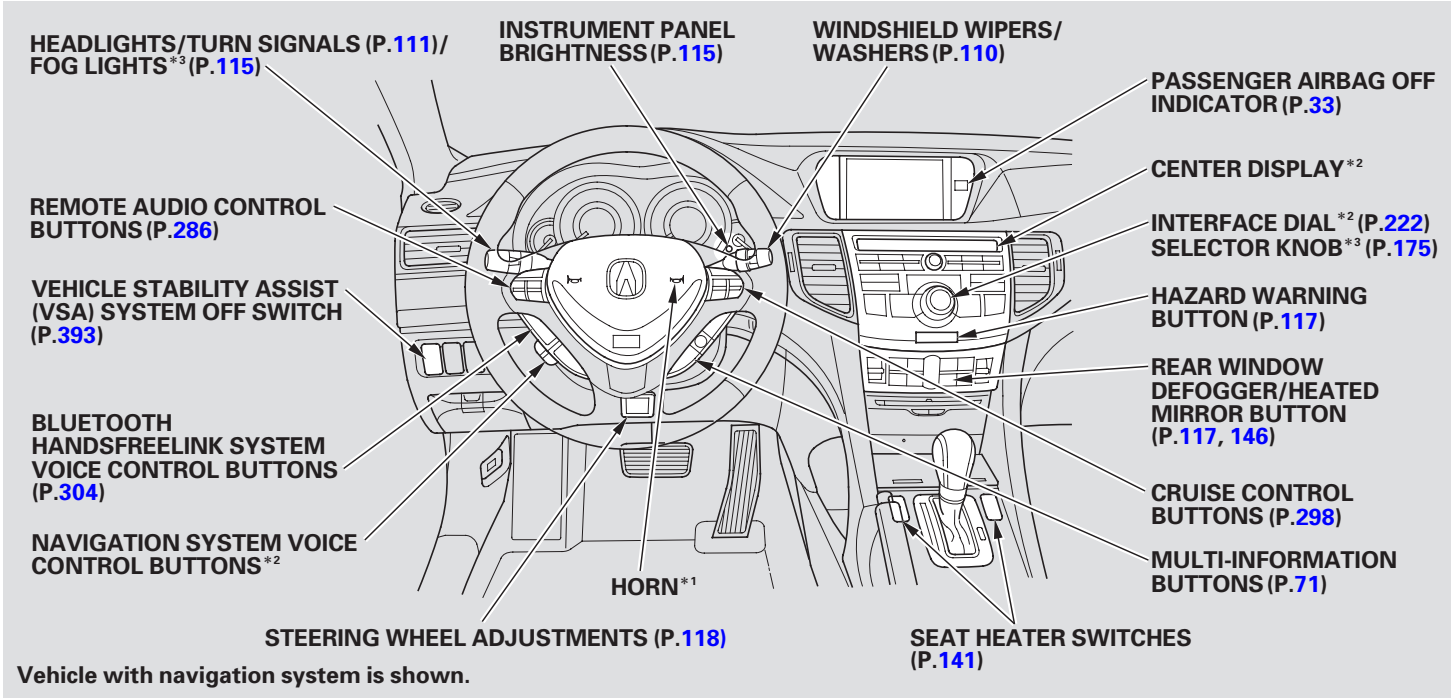
Vehicle with navigation system is shown.

*: If equipped

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle at a Glance


HEADLIGHTS/TURN SIGNALS (P.111)/ FOG LIGHTS*3 (P.115)
INSTRUMENT PANEL BRIGHTNESS (P.115)
WINDSHIELD WIPERS/ WASHERS (P.110)
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P.33)
CENTER DISPLAY*2
INTERFACE DIAL*2 (P.222) SELECTOR KNOB*3 (P.175)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P.117)
REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER/HEATED MIRROR BUTTON (P.117, 146)
CRUISE CONTROL BUTTONS (P.298)
MULTI-INFORMATION BUTTONS (P.71)
REMOTE AUDIO CONTROL BUTTONS (P.286)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM OFF SWITCH (P.393)
BLUETOOTH HANDSFREELINK SYSTEM VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS (P.304)
NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS*2
HORN*1
STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENTS (P.118)
SEAT HEATER SWITCHES (P.141)

Vehicle with navigation system is shown.

*1 : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.
*2 : Only on vehicles equipped with navigation system. Refer to the navigation system manual.
*3 : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions 6
Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 7
  Seat Belts 8
  Airbags 9
Protecting Adults and Teens..... 11
  1. Close and Lock the Doors 11
  2. Adjust the Front Seats 13
  3. Adjust the Seat-Backs 14
  4. Adjust the Head Restraints 14
  5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts 15
  6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position 17
  Advice for Pregnant Women..... 17
  Additional Safety Precautions.... 18
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts 19
  Seat Belt System Components... 19
  Lap/Shoulder Belt 20
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 21
  Seat Belt Maintenance 22
Additional Information About Your Airbags 23
  Airbag System Components..... 23
  How Your Front Airbags Work..... 25
  How Your Side Airbags Work.... 29
  How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work..... 31
  How the SRS Indicator Works... 31
  How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works 32
  How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works 33
  Airbag Service 34
  Additional Safety Precautions.... 34
Protecting Children — General Guidelines..... 36
  All Children Must Be Restrained 36
  All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat 37
  The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks 37
  If You Must Drive with Several Children 39
  If a Child Requires Close Attention 39
  Additional Safety Precautions.... 39
Protecting Infants and Small Children..... 41
  Protecting Infants 41
  Protecting Small Children 42
Selecting a Child Seat..... 43
Installing a Child Seat 44
  With LATCH 46
  With a Lap/Shoulder Belt 48
  With a Tether 50
Protecting Larger Children 51
  Checking Seat Belt Fit 51
  Using a Booster Seat 52
  When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front 53
  Additional Safety Precautions.... 54
Carbon Monoxide Hazard 55
Safety Labels 56

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Important Safety Precautions

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

Always Wear Your Seat Belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 15).

Restrain All Children
Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 36 – 54).

Be Aware of Airbag Hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't Drink and Drive
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

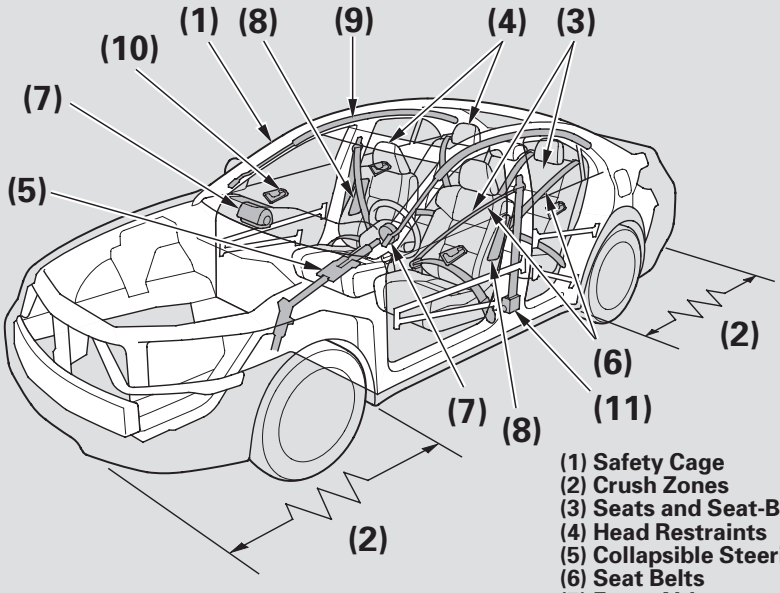
Pay Appropriate Attention to the Task of Driving Safely
Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert attention away from driving.

Control Your Speed
Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition
Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 403).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



(1) Safety Cage
(2) Crush Zones
(3) Seats and Seat-Backs
(4) Head Restraints
(5) Collapsible Steering Column
(6) Seat Belts
(7) Front Airbags
(8) Side Airbags
(9) Side Curtain Airbags
(10) Door Locks
(11) Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in the correct position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

Why Wear Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
  - frontal impacts
  - side impacts
  - rear impacts
  - rollovers
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

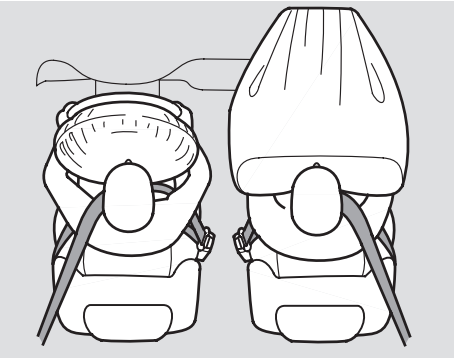
Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

What You Should Do:

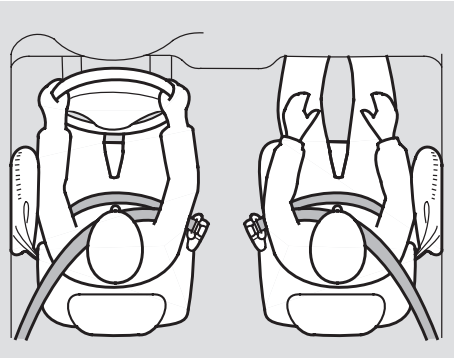
Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

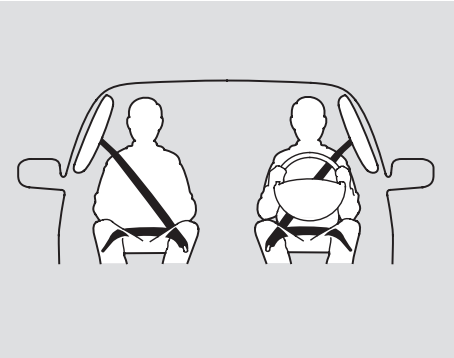
Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 25 for more information on how your front airbags work).



Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 29 for more information on how your side airbags work).



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 31 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear impacts, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers, and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front.

See pages 36 – 54 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

1. Close and Lock the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors are closed and locked.

Your vehicle has a door/trunk open indicator (red) on the instrument panel to indicate when any door or the trunk lid is not tightly closed.

See page 124 for how to lock the doors, and page 65 for how the door/trunk open indicator works.

Your vehicle also has a door and trunk open indicator on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the trunk is not tightly closed. You will see the appropriate indicator(s) for each condition.

You will also hear a beep when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and each time you open any door or the trunk with the key in the ON (II) position.

The above illustration shows that all doors and the trunk are open.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

When the trunk is not tightly closed, this indicator will come on.

When one or more doors or the trunk lid are not tightly closed, the corresponding indicator for each condition will come on.

The above example shows the front right and rear left doors, and the trunk open.

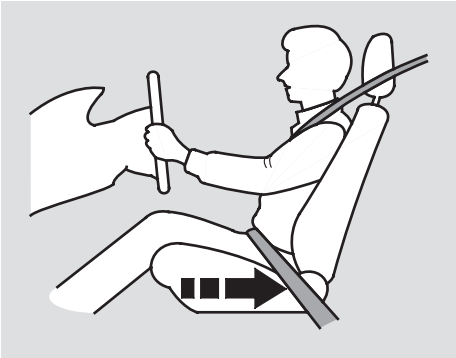
Locking the doors reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the vehicle during a crash, and it helps prevent passengers from accidentally opening a door and falling out.

Locking the doors also helps prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

Your vehicle has the auto door locking/unlocking feature. For more information, see page 99 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2.Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest. In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, and in and out (see page 118).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

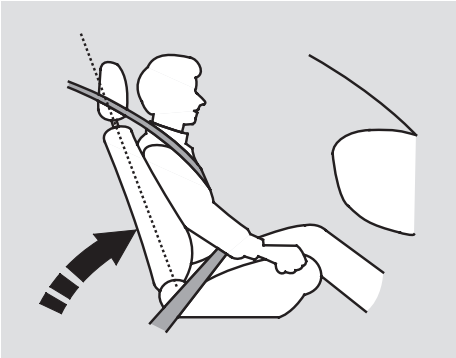
See page 134 for how to adjust the front seats.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

3.Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

⚠WARNING

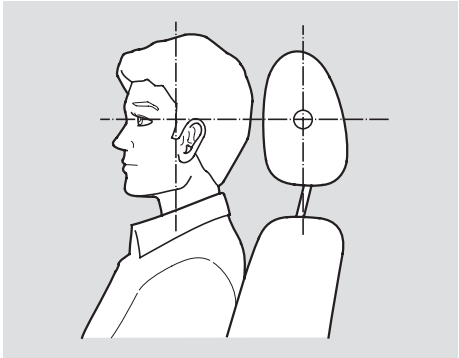
Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 134 for how to adjust the seat-backs.

4.Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the center of the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Have passengers adjust their head restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 136 for how to adjust the head restraints and how the driver's and front passenger's active head restraints work.

5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

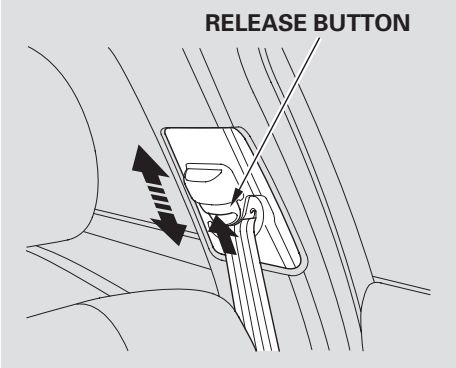
This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, press and hold the release button and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work properly, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt. Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 19 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Two people should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on seat belts.*** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- ***Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.*** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- ***Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.*** Objects on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG" could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- ***Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.*** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbag inflates.
- ***Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.*** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt System Components
Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.

This system uses the same sensors as the front airbags to monitor whether the front seat belts are latched or unlatched, and how much weight is on the front passenger's seat (see pages 27 and 28).

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

This system monitors the front seat belts. If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

You will also see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" message on the multi-information display.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

In addition to the seat belt reminder indicator in the instrument panel, you will also see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" or "FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT" message. This remains displayed if you ignore it and do not fasten the seat belt while driving.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when the driver's seat belt is latched and there is no front seat passenger and no items on the front seat, something may be interfering with the monitoring system. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object(s) hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object(s) touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lap/Shoulder Belt
The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 15 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

The seat belts in all positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat (see page 48).

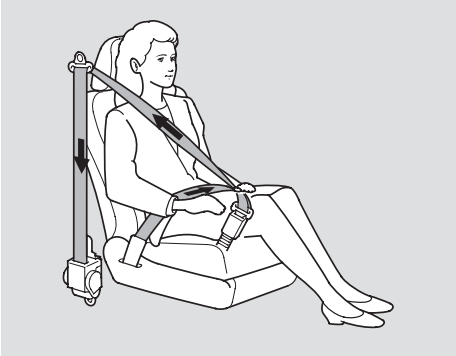
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to deploy.

If a side curtain airbag deploys during a side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle will also deploy.

The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not deploy*. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the extra tension in the seat belt could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt Maintenance
For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 441). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

Acura provides a limited warranty on seat belts. See your *Acura Warranty Information* booklet for details.

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by your dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

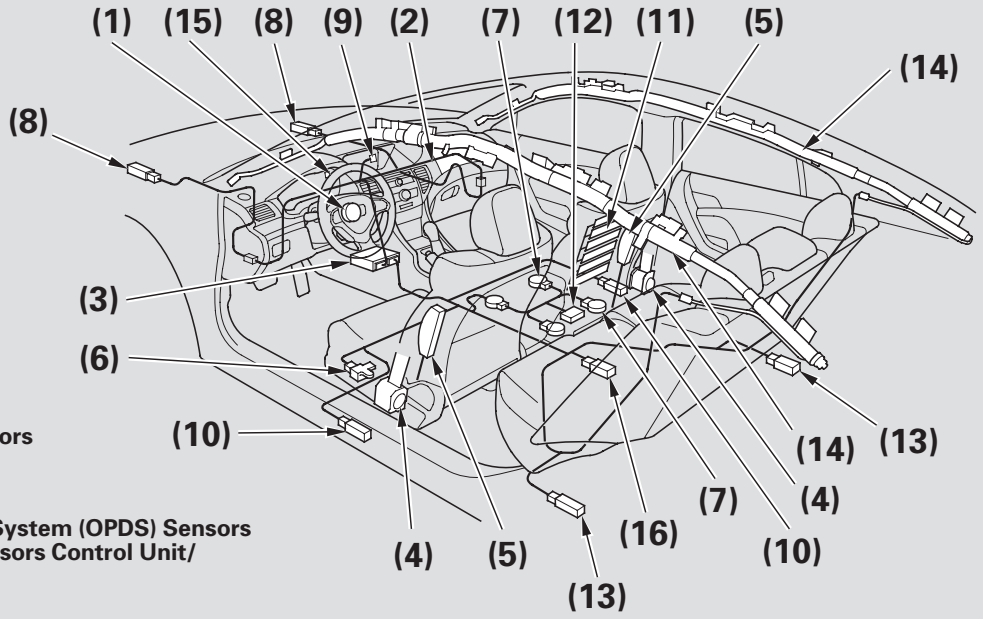
⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag System Components



(1) Driver's Front Airbag
(2) Passenger's Front Airbag
(3) Control Unit
(4) Front Seat Belt Tensioners
(5) Side Airbags
(6) Driver's Seat Position Sensor
(7) Front Passenger's Weight Sensors
(8) Front Impact Sensors
(9) Passenger Airbag Off Indicator
(10) Side Impact Sensors (First)
(11) Occupant Position Detection System (OPDS) Sensors
(12) Front Passenger's Weight Sensors Control Unit/ OPDS Sensors Control Unit
(13) Side Impact Sensors (Second)
(14) Side Curtain Airbags
(15) Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator
(16) Safing Sensor

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

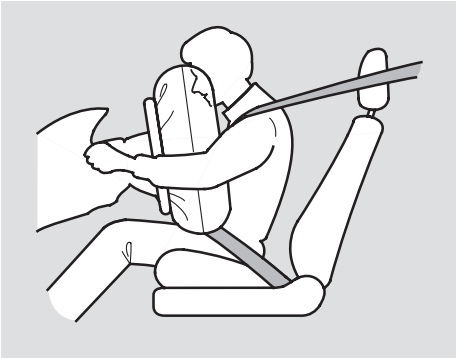
Your airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 25).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 29).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 31).
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 21).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact or side impact.
- Sensors that can detect whether a child is in the passenger's side airbag path and signal the control unit to turn the airbag off (see page 30).
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and the front passenger's seat belt are latched or unlatched (see page 19).
- A driver's seat position sensor that monitors the distance of the seat from the front airbag. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force (see page 27).
- Weight sensors that monitor the weight on the front passenger's seat. If the weight is about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child), the passenger's front airbag will be turned off (see page 28).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners (see page 31).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been turned off (see page 32).
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off (see page 33).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the driver's and front passenger's airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

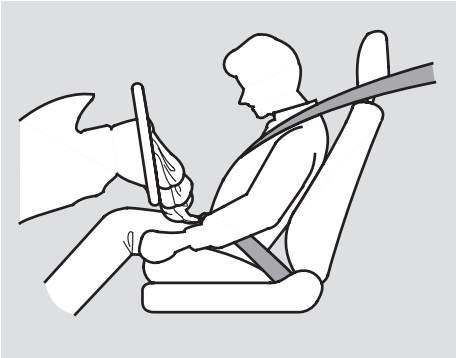
This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

Only the driver's airbag will deploy if there is no passenger in the front seat, or if the advanced airbag system has turned the passenger's airbag off (see page 28).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags



After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Dual-Stage Airbags

Your front airbags are dual-stage airbags. This means they have two inflation stages that can be ignited sequentially or simultaneously, depending on crash severity.

In a ***more severe*** crash, both stages will ignite simultaneously to provide the quickest and greatest protection.

In a ***less severe*** crash, one stage will ignite first, then the second stage will ignite a split second later. This provides longer airbag inflation time with a little less force.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Dual-Threshold Airbags
Your front airbags are also dual-threshold airbags. Airbags with this feature have two deployment thresholds that depend on whether sensors detect the occupant is wearing a seat belt or not.

If the occupant's belt is ***not latched***, the airbag will deploy at a slightly lower threshold, because the occupant would need extra protection.

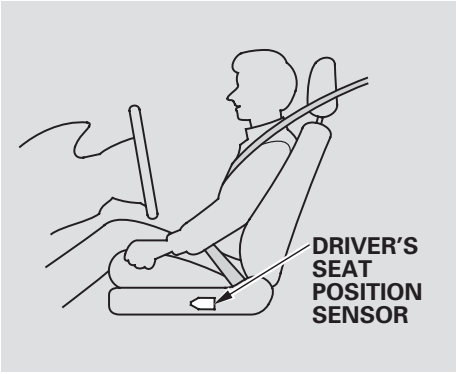
If the occupant's belt is ***latched***, the airbag will inflate at a slightly higher threshold, when the airbag would be needed to supplement the protection provided by the seat belt.

Advanced Airbags
Your front airbags are also advanced airbags. The main purpose of this feature is to help prevent airbag-caused injuries to short drivers and children or small-statured adults who ride in front.

For both advanced airbags to work properly:

- Occupants must sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not spill any liquids on or under the seats, cover the sensors, or put any objects or metal items under the front seats.

Failure to follow these instructions could damage the sensors or prevent them from working properly.



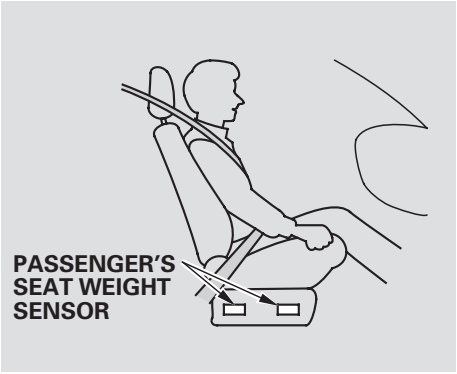
The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor under the seat. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

If there is a problem with the sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and the airbag will inflate in the normal manner regardless of the driver's seating position.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors under the seat. Although Acura does not encourage carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of an infant or small child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off.

Be aware that objects placed on the passenger's seat can also cause the airbag to be turned off.

When the passenger airbag gets turned off by the weight sensors, a "passenger airbag off" indicator in the center of the dashboard comes on (see page 33).

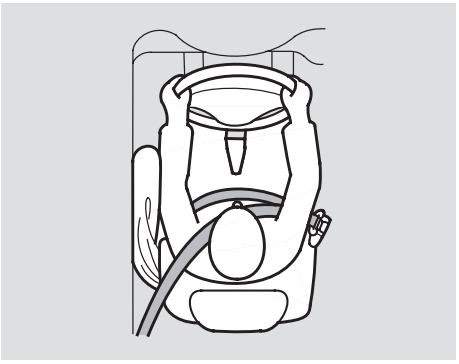
If the weight sensors detect there is no passenger in the front seat, the airbag is automatically turned off. However, the passenger airbag off indicator in this situation will not come on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To ensure that the passenger's advanced front airbag system will work properly, ***do not do anything that would increase or decrease the weight on the front passenger's seat.*** This includes:

- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- Moving the front seat or seat-back forcibly back against cargo on the seat or floor behind it.
- Hanging heavy items on the front passenger seat, or placing heavy items in the seat-back pocket.
- Moving the front seat or seat-back forcibly back against the folded rear seat.
- Back seat passengers should not wedge objects or intentionally force their feet under the front passenger seat.
- Also, make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is properly positioned on the floor (see page 441). If it is not, the mat may interfere with the proper operation of the front passenger's seat and its sensors.

How Your Side Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Side Airbag Cutoff System

Your vehicle has a side airbag cutoff system designed primarily to protect a child riding in the front passenger's seat.

Although Acura does not encourage children to ride in front, if the position sensors detect a child has leaned into the side airbag's deployment path, the airbag will shut off.

The side airbag may also shut off if a short adult leans sideways, or a larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the airbag's deployment path.

Objects placed on the front passenger seat can also cause the side airbag to be shut off.

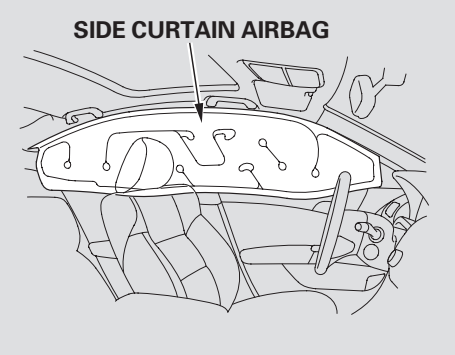
If the side airbag off indicator comes on (see page 32), have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the airbag's deployment path, the system will turn the airbag back on, and the indicator will go out.

There will be some delay between the moment the passenger moves into or out of the airbag deployment path and when the indicator comes on or goes off.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or another object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work



In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner on the driver's or the passenger's side of the vehicle.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate to severe frontal collision which causes the front airbags to deploy.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

How the SRS Indicator Works

The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags or seat belt tensioners.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

You will also see a "CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

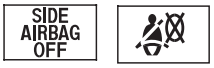
If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

U.S. Canada



How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works

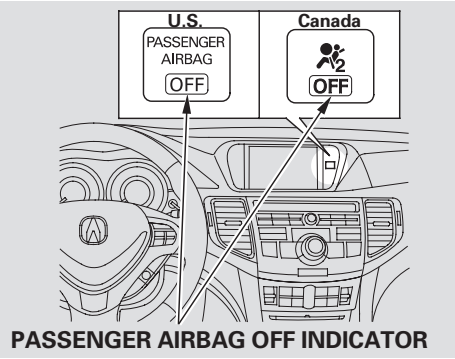
This indicator alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been automatically shut off. It does ***not*** mean there is a problem with your side airbags.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the indicator should come on briefly and then go out (see page 62). If it doesn't come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, have the system checked.

You will also see a "PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF" message on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works



PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR

This indicator alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been shut off because weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child) on the front passenger's seat. It does ***not mean*** there is a problem with the airbag.

Be aware that objects placed on the front seat can cause the indicator to come on.

If no weight is detected on the front seat, the airbag will be automatically shut off. However, the indicator will not come on.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

If an adult or teenage passenger is riding in front, move the seat as far to the rear as possible, and have the passenger sit upright and wear the seat belt properly.

If the indicator comes on with no front seat passenger and no objects on the seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object(s) touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag Service

Your airbag systems are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- ***An airbag ever inflates.*** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.

  Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by an authorized dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.

- ***The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.*** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

- ***If your vehicle has a moderate to severe impact.*** Even if your airbags do not inflate, your dealer should inspect the driver's seat position sensor, the front passenger's weight sensors, the front seat belt tensioners, and all seat belts and their anchors worn during a crash to make sure they are operating properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.*** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

- ***Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason.*** Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.

- ***Do not expose the front passenger's seat-back to liquid.*** If water or another liquid soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ***Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting your dealer.*** This could make the driver's seat position sensor or the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact Acura Client Services at 800-382-2238.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines

Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

All Children Must Be Restrained

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle (see pages 41 — 50).

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly (see pages 51 — 54).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat

According to accident statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children aged 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat. Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Children who ride in back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating front airbag when they ride in the back.

The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Even though your vehicle has an advanced front airbag system that automatically turns the passenger's front airbag off under certain circumstances (see page 33), please follow these guidelines:

Infants

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag. If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

Small Children

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

Larger Children

Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag. Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 51 for important information about protecting larger children).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

U.S. Models

SUN VISORS

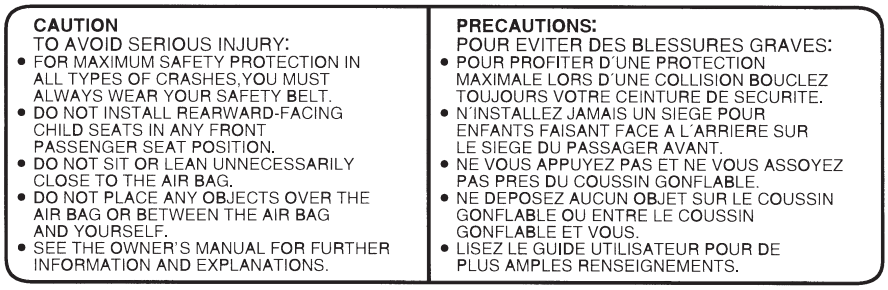
AIR BAG WARNING
FLIP VISOR OVER
WARNING
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
The back seat is the safest place for children
Never put a rear facing child seat in the front
Always use seat belts and child restraints
See owner's manual for more information about air bags

DASHBOARD

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags
Even with Advanced Air Bags
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
The back seat is the safest place for children.
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
Always use seat belts and child restraints.
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.
To be removed by owner only.

Canadian Models

SUN VISORS


CAUTION
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
• FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES,YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
• DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
• DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
• DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
• SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.
PRECAUTIONS:
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
• POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
• N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
• NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
• NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
• LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has a back seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 51).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 134).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 17).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 15).

If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in a back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- ***Never let two children use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines

- ***Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.*** If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 48 and 49 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)

- ***Use the childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the rear doors.*** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 125).

- ***Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.*** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states, Canadian provinces and territories, and can be very hazardous.

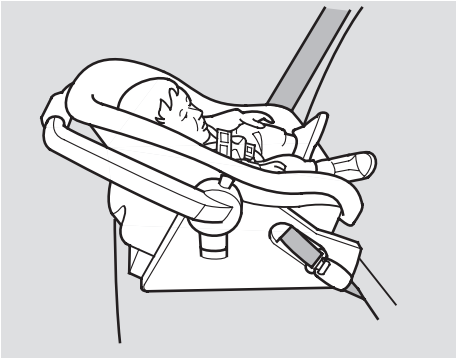
  For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

- ***Lock all doors and the trunk when your vehicle is not in use.*** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles. Know how to operate the emergency trunk opener and decide if your children should be shown how to use this feature (see page 132).

- ***Keep vehicle keys/remote transmitters out of the reach of children.*** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the trunk, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants



Child Seat Type
An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the child reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby's head, neck, and back.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position. If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

Rear-facing Child Seat Placement
A rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.***

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants and Small Children

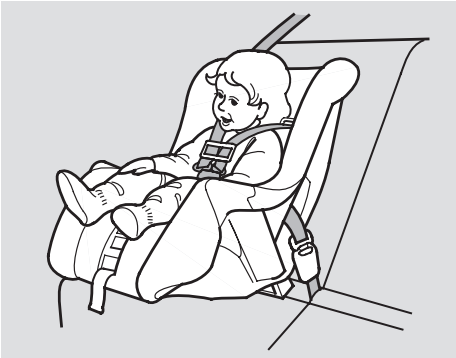
In any of these situations, we strongly recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a collision.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

Protecting Small Children



Child Seat Type

Many states, Canadian provinces and territories allow a child one year of age or older who also meets the minimum size and weight requirements to transition from a rear-facing child seat to a forward facing seat. Know the requirements where you are driving and follow the child seat instructions. Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat up to age two, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child use the child seat until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the seat.

Child Seat Placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a back seat, not the front.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants and Small Children, Selecting a Child Seat

Even with advanced front airbags, which can automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off (see page 33), a back seat is the safest place for a small child.

If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Selecting a Child Seat

When buying a child seat, you need to choose either a conventional child seat, or one designed for use with the Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH) system.

Conventional child seats must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas LATCH-compatible seats are secured by attaching the seat to hardware built into the two outer seating positions in the back seat.

Since LATCH-compatible child seats are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting a Child Seat, Installing a Child Seat

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of seat you choose, to provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:

1. ***The child seat should meet Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.*** Look for FMVSS 213 or CMVSS 213 on the box.

2. ***The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.*** Rear-facing for infants, forward-facing for small children.

3. ***The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Before purchasing a conventional child seat, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the seat in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the seat will be used.

Installing a Child Seat

After selecting a proper child seat and a good place to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

1. ***Properly secure the child seat to the vehicle.*** All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

2. ***Make sure the child seat is firmly secured.*** After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A child seat secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be "rock solid." Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat's effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured.

3. Secure the child in the child seat. Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker's instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide guidelines on how to properly install a child seat. A forward-facing child seat is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for rear-facing child seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat

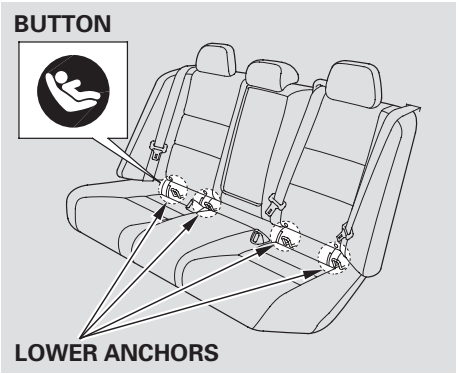
Installing a Child Seat with LATCH

Your vehicle is equipped with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) at the outer rear seats.

The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

The location of each lower anchor is indicated by a small button above the anchor point.

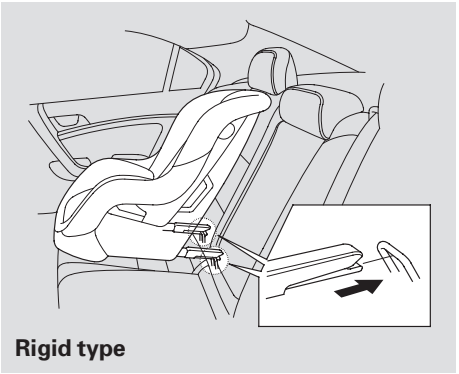
You can find lower anchors in the slits in the seat-backs.



To install a LATCH-compatible child seat:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchors.

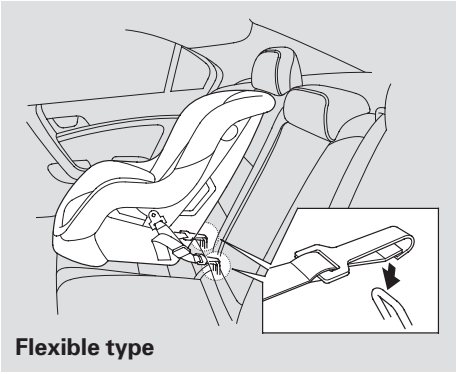
2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.



3. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the child seat maker's instructions.

   Some LATCH-compatible seats have a rigid-type connector as shown above.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

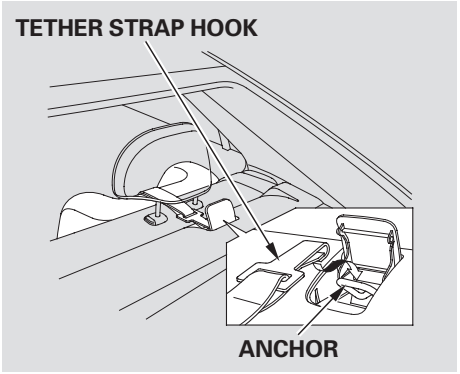


Flexible type

Other LATCH-compatible seats have a flexible-type connector as shown above.

4. Whatever type you have, follow the child seat maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.

5. Set the head restraint to its highest position.



6. Route the tether strap through the legs of the head restraint and over the seat-back, making sure the strap is not twisted.

7. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor, then tighten the strap as instructed by the child seat maker.

8. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/ Shoulder Belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/ shoulder belt.

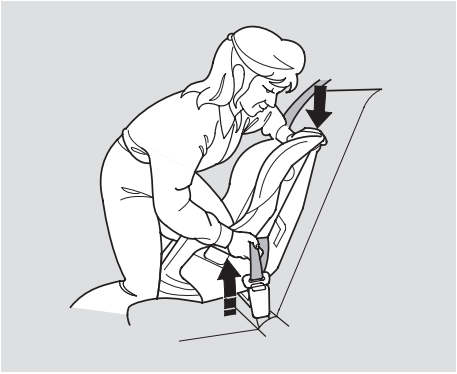
In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat.

1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle and remove any slack from the lap portion of the belt.

2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

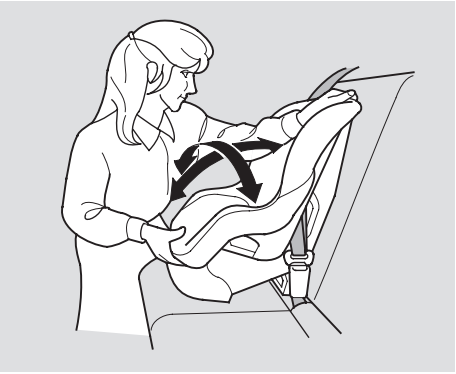
3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure.

   To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat while pulling up on the belt.



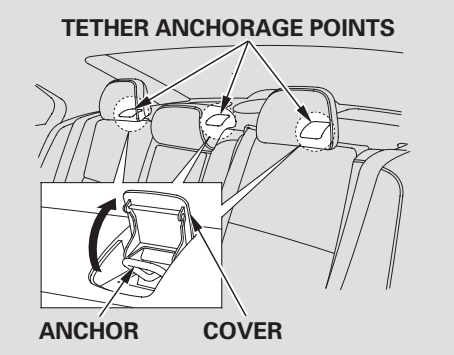
5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat

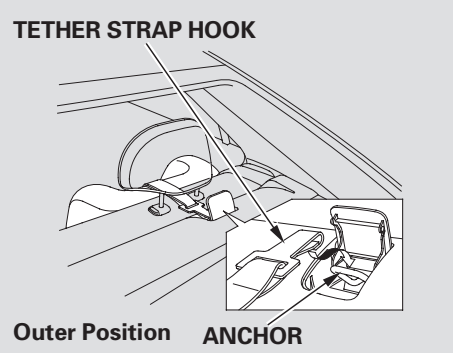
Installing a Child Seat with a Tether



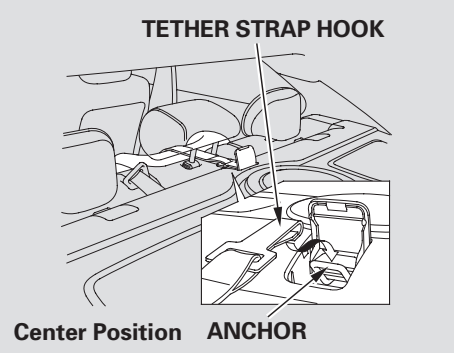
A child seat with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the back seat, using one of the anchorage points shown above.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.

Using an Anchor



1. Set the head restraint to its highest position.
2. After properly securing the child seat (see page 48), route the tether strap over the seat-back and through the head restraint legs.



3. Lift the anchor cover, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker's instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a forward-facing child seat, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear the lap/shoulder belt.

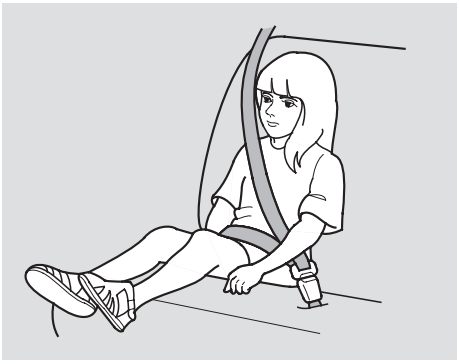
The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.

Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?

4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?

5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

Using a Booster Seat

A child who has outgrown a forward-facing child seat should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Some states, Canadian provinces and territories also require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the states, provinces and territories where you intend to drive.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets federal safety standards (see page 44) and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

Physical Size

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 15 and 51). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

Maturity

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly positioned and secured.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.
- ***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.
- ***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in a collision that may have damaged the underside.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the trunk open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the climate control system as follows:

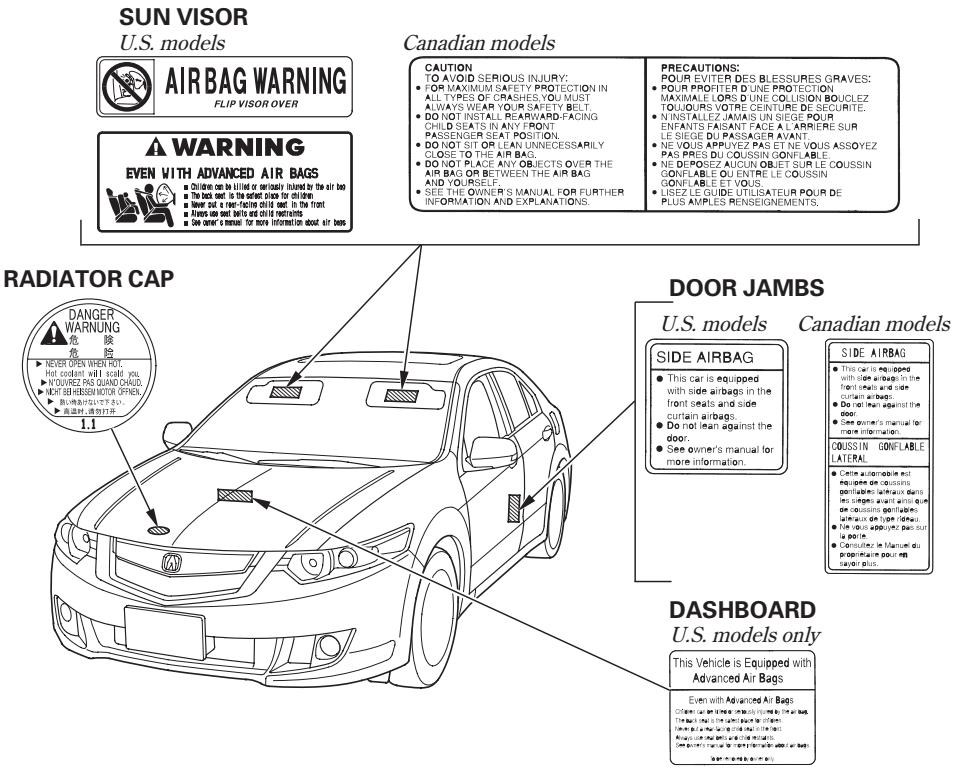
1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact your dealer for a replacement.


SUN VISOR
U.S. models
AIR BAG WARNING
FLIP VISOR OVER
WARNING
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS
Canadian models
CAUTION
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.
PRECAUTIONS:
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SÉCURITÉ.
N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE À L'ARRIÈRE SUR LE SIÈGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRÈS DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
NE DÉPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.
RADIATOR CAP
DANGER
WARNUNG
NEVER OPEN WHEN HOT.
Hot coolant will scald you.
N'OUVREZ PAS QUAND CHAUD.
NICHT BEI HEISSEM MOTOR ÖFFNEN.
1.1
DOOR JAMBS
U.S. models
SIDE AIRBAG
This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
Do not lean against the door.
See owner's manual for more information.
Canadian models
SIDE AIRBAG
COUSSIN GONFLABLE LATERAL
DASHBOARD
U.S. models only
This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags
Even with Advanced Air Bags

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

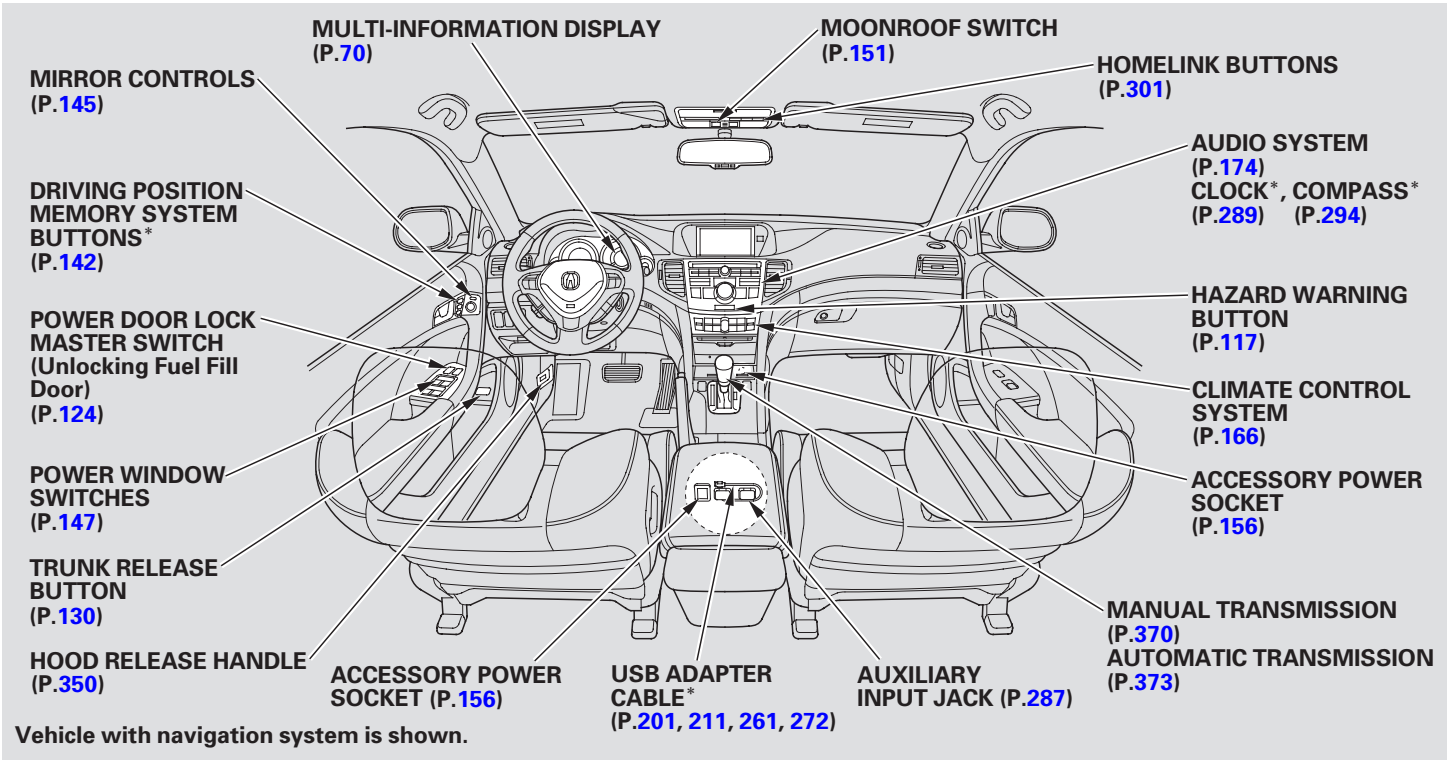
Instruments and Controls

This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations 58
Instrument Panel 59
Instrument Panel Indicators..... 60
Gauges 68
Multi-Information Display 70
Controls Near the Steering Wheel 109
Windshield Wipers and Washers 110
Turn Signals and Headlights..... 111
Automatic Lighting Off Feature..... 113
Daytime Running Lights 114
Fog Lights 115
Instrument Panel Brightness 115
Hazard Warning Button..... 117
Rear Window Defogger 117
Steering Wheel Adjustments 118
Keys and Locks..... 119
Immobilizer System..... 121
Ignition Switch 122
Door Locks 124
Childproof Door Locks 125
Remote Transmitter..... 126
Trunk..... 130
Trunk Main Switch..... 131
Emergency Trunk Opener 132
Seats 134
Power Seat Adjustments..... 134
Driver's Lumbar Support..... 135
Head Restraints 135
Folding the Rear Seats..... 138
Seat Heaters 141
Driving Position Memory System..... 142
Mirrors..... 145
Adjusting the Power Mirrors ... 145
Power Mirror Heaters..... 146
Power Windows 147
Moonroof 151
Parking Brake 153
Interior Convenience Items..... 154
Beverage Holders..... 155
Accessory Power Sockets..... 156
Console Compartment 156
Glove Box 157
Sunglasses Holder 158
Sun Visors..... 159
Vanity Mirror 159
Driver's Pocket 159
Center Pockets..... 160
Coat Hook..... 160
Interior Lights..... 161

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

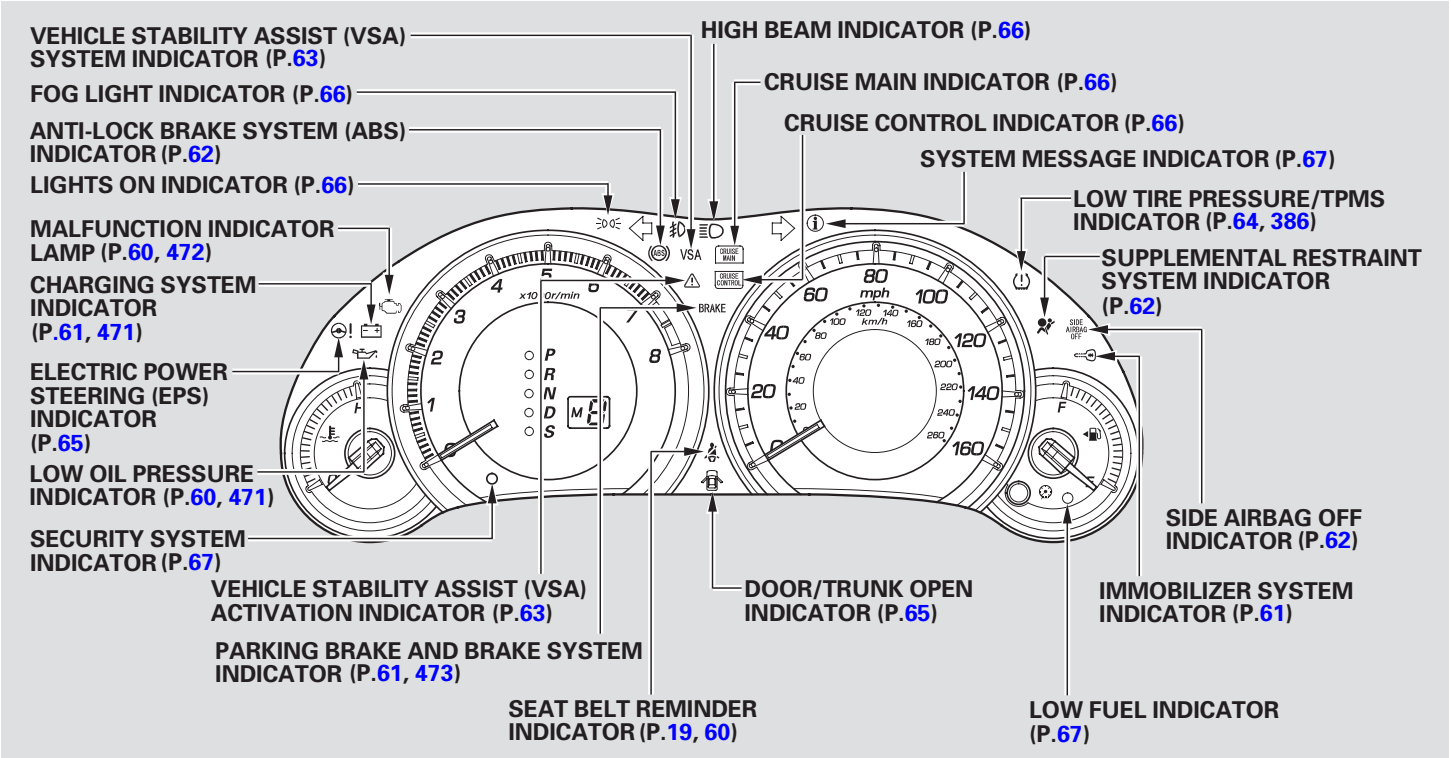
Control Locations


MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY (P.70)
MOONROOF SWITCH (P.151)
MIRROR CONTROLS (P.145)
HOMELINK BUTTONS (P.301)
AUDIO SYSTEM (P.174)
CLOCK*, COMPASS* (P.289) (P.294)
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM BUTTONS* (P.142)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P.117)
POWER DOOR LOCK MASTER SWITCH (Unlocking Fuel Fill Door) (P.124)
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (P.166)
POWER WINDOW SWITCHES (P.147)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKET (P.156)
TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON (P.130)
MANUAL TRANSMISSION (P.370)
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (P.373)
HOOD RELEASE HANDLE (P.350)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKET (P.156)
USB ADAPTER CABLE* (P.201, 211, 261, 272)
AUXILIARY INPUT JACK (P.287)

Vehicle with navigation system is shown.

*: If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.63)
FOG LIGHT INDICATOR (P.66)
ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS) INDICATOR (P.62)
LIGHTS ON INDICATOR (P.66)
MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (P.60, 472)
CHARGING SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.61, 471)
ELECTRIC POWER STEERING (EPS) INDICATOR (P.65)
LOW OIL PRESSURE INDICATOR (P.60, 471)
SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.67)
HIGH BEAM INDICATOR (P.66)
CRUISE MAIN INDICATOR (P.66)
CRUISE CONTROL INDICATOR (P.66)
SYSTEM MESSAGE INDICATOR (P.67)
LOW TIRE PRESSURE/TPMS INDICATOR (P.64, 386)
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.62)
SIDE AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P.62)
IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.61)
LOW FUEL INDICATOR (P.67)
DOOR/TRUNK OPEN INDICATOR (P.65)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) ACTIVATION INDICATOR (P.63)
PARKING BRAKE AND BRAKE SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.61, 473)
SEAT BELT REMINDER INDICATOR (P.19, 60)
VSA
BRAKE
P R N D S
mph
km/h

The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.

Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

You will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If your front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator comes on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either of you do not fasten your seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals, and you will see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 19 .

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

You will also see a “CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 472 .

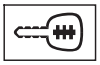
Low Oil Pressure Indicator

The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running, and you will see a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 471 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged, and you will also see a “CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 471 .



Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have inserted a properly coded ignition key. If it is not a properly coded key, the indicator will blink, and the engine’s fuel system will be disabled (see page 121).

U.S. Canada

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the rear brakes, axles, and tires.

   If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display (see page 153).

2. If it stays on after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. You will also see a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” or “CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 473 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ABS. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. You will also see a “CHECK ABS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 384 .

Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, passenger’s side airbag cutoff system, side curtain airbags, automatic seat belt tensioners, driver’s seat position sensor, or the front passenger’s weight sensors. You will also see a “CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 31 .

U.S. Canada

Side Airbag Off Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger’s side airbag has automatically shut off. You will also see a “PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 32 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position.

If it comes on and stays on at any other time, or it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see a “CHECK VSA SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. For more information, see page 392 .

VSA Activation Indicator

This indicator has three functions:

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 392).
3. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see a “CHECK VSA SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. For more information, see page 392 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

This indicator has two functions:

1. If it comes on while driving, it indicates that one or more of your vehicle's tires are significantly low on pressure.

You will also see a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message on the multi-information display (see page 388).

Check the tire pressure monitor on the multi-information display and determine the cause (see page 388).

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tire has lost pressure on the multi-information display, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tire, have the flat tire repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tires are underinflated, call a professional towing service. For more information, see page 482 .

2. If this indicator begins to flash, there is a problem with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS). You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. The indicator continues to flash for a while (approximately 1 minute), then stays on. If this happens, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible. For more information, see page 389 .

Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If an indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see pages 434 and 435). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signal indicators and all turn signals on the outside of the vehicle flash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the electric power steering system.

If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. The indicator will stay on, but should go off after driving a short distance. If it does not go off, or comes back on again while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, the EPS may be turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.

If you turn the steering wheel to the full left or right position repeatedly while stopping or driving at very low speed, you may feel slightly harder steering in order to prevent damage to the steering box caused by overheating.

You will also see a "CHECK POWER STEERING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

Door/Trunk Open Indicator

This indicator comes on red if any door or the trunk lid is not closed tightly.

You will also see a corresponding indicator(s) on the multi-information display to indicate which door and/or the trunk is not closed tightly (see page 11).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Lights On Indicator

This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the or position. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver's door.

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
This indicator will also come on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically.

High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page 111.

This indicator also comes on with reduced brightness when the daytime running lights (DRL) are on (see page 114).

Fog Light Indicator

If equipped
This indicator comes on when you turn on the fog lights. For more information, see page 115 .

Cruise Main Indicator

CRUISE MAIN

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button on the steering wheel (see page 298).

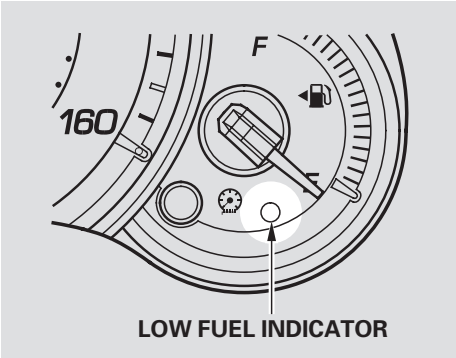
Cruise Control Indicator

CRUISE CONTROL

This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page 298 for information on operating the cruise control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Fuel Indicator



LOW FUEL INDICATOR

This indicator is in the fuel gauge. It comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon. You will also see a "FUEL LOW" message on the multi-information display.

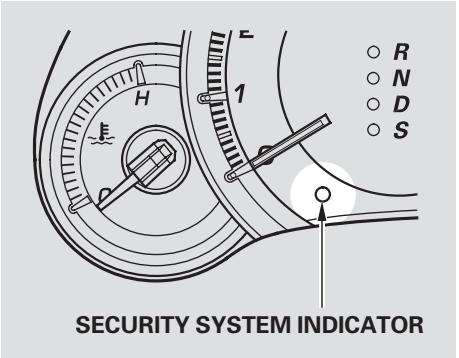
When the indicator comes on, there are about 2.8 U.S. gal (10.5 ℓ) of fuel remaining in the tank.
When the needle reaches E, there is a very small amount of fuel in the tank.

System Message Indicator

This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel (see page 71) to see the message (see page 79).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, SRS indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.

Security System Indicator

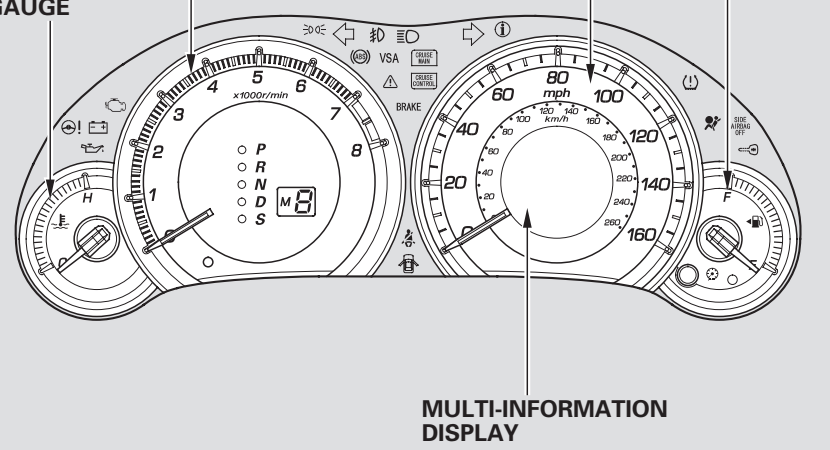


SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR

This indicator comes on when the security system is set. For more information, see page 292 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gauges



U.S. model is shown.

Fuel Gauge
This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount. The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition.

NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Temperature Gauge
This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise from the bottom mark to about the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the pointer may rise to the upper zone. If it reaches the red (hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. Turn to page 469 for instructions and precautions on checking the engine cooling system.

If the pointer of the temperature gauge reaches to or above the red mark, you will also see the "WATER TEMP HOT" message on the multi-information display. This will alert you that the engine should be cooled down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

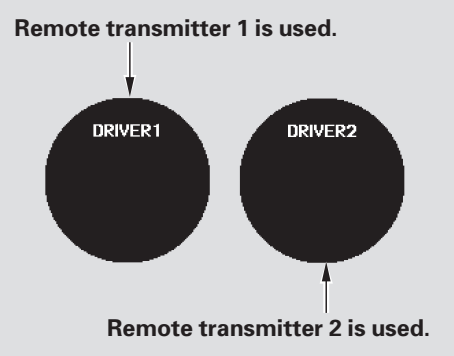
Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display in the instrument panel displays various information and messages when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. Some of the messages help you operate your vehicle more comfortably. Others help to keep you aware of the periodic maintenance your vehicle needs for continued trouble-free driving.

There are three types of messages: normal display messages, engine oil life and maintenance messages, and system messages.

You can select the displayed language and also customize some vehicle control settings to your liking with the multi-information display and the three buttons on the steering wheel (see page 71).

Normal Display Messages



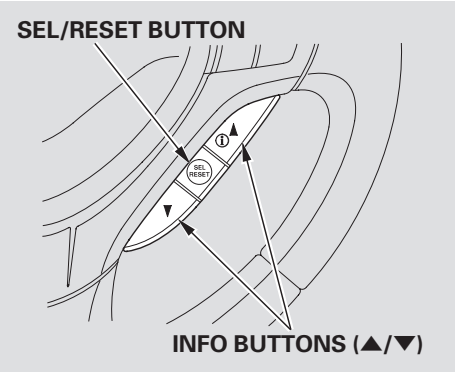
When you unlock and open the driver's door, the display shows "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2" depending on which remote transmitter you use.

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
The driver's seat moves to the position stored in that remote transmitter (see page 142).

If you do not fasten your seat belt, you will see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" message on the multi-information display when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

These messages go off several seconds after the key is inserted into the ignition switch.

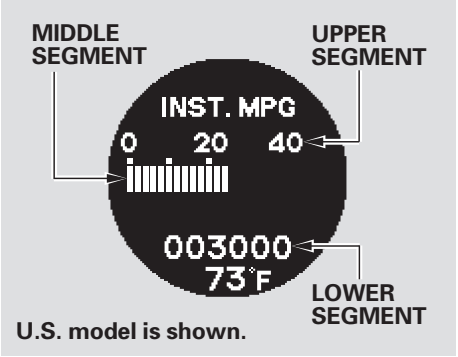
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the multi-information display changes as shown on the next page each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button or the SEL/RESET button.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, your last selection is displayed.

In the multi-information display, the system message is also displayed (see page 78) and you can customize your vehicle control settings (see page 81).



U.S. model is shown.

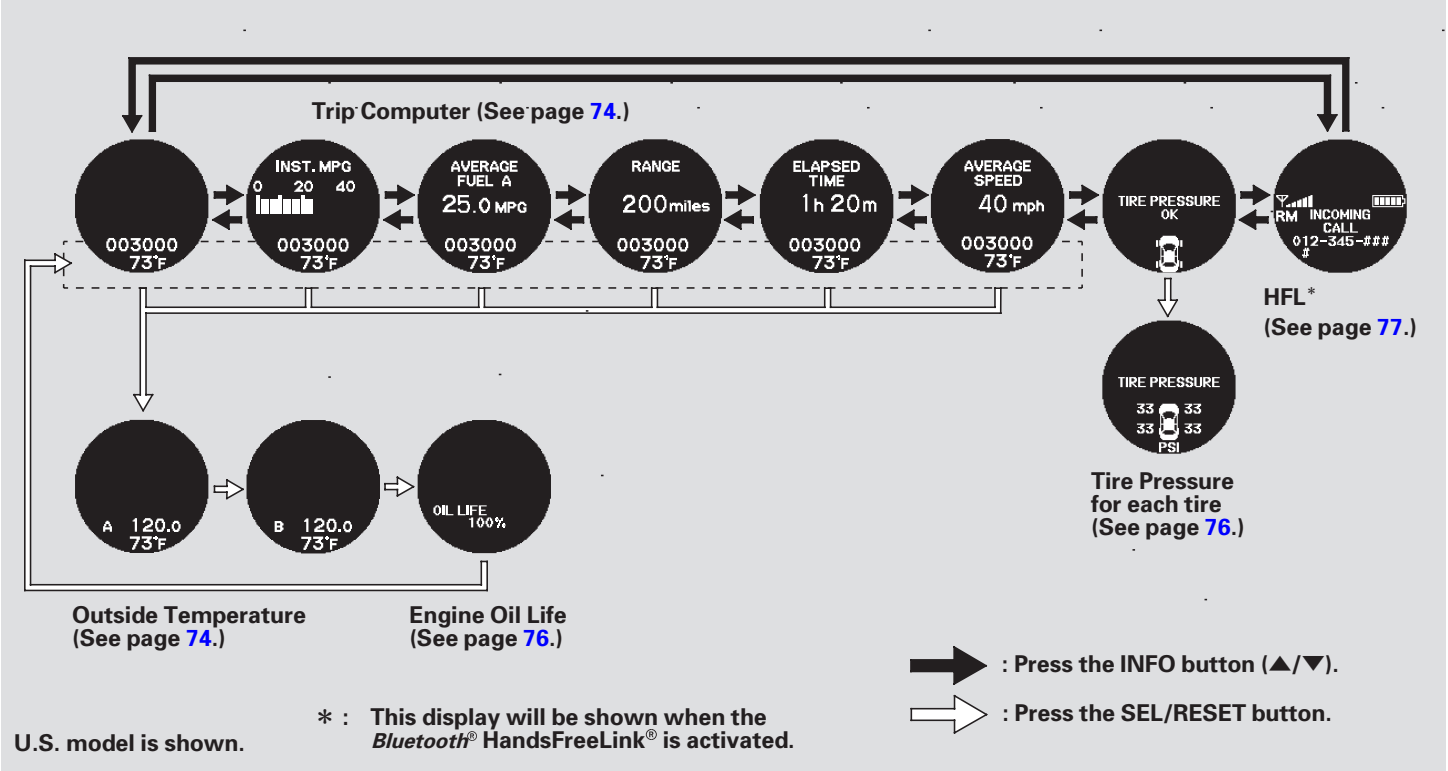
The multi-information display consists of an upper segment, a middle segment and a lower segment.

In the normal display mode, the upper and middle segments display trip computer information, such as fuel economy or average speed. The lower segment displays the odometer/trip meter (A/B), outside temperature, and engine oil life and maintenance item code(s).

CONTINUED

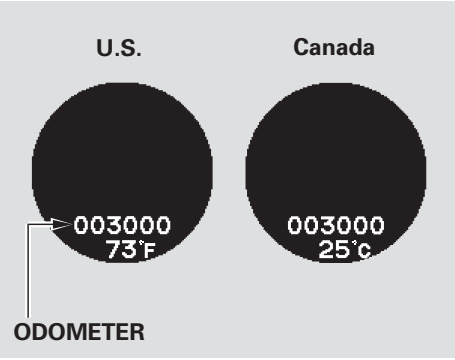
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display


Trip Computer (See page 74.)
003000 73°F
INST. MPG 0 20 40
AVERAGE FUEL A 25.0 MPG
RANGE 200 miles
ELAPSED TIME 1h 20m
AVERAGE SPEED 40 mph
TIRE PRESSURE OK
RM INCOMING CALL 012-345-###
HFL*
(See page 77.)
TIRE PRESSURE 33 33 33 33 PSI
Tire Pressure for each tire (See page 76.)
A 120.0 73°F
B 120.0 73°F
OIL LIFE 100%
Outside Temperature (See page 74.)
Engine Oil Life (See page 76.)
: Press the INFO button (▲/▼).
: Press the SEL/RESET button.
U.S. model is shown.
* : This display will be shown when the Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® is activated.

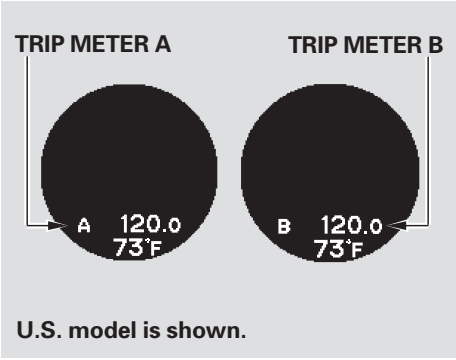
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Odometer



The odometer shows the total distance your vehicle has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial/territorial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

Trip Meter



U.S. model is shown.

This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it. There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it, and then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0."

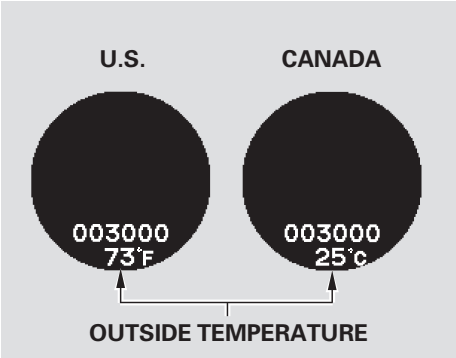
When you reset Trip A, average fuel economy A is reset at the same time. When you reset Trip B, average fuel economy B is reset.

In the customizing mode, you can set Trip A and average fuel economy A to reset at the same time when you refuel your vehicle (see page 89).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Outside Temperature



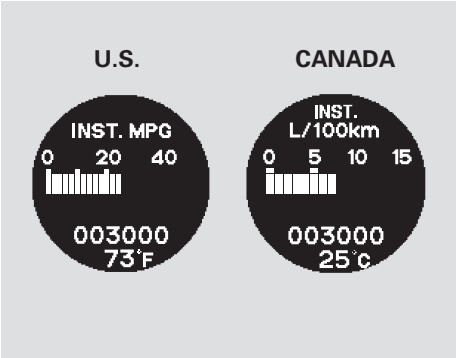
This shows the outside Fahrenheit temperature in U.S. models, and Celsius temperature in Canadian models.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. The temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h). When you start your trip, the sensor is not fully acclimatized, therefore it may take several minutes until the proper temperature is displayed.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing (32°F, 0°C) could mean that ice is forming on the road surface.

You can adjust the outside temperature display (see page 88).

Trip Computer



INST. MPG (U.S. models)/INST. L/100 km (Canadian models)
This shows your instant fuel economy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AVERAGE FUEL A/B
This shows your vehicle's average fuel economy in mpg (U.S. models) or liter/100 km (Canadian models) since you last reset Trip A or Trip B.

You can customize the Trip A and AVERAGE FUEL A reset condition on the multi-information display (see page 89).

RANGE
This shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you received over the last several miles(U.S.) or kilometers (Canada), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic, etc.

ELAPSED TIME
This shows the accumulated traveling time since you last reset it. When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, ELAPSED TIME is reset.

If you want to reset the ELAPSED TIME manually, go to the trip computer's ELAPSED TIME display, and press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets.

You can customize the ELAPSED TIME reset conditions on the multi-information display (see page 90).

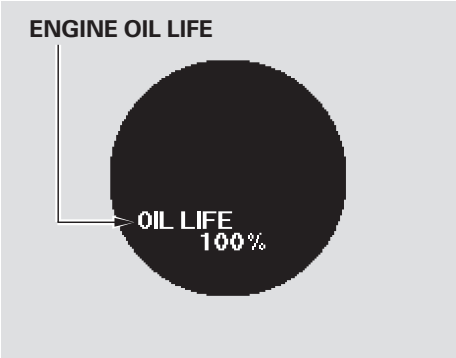
AVERAGE SPEED
This shows the average speed you are traveling in miles per hour (mph) for U.S. models or kilometers per hour (km/h) for Canadian models.

To reset the AVERAGE SPEED you have traveled, press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

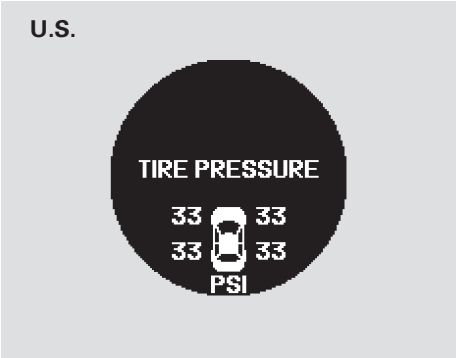
Engine Oil Life



This shows the remaining engine oil life. It shows 100% after the engine oil is replaced and the display is reset. The engine oil life is calculated based on engine operating conditions. For more information, see page 403 .

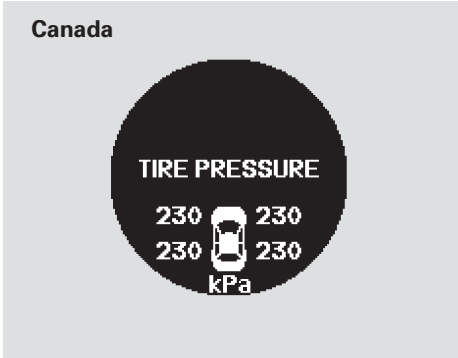
Tire Pressure Monitor

U.S.



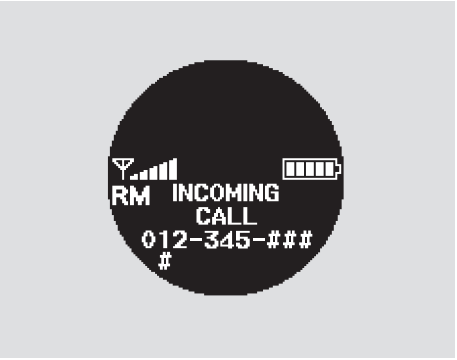
When the tire pressure monitor is shown on the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes as shown.
You can see the pressure of each tire in this monitor. If one or more tires are low, inflate them to the correct pressure. For more information, see page 388 .

Canada



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®



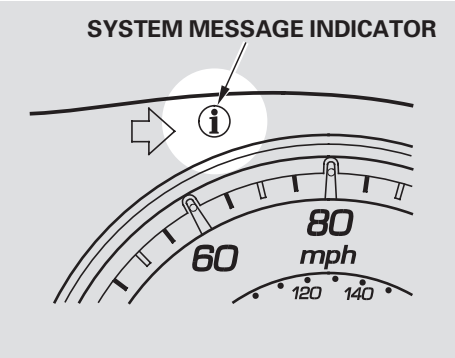
You can receive or make phone calls from your cell phone through your vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system without touching your cell phone.

To use the system, your cell phone and the HFL system must be linked. Not all cell phones are compatible with this system. Refer to page 304 for instructions on how to link your cell phone to HFL and how to receive or make phone calls, or visit the acura.com/handsfreelink website. In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call 1-888-9-ACURA-9.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

System Messages



If there is a problem with your vehicle, for example the engine oil level is low or a door is not fully closed, the multi-information display will show you the problem. It does this by interrupting the current display with one or more messages.

The system message(s) triggers the appropriate indicator(s) on the instrument panel, including the system message indicator, to come on. The system message indicator does not go off until the problem(s) is corrected.

You will also hear a beep when the system message comes on for the first time.

Most of the messages are displayed for about 5 seconds, and then the normal display returns. If there are several system messages to be shown, the display switches these messages every 5 seconds.

To switch the message(s) before 5 seconds have elapsed, press the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel.

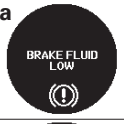
Even if you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, some messages stay on or come on again at regular intervals until the problem is corrected.

If the system message indicator remains lit on the instrument panel, you can see the corresponding message(s) again by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Here is a list of all messages:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	See page 11
	See page 19
	See page 19
	See page 32
U.S. **Canada**	See page 32

U.S. **Canada**	See page 153
U.S. **Canada** 	See page 427
U.S. **Canada**	See page 473

	See page 471
	See page 472
	See page 471
	See page 384
	See page 392
	See page 69

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

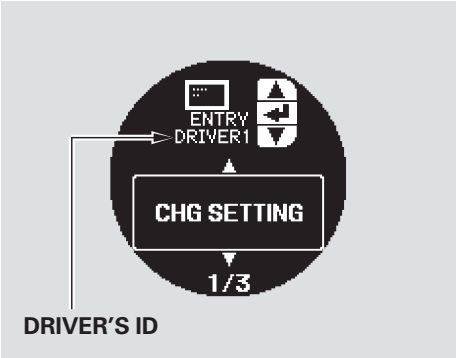
	See page 388
	See page 389
	See page 389
	See page 389
	See page 373
	See page 67

	See page 65
6-cylinder models only **U.S.** **Canada**	See page 369
	See page 122
	See page 122
	See page 123

	See page 114
	See page 404
	See page 405
	See page 407
	See page 349
Canadian models only	See page 423

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customized Settings



DRIVER'S ID

You can customize some vehicle control settings. To enter the customizing mode, press and hold either INFO button (▲/▼) for more than 3 seconds. To change the settings, the ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position, and the vehicle must be stopped with the transmission in Park (automatic) or with the parking brake set (manual).

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, move the shift lever out of Park (automatic) or release the parking brake (manual), the display will change to the normal screen.

If you try to enter the customizing mode while the vehicle is moving, you will see a "MUST STOP AND SHIFT TO PARK TO CHANGE SETTINGS" (automatic) or "MUST STOP AND SET PARK BRAKE TO CHANGE SETTINGS" (manual) message and you cannot change the settings.

You can customize some vehicle control settings for "DRIVER 1" and "DRIVER 2" separately. If "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2" is not displayed, customizing is not possible.

To have the driver's ID detected, make sure your remote transmitter is linked to the system and the driver's door is unlocked with a corresponding remote transmitter.

See page 128 to link your remote transmitter to your vehicle.

If the remote transmitter is not linked, "DRIVER UNKNOWN CUSTOMIZE IMPOSSIBLE" will be displayed, and you cannot customize the settings.

If you use the key to unlock the driver's door, the system cannot recognize either "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2."

If you want to change any vehicle control settings, select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Refer to the table on the following pages about the settings you want to customize.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option		Page
METER SETUP (P.86)	LANGUAGE SELECTION	Changes the language used in the display.	ENGLISH*1		87
			FRENCH		
			SPANISH		
	ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY	Changes the outside temperature reading above or below its current reading.	−5°F ~ ±0°F*1 ~ 5°F (U.S.)		88
			−3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ 3°C (Canada)		
	TRIP A RESET with REFUEL	Causes trip meter A and the average fuel economy to reset when you refuel.	ON		89
			OFF*1		
	ELAPSED TIME RESET	Resets the elapsed time of your current trip.	IGN OFF*1	TRIP B	90
			TRIP A		
POSITION SETUP*2 (P.92)	MEMORY POSITION LINK*2	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting.	ON*1		93
			OFF		
LIGHTING SETUP (P.94)	INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME	Changes how long (in seconds) the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60 sec	15 sec	95
			30 sec*1		
	HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER	Changes how long (in seconds) the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60 sec	0 sec	96
			30 sec		
			15 sec*1		
	AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY*2	Changes the timing of when the headlights come on. The headlight switch needs to be in the AUTO position.	MAX	LOW	97
			HIGH	MIN	
			MID*1		

*1: Default setting
*2: All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option		Page
DOOR SETUP (P.99)	AUTO DOOR LOCK	Changes when the doors automatically lock.	SHIFT FROM P (A/T only)		100
			WITH VEH SPD*1		
			OFF		
	DOOR LOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock with the remote transmitter in a first push.	DRIVER DOOR*1		101
			ALL DOORS		
	KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT	The exterior lights flash each time you press the LOCK or UNLOCK button. A beeper will also sound when you press the LOCK button twice.	ON*1		103
			OFF		
	SECURITY RELOCK TIMER	Changes how long it takes (in seconds) for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock but do not open the door.	90 sec		104
			60 sec		
			30 sec*1		
	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK	Changes when the doors automatically unlock.	DRIVER DOOR*1/ ALL DOORS	With SHIFT to P*2	106
				With IGN OFF*3	
			OFF		
DEFAULT ALL (P.108)		Set/Cancel all the customized settings as default.	SET		108
			CANCEL		

*1: Default setting
*2: Default setting for automatic transmission
*3: Default setting for manual transmission

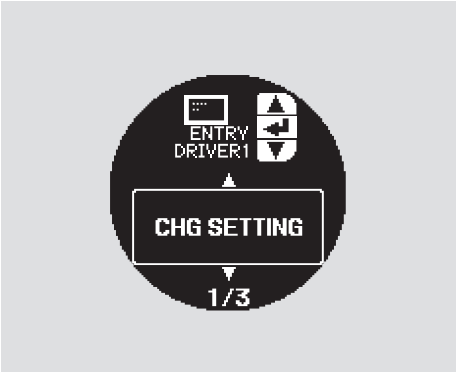
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Customize Settings
You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to your preference. Here are the settings you can customize:

- METER SETUP
- POSITION SETUP*
- LIGHTING SETUP
- DOOR SETUP

*: All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine



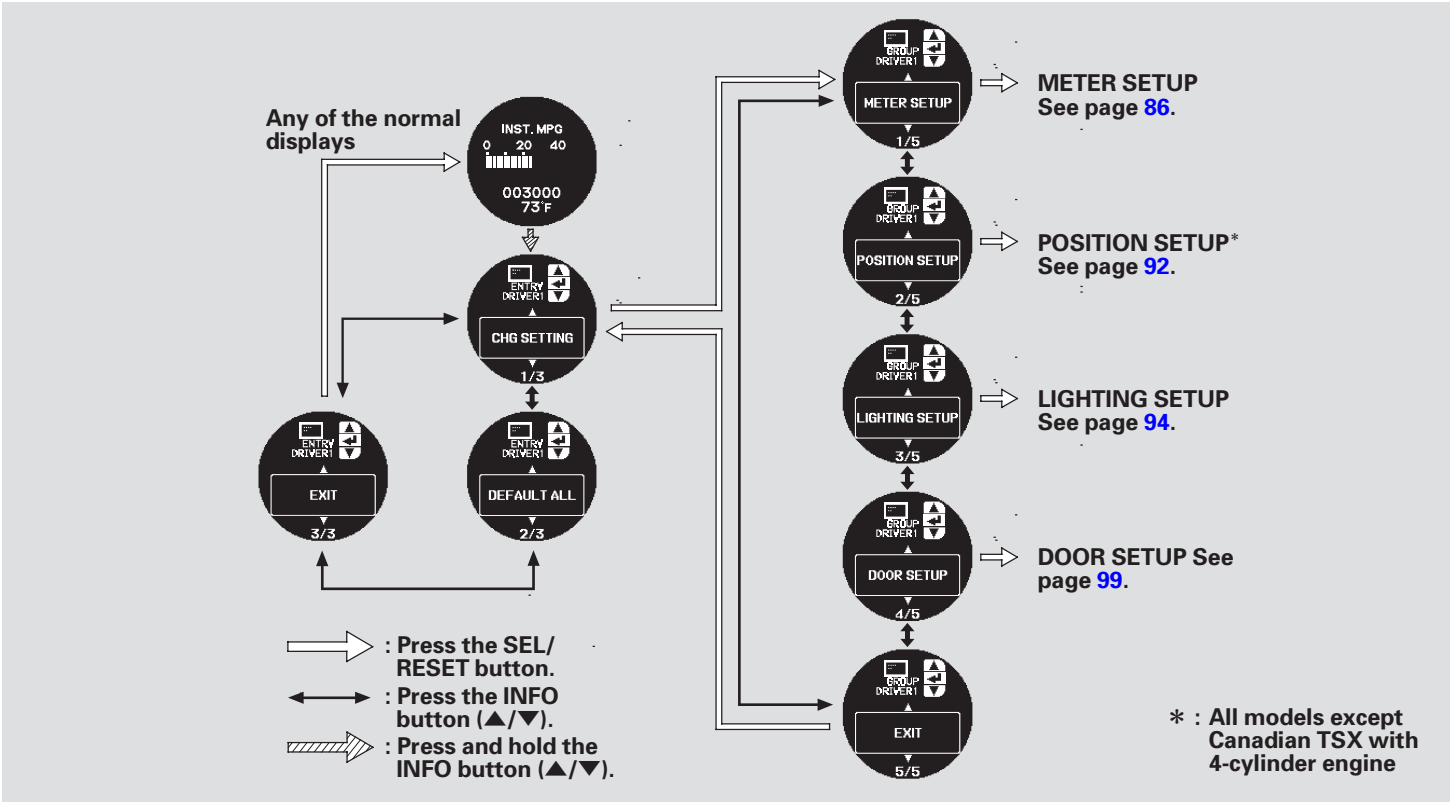
When you want to change the vehicle control settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown on the next page. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setup you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

If you do not make any changes, select “EXIT.” The display returns to the normal display.

If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, select DEFAULT ALL, as described on page 108 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

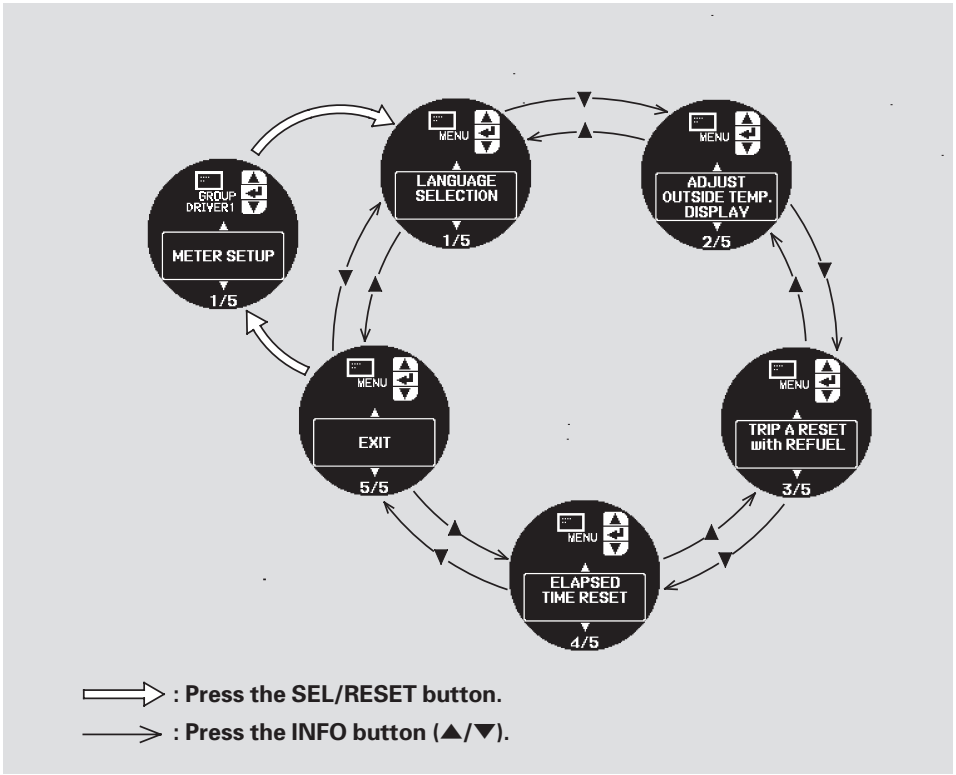
Meter Setup

Here are the four custom settings for the meter setup:

- LANGUAGE SELECTION
- ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY
- TRIP A RESET with REFUEL
- ELAPSED TIME RESET

While "METER SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

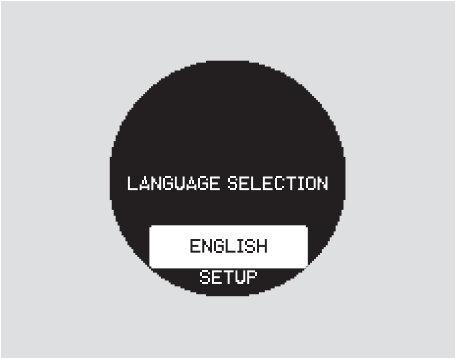
Language Selection

There are three language selections you can make: English, French, and Spanish. To choose the language you want, follow these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired language by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

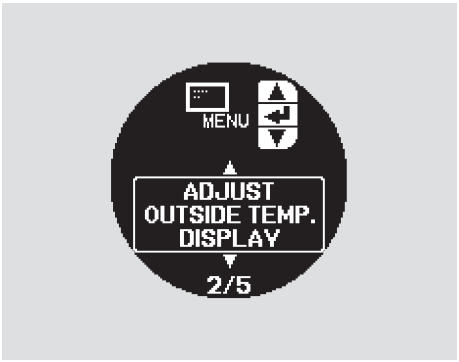
If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “LANGUAGE SELECTION” and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

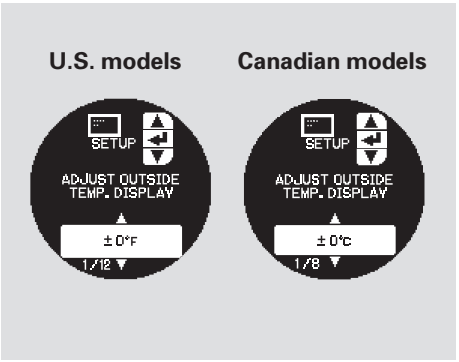
Multi-Information Display

Adjust Outside Temp. Display

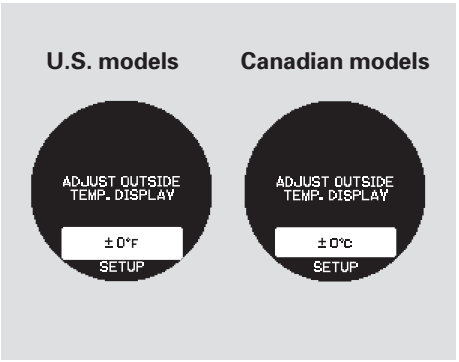


If you sometimes find that the temperature reading is a few degrees above or below the actual temperature, you can adjust it by following these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.
Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the setting.



Adjust the outside temperature value by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly. Press the SEL/RESET button to set the desired value.

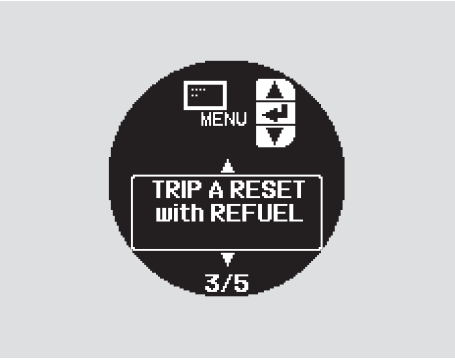


When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip A Reset With Refuel



To cause Trip A and average fuel for trip A to reset every time you refuel your vehicle, follow these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “TRIP A RESET with REFUEL” and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

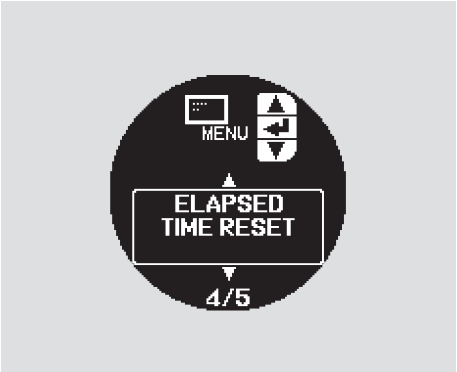
Multi-Information Display

Elapsed Time Reset
There are three elapsed time reset choices you can make:

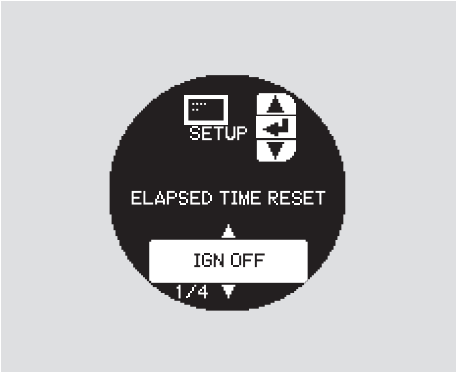
IGN OFF — The elapsed time is reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

TRIP A — The elapsed time is reset when Trip A is reset.

TRIP B — The elapsed time is reset when Trip B is reset.



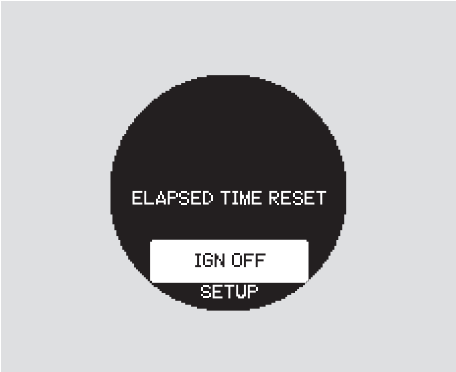
You can choose this item to customize from “METER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “ELAPSED TIME RESET” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

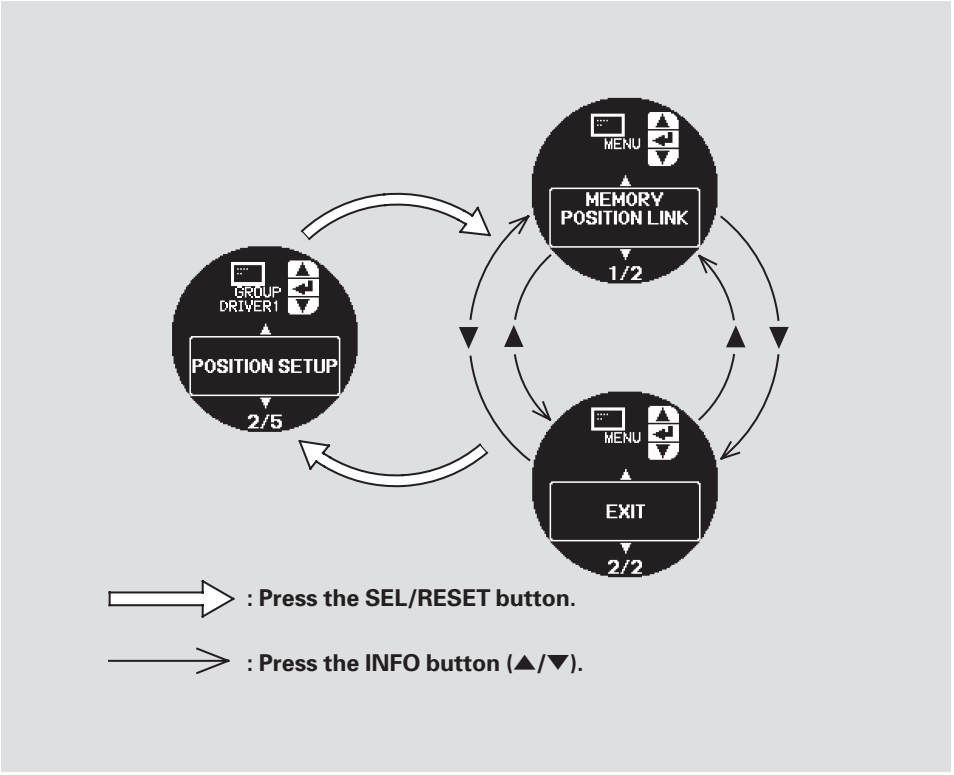
Position Setup

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

You can customize the MEMORY POSITION LINK setting in position setup.

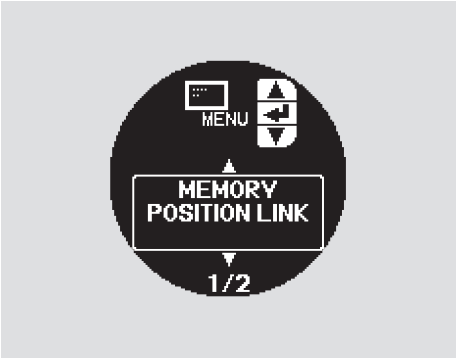
While "POSITION SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the custom setting then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Memory Position Link

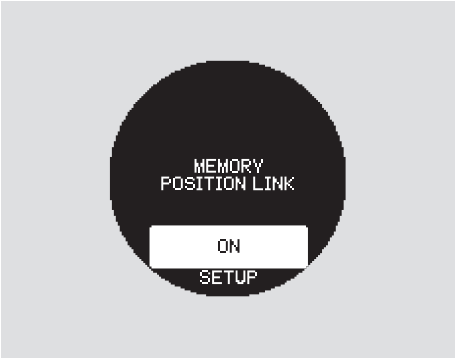


If “MEMORY POSITION LINK” is set to “ON,” the driver’s seat moves to the position stored in the memory (see page 142) when you open the driver’s door, using the remote transmitter.

You can choose this item to customize from “POSITION SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “MEMORY POSITION LINK” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

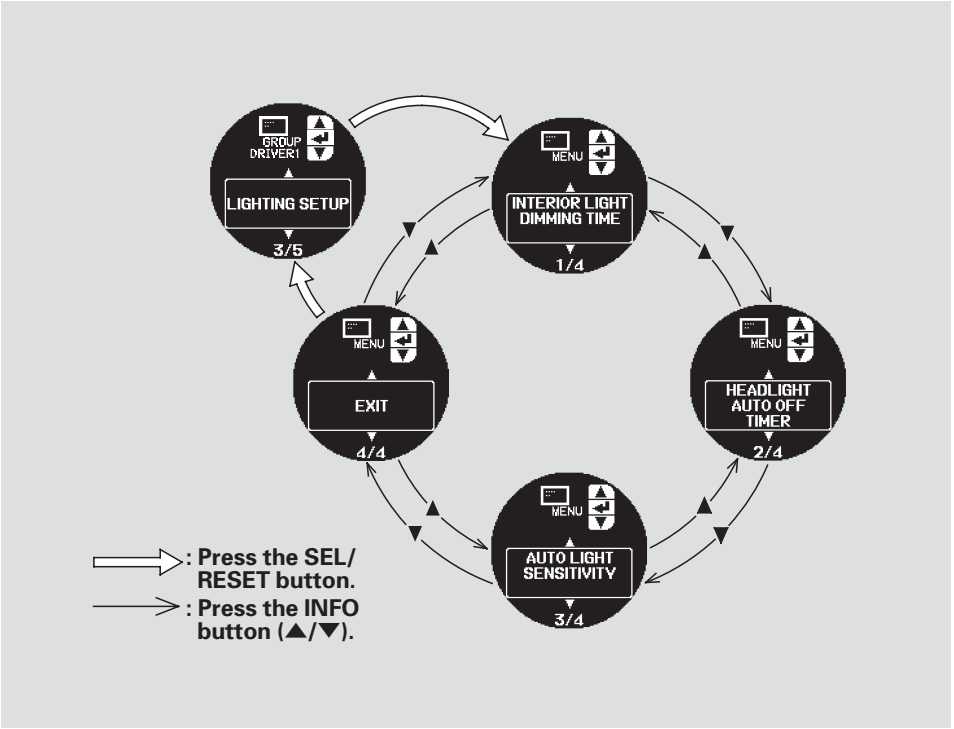
Multi-Information Display

Lighting Setup
Here are the three custom settings for the lighting setup:

- INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME
- HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER
- AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY*

While "LIGHTING SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



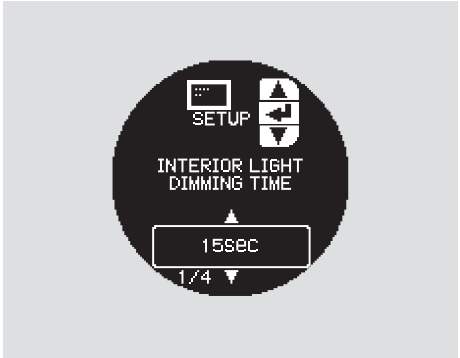
* : All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Light Dimming Time

The interior lights fade out when you close all doors. To change how long the lights stay on before they fade out, follow these instructions:

You can choose this item to customize from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting (15 SEC, 30 SEC, or 60 SEC) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

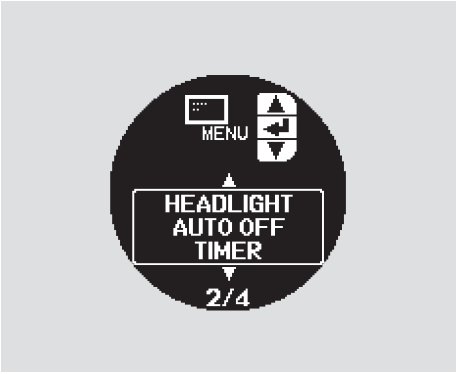
If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME" and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Headlight Auto Off Timer
The headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, taillights, and license plate lights go off after the selected time when you remove the key from the ignition switch and close the driver's door. To change how long the lights stay on before they go off, follow these instructions:



You can choose this item to customize from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting (60 SEC, 30 SEC, 15 SEC or 0 SEC) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER” and repeat the procedure again.

Auto Light Sensitivity
All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
The headlights automatically come on when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ambient light reaches a changeable level. You can select the auto light sensitivity from the following five levels:

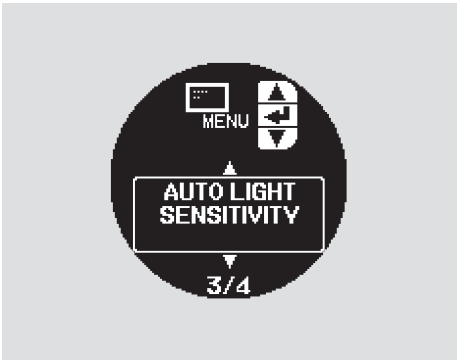
MAX —
The headlights come on when it is bright.

HIGH —
The headlights come on when it is somewhat bright.

MID —
The headlights come on when it is as bright as sunset or sunrise.

LOW —
The headlights come on when it is somewhat dark.

MIN —
The headlights come on when it is dark.

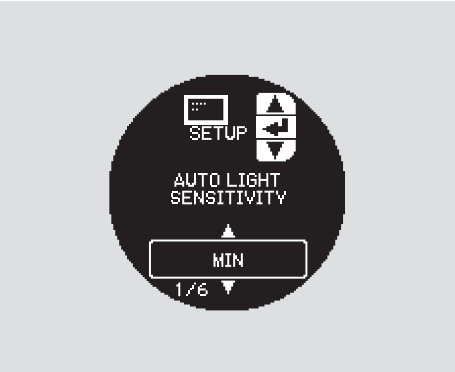


You can choose this item to customize from “LIGHTING SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting (MAX, HIGH, MID, LOW or MIN) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY” and repeat the procedure again.

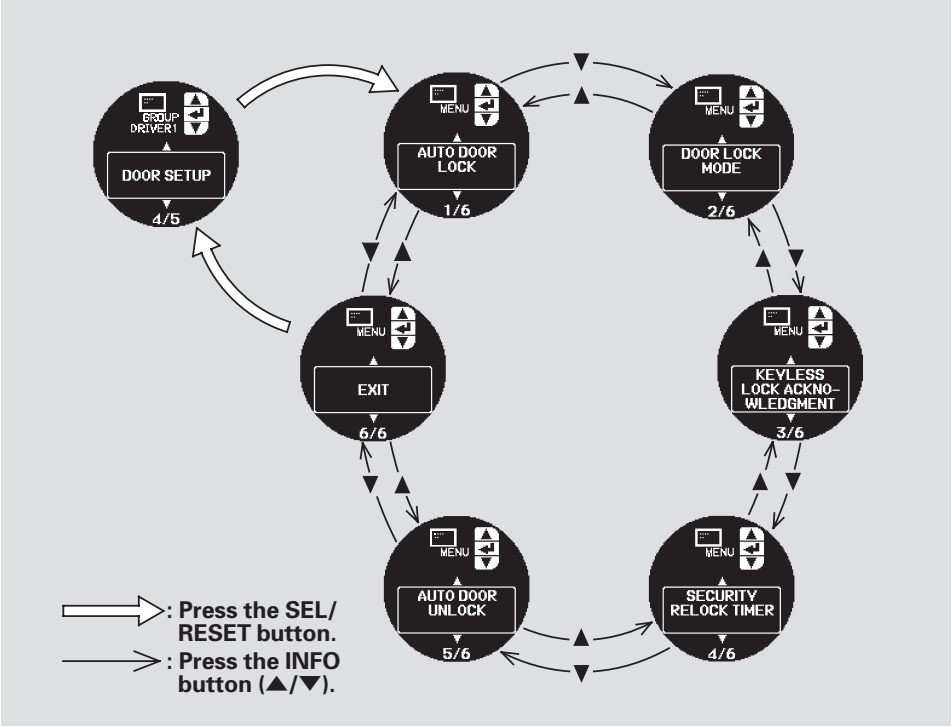
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door Setup
Here are the five custom settings for the door setup:

- AUTO DOOR LOCK
- DOOR LOCK MODE
- KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT
- SECURITY RELOCK TIMER
- AUTO DOOR UNLOCK

While "DOOR SETUP" is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Auto Door Lock
There are three settings you can choose from:

OFF —
The auto door lock is deactivated all the time.

WITH VEH SPD —
The doors lock when the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (about 15 km/h).

SHIFT FROM P —
The doors lock whenever you move the shift lever out of Park.
(Automatic transmission model only)

You can choose this item to customize from "DOOR SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

A/T model is shown.

Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO DOOR LOCK” and repeat the procedure again.

Door Lock Mode

To select whether the driver’s door unlocks or all the doors unlock when you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter or the key, follow these instructions.

You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “DOOR LOCK MODE” and repeat the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Lock Acknowledgment
When you push the LOCK button on the remote transmitter, some exterior lights flash, and a beeper sounds when you push the LOCK button again within 5 seconds to verify that the doors and the trunk are locked and the security system has set (see page 292). You can customize the exterior lights not to flash and the beeper not to sound.

To turn this feature on or off, follow these instructions.

You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

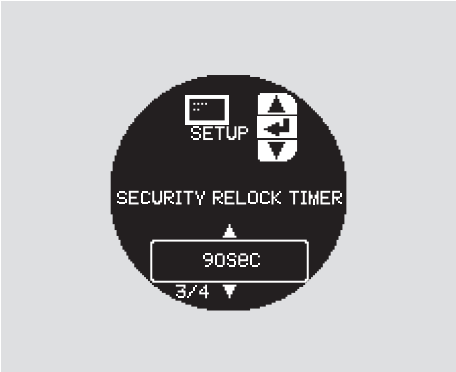
If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT” and repeat the procedure again.

Security Relock Timer
If you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter, but do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, the doors and the fuel fill door, automatically relock, and the security system sets.

You can change this relock time from 30 seconds to 60 or 90 seconds.

You can choose this item to customize from “DOOR SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “SECURITY RELOCK TIMER” and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Auto Door Unlock
There are five possible settings for automatic transmission models and three possible settings for manual transmission models.

Automatic transmission model only
DRIVER DOOR with SHIFT to P — The driver's door unlocks when you move the shift lever to Park.

Automatic transmission model only
ALL DOORS with SHIFT to P — All the doors unlock when you move the shift lever to Park.

DRIVER DOOR with IGN OFF — The driver's door unlocks when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

ALL DOORS with IGN OFF — All the doors unlock when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

OFF — The auto door unlock is deactivated all the time.

You can choose this item to customize from "DOOR SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A/T model is shown.

Press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selecting mode.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

If you choose “DRIVER DOOR with SHIFT to P,” you will see the above display.

If you choose “DRIVER DOOR with IGN OFF,” you will see the above display.

Press the INFO (▲/▼) button to switch the door lock mode setting. Then, press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

A/T model is shown.

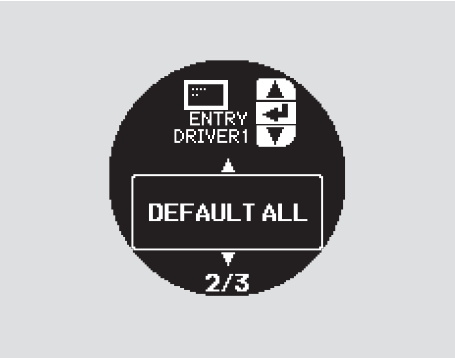
When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO DOOR UNLOCK” and repeat the procedure again.

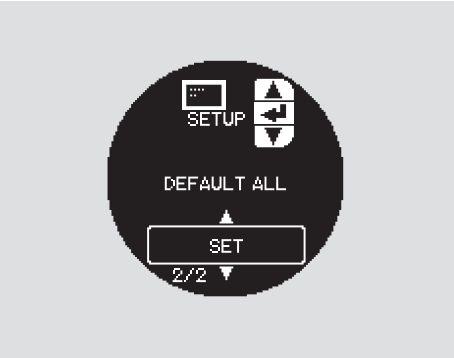
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

DEFAULT ALL

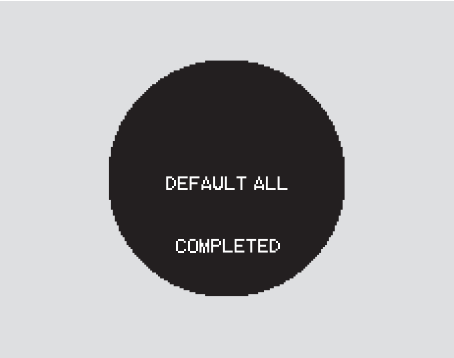


If you want to set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select DEFAULT ALL, then press the SEL/RESET button.



To set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select SET then press the SEL/RESET button.

If you want to cancel DEFAULT ALL, select CANCEL, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to the previous display.

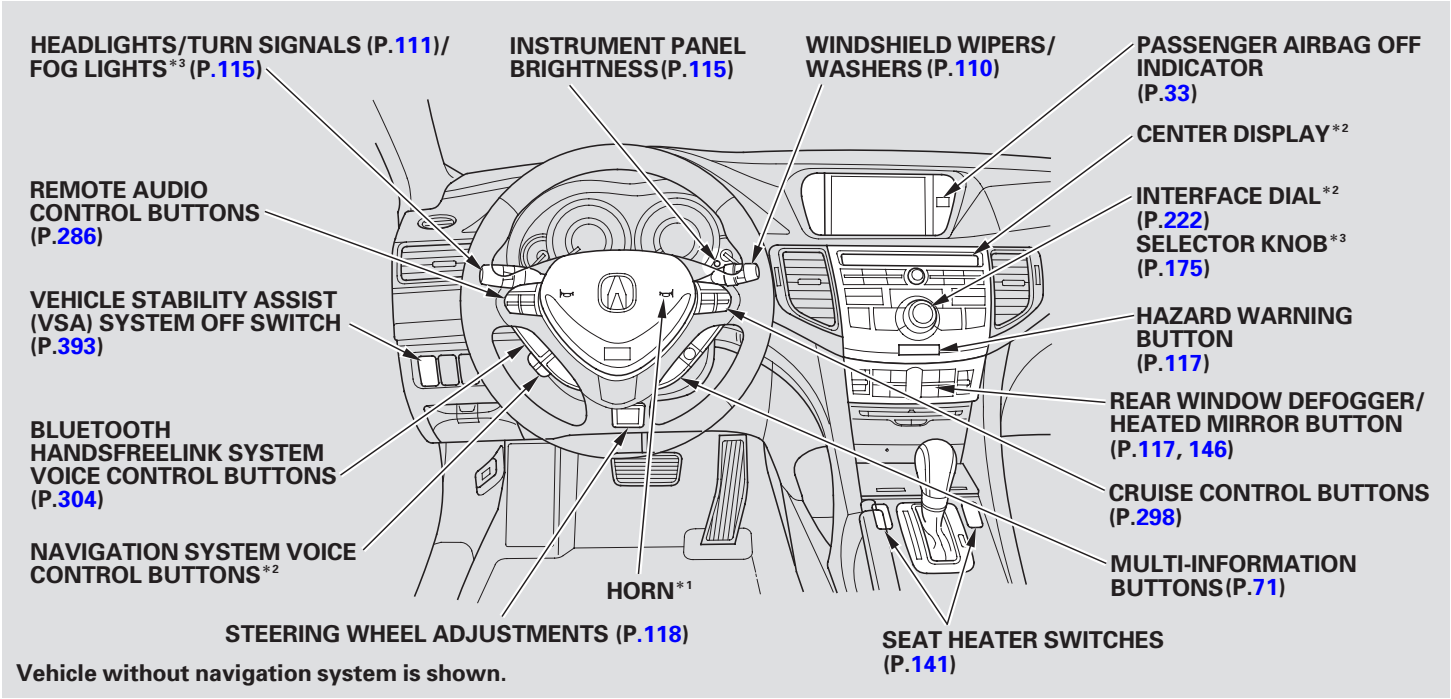


When DEFAULT ALL is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen returns to the default all setting display.

If the setting is not successfully completed, “FAILED” is shown for several seconds, and then the screen goes back to the normal message mode. Repeat the same procedure to select DEFAULT ALL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls Near the Steering Wheel

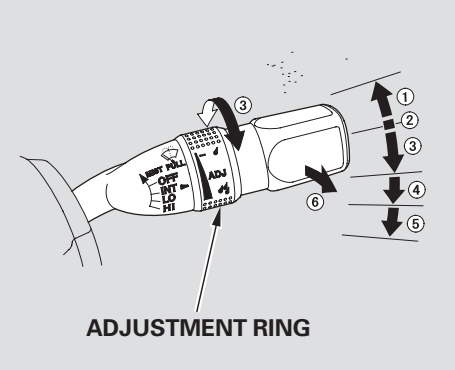


Vehicle without navigation system is shown.

∗1 : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.
∗2 : Only on vehicles equipped with navigation system. Refer to the navigation system manual.
∗3 : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Wipers and Washers



ADJUSTMENT RING

1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT — Intermittent
4. LO — Low speed
5. HI — High speed
6. Windshield washers

Push the right lever up or down to select a position.

MIST — The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

OFF — The wipers are not activated.

INT — The length of the wipe interval is varied automatically according to vehicle's speed.

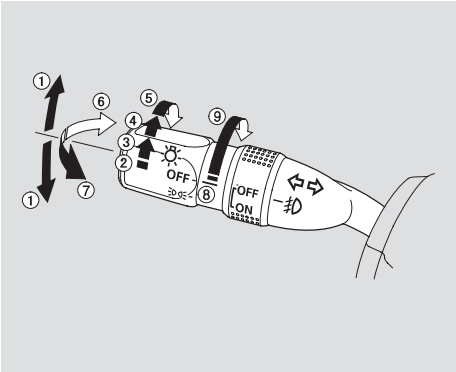
Vary the delay by turning the adjustment ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay (position), the wipers change to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

LO — The wipers run at low speed.

HI — The wipers run at high speed.

Windshield Washer — Pull the wiper control lever toward you, and hold it. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete a few more sweeps after you release the lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1. Turn signal
2. Off
3. Parking and instrument panel lights
4. AUTO*
5. Headlights on
6. High beams
7. Flash high beams
8. Fog lights off*
9. Fog lights on*

* : If equipped

Turn Signal — Push down on the left lever to signal a left turn and up to signal a right turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever and hold it. The lever will return to the center when you release it or complete a turn.

Headlights — Turning the switch to the " " position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights.

Turning the switch to the " " position turns on the headlights.

When the light switch is in the " " or " " position, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder.

This indicator stays on if you leave the lights on and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver's door.

High Beams — Push the left lever forward until you hear a click. The blue high beam indicator will come on (see page 66). Pull the lever back to return to the low beams.

To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlights

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

AUTO — The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights and all other exterior lights, when it senses low ambient light.

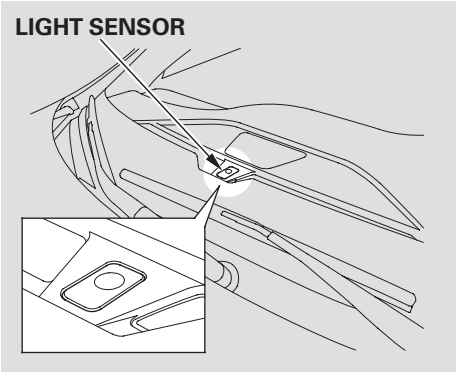
To turn on automatic lighting, turn the light switch to AUTO. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator will turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

The lights will remain on when you turn off the ignition switch. They will turn off automatically when you remove the key and open the driver's door. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or turn the light switch to the ≣D position.

Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

To change the "AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY" setting, see page 97 .

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or off for a long time.



The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on top of the dashboard. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Lighting Off Feature
This feature turns off the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights within 15 seconds after you remove the key and close the driver's door.

You can change this 15 second timer to 0, 30, or 60 seconds (see page 96).

The automatic lighting off feature activates if you leave the headlight switch in the " " or " " position or if the lights are turned on by setting the switch in the "AUTO" position (if equipped), and you remove the key, then open and close the driver's door.

If you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the "AUTO" position).

The lights will turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights will go off. With the driver's door open, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlights

Daytime Running Lights
With the headlight switch off or in the position, the high beam headlights and the high beam indicator come on with reduced brightness when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition switch off, even if you set the parking brake.

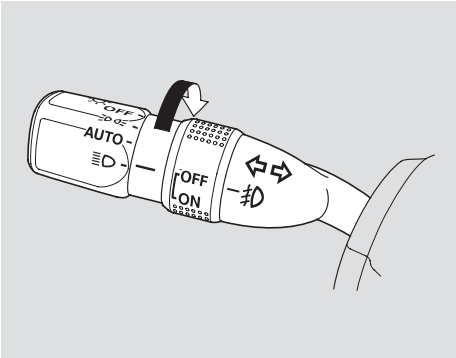
The headlights revert to normal operation when you turn them on with the switch.

If you see a “CHECK DRL SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the daytime running light system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fog Lights, Instrument Panel Brightness

Fog Lights

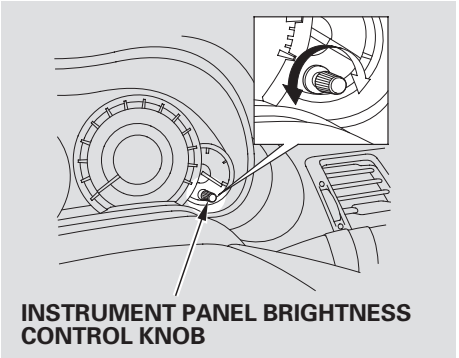


All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
Turn the fog lights on and off by turning the switch next to the headlight switch.

You can use the fog lights only when the headlights are on low beam.

With the light switch in the AUTO position, you can also use the fog lights when the headlights turn on automatically. They will go off when the headlights turn off.

Instrument Panel Brightness



INSTRUMENT PANEL BRIGHTNESS CONTROL KNOB

The knob on the instrument panel controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights. Turn the knob to adjust the brightness with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position and the parking lights on.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Brightness

BRIGHTNESS LEVEL

When you turn the knob, the multi-information display changes to vertical bars that show you the current level.

You will hear a tone when you reach the maximum or minimum brightness. The brightness level goes out about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting.

To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to the or position. Turning the knob to the right until you hear a tone will cancel the reduced brightness.

The instrument panel will illuminate with reduced brightness when you unlock and open the driver's door. The brightness will increase slightly when you insert the key in the ignition switch, then go to normal brightness when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

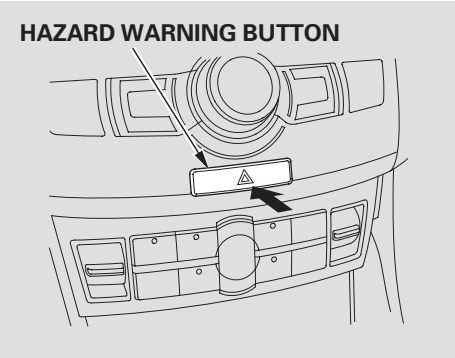
If you do not insert the key in the ignition switch after opening the driver's door, the illumination turns off about 30 seconds after you close the door.

If you insert the key but do not turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the illumination turns off in about 10 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

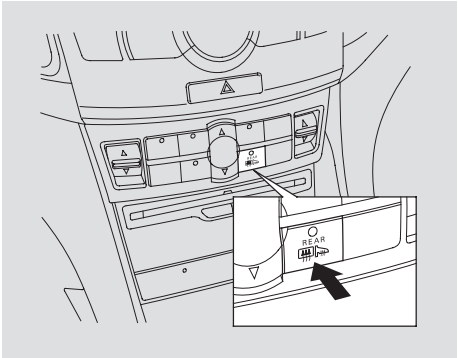
Hazard Warning Button, Rear Window Defogger

Hazard Warning Button



Push the button under the audio controls to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all four outside turn signal lights and both turn signal indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use the hazard warning lights if you need to park in a dangerous area near heavy traffic, or if your vehicle is disabled.

Rear Window Defogger



The rear window defogger will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the defogger is on. It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch. You have to turn the defogger on again when you restart the vehicle.

The defogger will shut itself off within about 10 to 30 minutes according to the outside temperature (over 32°F, 0°C).

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The defogger and antenna wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side-to-side.

Pushing this button also turns the mirror heaters on or off. For more information, see page 146 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

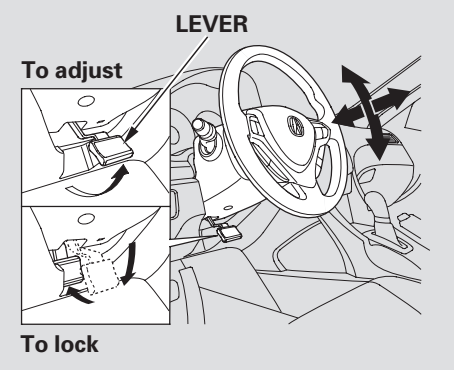
Steering Wheel Adjustments

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

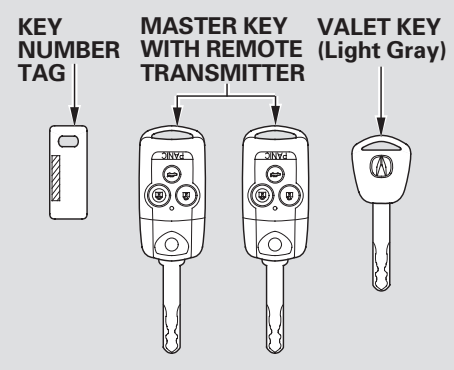
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.



1. Pull the lever under the steering column toward you until it stops.
2. Move the steering wheel so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the lever forward fully to lock the steering wheel in position.

   Make sure the lever is positioned securely at the bottom of the steering column as shown.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The master key fits all the locks on your vehicle. The valet key works only in the ignition and the driver's door lock. You can keep the glove box locked when you leave your vehicle and the valet key at a parking facility.

You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Acura-approved key blanks.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

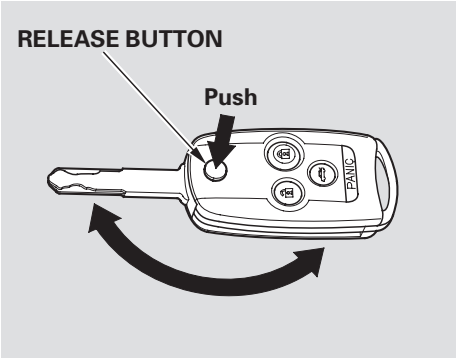
The valet key does not contain a battery. Do not try to take it apart.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys and Locks

Retractable Master Key



The master key can be retracted into the remote transmitter. To use the key, push the release button to release the key from the transmitter. The key should be fully extended. To retract the key, push the release button and at the same time push the key into the remote transmitter until it is securely latched.

Always make sure the key is fully extended when you insert it to the ignition switch. If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not operate properly and prevent the engine from starting.

The key may come in contact with your finger while being retracted or extended. Make sure your fingers do not touch the pivot of the key when retracting or extending the key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key chain) is near the ignition switch when you insert the key.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

NOTICE

Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone.

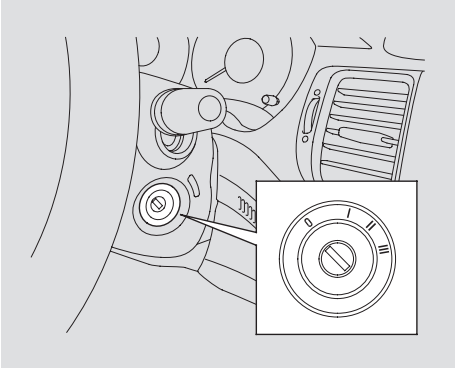
As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Switch



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK (0), ACCESSORY (I), ON (II), and START (III).

LOCK (0) — You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key, push it in slightly. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must also be in Park.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

ACCESSORY (I) — You can operate the audio system and the accessory power sockets in this position.

If you leave the key in the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door, you will see a "RETURN IGNITION SWITCH TO LOCK (0) POSITION" message on the multi-information display and hear a reminder beeper.

If you turn the ignition key to the ACCESSORY (I) position with the driver's door closed, you will see an "ACCESSORY (I) POSITION" message on the multi-information display to inform you of the key position.

ON (II) — This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (I) to the ON (II) position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

START (III) — Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

You will also see a "REMOVE KEY" message on the multi-information display.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

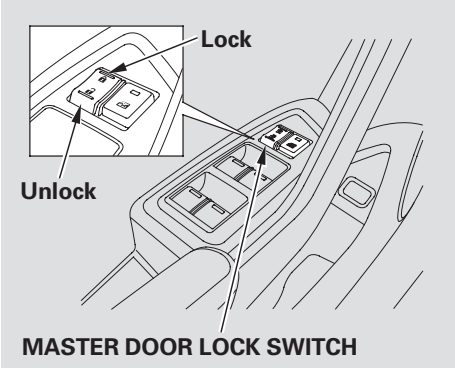
⚠WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

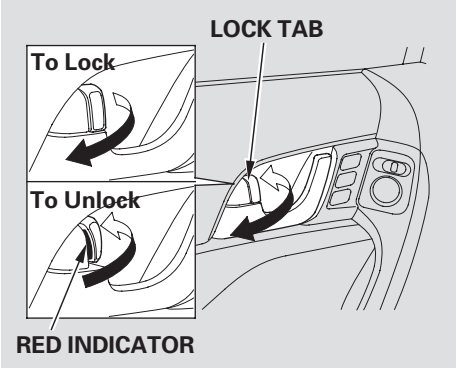
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door Locks



To lock all doors, push the front of the master door lock switch on either front door, pull the lock tab rearward on the driver's door, or use the key on the outside lock on the driver's door.

Pushing the rear of either master door lock switch will unlock all doors. Pushing forward the lock tab on the driver's door unlocks only that door.



The lock tab on any passenger's door locks and unlocks that door.

When the door is unlocked, you can see the red indicator on the lock tab above the inner door handle.

All doors can be locked from the outside by using the key in the driver's door. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the key, turn it clockwise, and release it. The remaining doors unlock when you turn the key a second time within a few seconds.

You can customize the door lock/unlock settings (see page 99).

You can open or close the windows and the moonroof by using the key in the driver's door (see page 149).

Locking and unlocking the driver's door will also lock and unlock the fuel fill door (see page 347).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

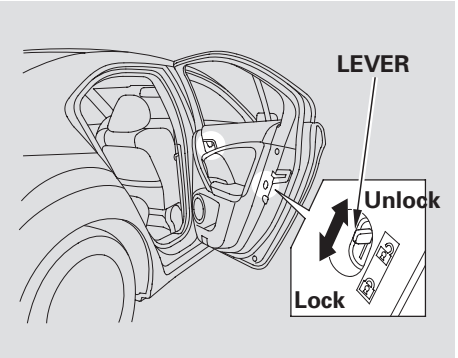
To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the vehicle, pull the lock tab rearward and close the door. To lock the driver's door, remove the key from the ignition switch, pull the lock tab rearward or push the front of the master switch, then close the door.

Default setting
When the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h) or more, all the doors lock automatically.

When you shift to P after driving, the driver's door unlocks.

Lockout Prevention
If you forget and leave the key in the ignition switch, lockout prevention will not allow you to lock the driver's door. With any door open and the key in the ignition switch, locking with master door lock switch is disabled. If the driver's door is closed, the lock tab on the driver's door is not disabled. Pulling the driver's lock tab rearward will lock all doors. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pulling the lock tab rearward, the driver's door lock tab pops out and unlocks the driver's door.

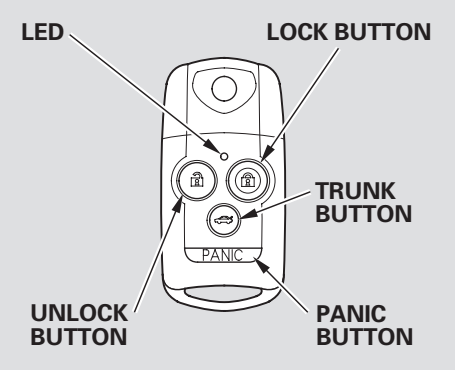
Childproof Door Locks



The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position (lever is down), the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, push the lock tab forward and use the outside door handle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Transmitter



LOCK – Press this button once to lock all doors. Some exterior lights will flash. When you push LOCK twice within 5 seconds, you will hear a beep to verify that the doors are locked and the security system has set. You cannot lock the doors if any door is not fully closed or if the key is in the ignition switch.

UNLOCK – Press this button once to unlock the driver's door (or all the doors depending on the door lock setting). Push it twice to unlock the remaining doors. Some exterior lights will flash twice the first time you push the button.

If you do not open any door within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

The ceiling light and the door activated spotlights come on when you press the UNLOCK button if the lights are in the door activated position. If you do not open any door within 30 seconds (or whatever setting of the interior light dimming time is set to), the light(s) will fade out. If you relock the doors with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the light(s) will go off immediately.

The keyless lock acknowledgment beep and flashing of the lights can be deactivated (see page 103).

To change the lock/unlock setting and the relock timer setting, refer to the customized settings on page 99 .

Locking and unlocking the driver's door will also lock and unlock the fuel fill door (see page 347).

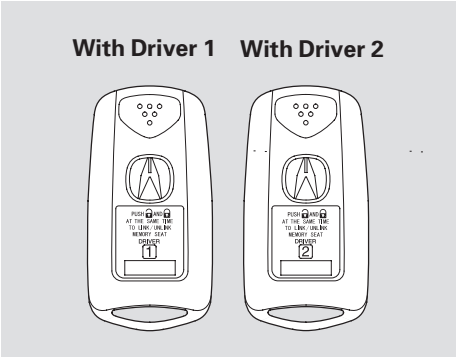
You can also open all power windows and the moonroof from outside the vehicle with the remote transmitter (see page 149).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PANIC – Press and hold this button for about 1 second to attract attention; the horn will sound, and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Panic mode does not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

TRUNK – Press and hold this button for about 1 second to open the trunk. You cannot open the trunk if the key is in the ignition switch.

Recalling a Memorized Driving Position



When you unlock the driver's door with your remote transmitter, each remote transmitter activates the customized settings related to that remote.

The driving position memory activated (Driver 1, Driver 2) is shown on the back of each transmitter. Make sure you store your desired driving position in the memory that is activated by the transmitter you normally carry.

Here are the settings activated with the remote:

- Customized settings (see page 81).

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

- Driving position memory (see page 142).

When you unlock and open the driver's door with the remote transmitter, the driver's seat moves to the position stored in memory. You will hear two beeps when the movement is completed. The indicator in the related memory button on the driver's door remains on.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Transmitter

You will also see the “DRIVER 1” or “DRIVER 2” message on the multi-information display, depending on which linked remote transmitter is used.

You can turn off this driving position memory activation. Press and hold the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time. The LED in the remote transmitter will blink twice. Then release the buttons. Doing this also cancels the memory position link setting for that remote and restores the default settings.

To turn the memory position link settings back on, repeat this procedure. The LED will blink once to indicate the feature has been turned on.

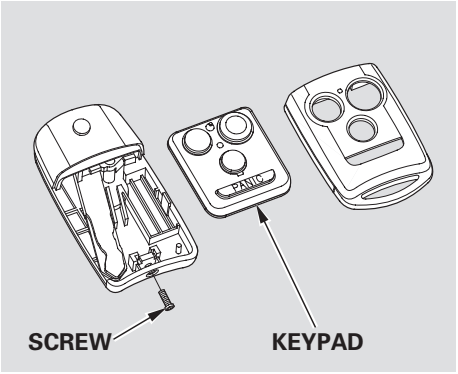
Remote Transmitter Care

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

Replacing the Transmitter Battery

If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors, replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616



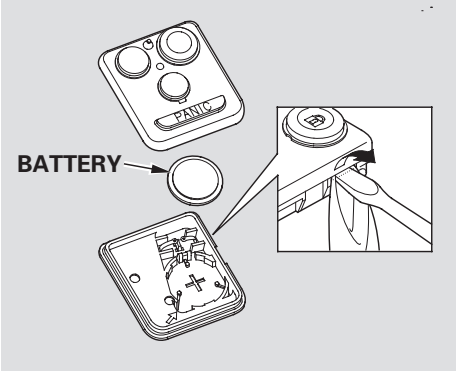
To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.

NOTE: Be careful when removing this screw as the head of the screw can strip out.

2. Separate the keypad from the transmitter by pushing any button from outside.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Place a cloth on the edge of the keypad to prevent scratches, and remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.

4. Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (+ side facing down), then insert it in the keypad.

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment.
Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

5. Snap the two halves of the keypad, then install the parts in reverse order.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

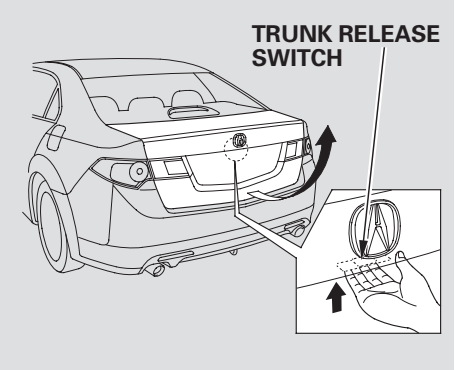
This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

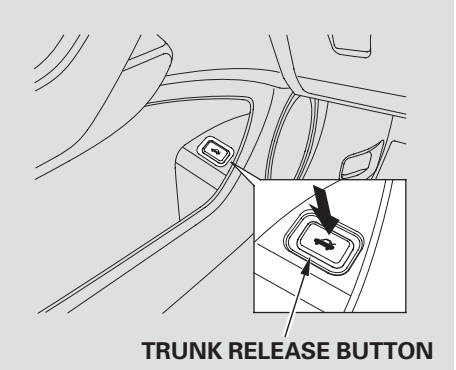
Trunk

The trunk will lock when you lock the driver's door with the key, the remote transmitter, either master door lock switch, or the lock tab on the driver's door.

To unlock the trunk, turn the key twice to unlock the doors, push the rear of either master door lock switch, or push UNLOCK twice on the remote transmitter.



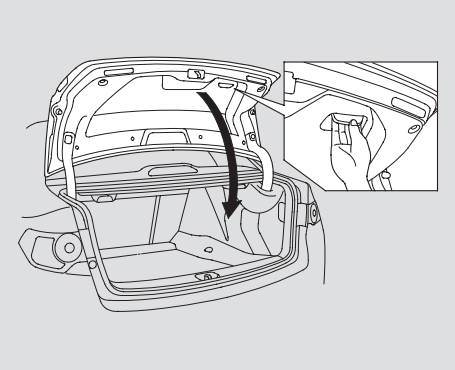
To open the trunk from the outside, push the release switch, then lift up.



You can also open the trunk in either of two ways:

- Push the trunk release button on the driver's door.
- Press and hold the trunk release button on the remote transmitter.

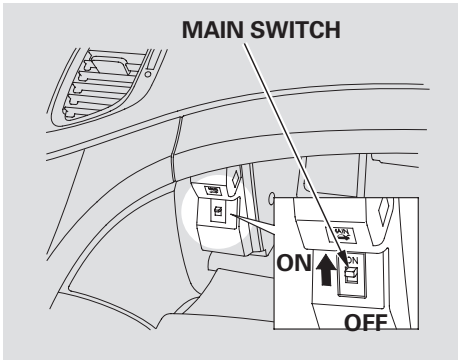
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To close the trunk, use the inner handle to lower the lid, then press down on the back edge.

Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging it, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard**, page 55 .

Trunk Main Switch



To protect items in the trunk, you can disable the trunk release button on the driver's door and the trunk release switch on the trunk lid by turning off the trunk main switch in the glove box and locking the glove box. Make sure either rear seat is not folded down.

If you need to give the key to someone else, give them the valet key.

Even if the trunk release is locked with the main switch, you can open the trunk with the remote transmitter.

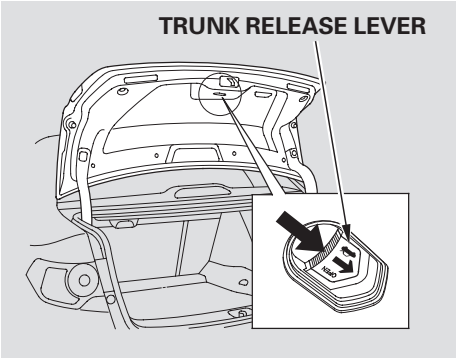
Emergency Fuel Lid Release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency fuel lid release in the trunk. Refer to page 474 for how to access it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trunk

Emergency Trunk Opener



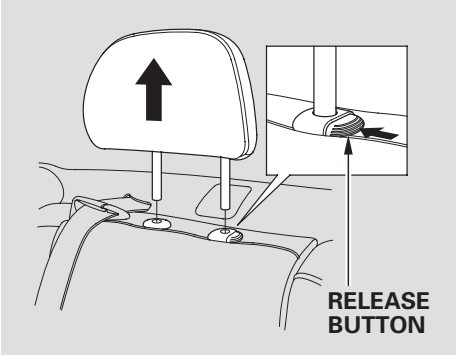
As a safety feature, your vehicle has a release lever on the trunk latch so the trunk can be opened from the inside.

To open the trunk, push the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

For more information about child safety, see page 39 .

Unlocking and Opening the Trunk Manually

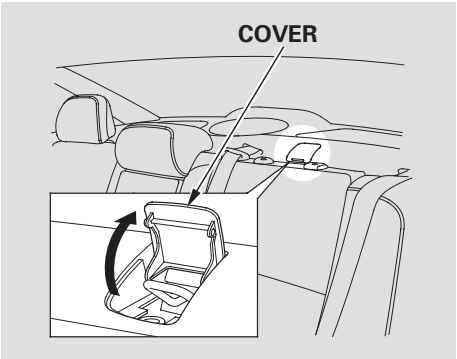


If the power door lock system cannot unlock the trunk, unlock and open it manually from inside the vehicle.

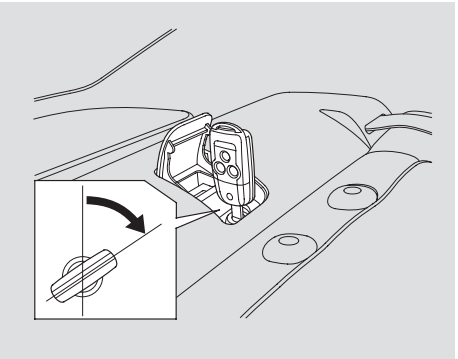
To unlock and open the trunk:

1. Remove the rear left side head restraint by pressing the release button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Pull up the cover of the tether anchor point on the left side.



3. Insert the master key in the lock on the rear shelf.

4. Turn the key clockwise, then release the key. The trunk lid will be opened.

5. Reinstall the head restraint.

If you need to unlock and open the trunk manually, it means there may be a problem with the power door lock system or the trunk lock. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

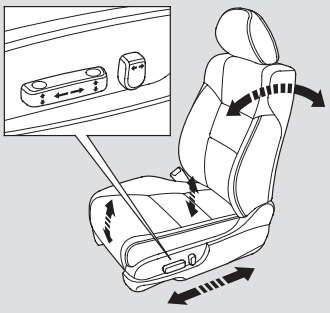
Seats

Power Seat Adjustments

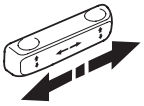
See pages 13 – 14 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

The controls for the power adjustable front seats are on the outside edge of each seat bottom. You can adjust the seats with the ignition switch in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

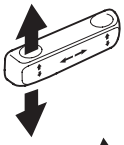
The passenger seat has the same adjustments as the driver's seat but without any height adjustment.



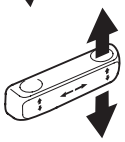
Driver's seat is shown.



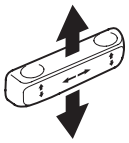
Moves the seat forward and backward.



Driver's seat only:
Moves the front of the seat up or down.



Driver's seat only:
Raises or lowers the seat.



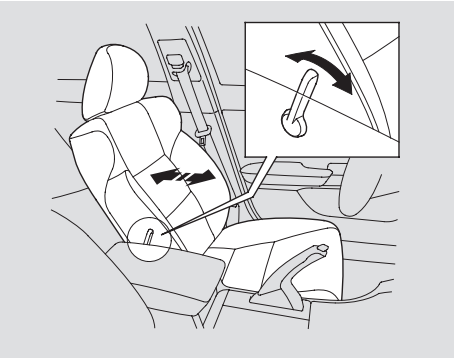
Driver's seat only:
Moves the whole seat up and forward, or down and backward. The front of the seat also tilts up or down at the same time.

Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
The driver's seat includes a memory feature. Two seat positions can be stored in separate memories. You can then select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate memory button. Refer to page 142 for how to memorize and select the seat positions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver's Lumbar Support

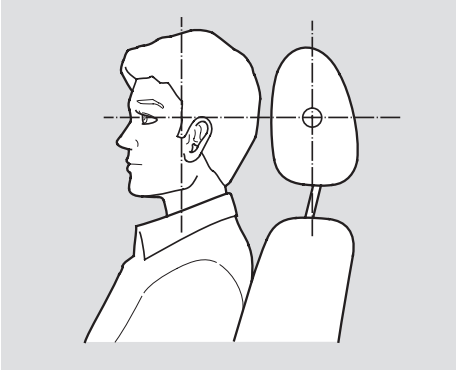


Vary the lumbar support by moving the lever on the side of the seat-back. Move the lever forward or backward to adjust the lumbar support through its full range.

Head Restraints

See page 14 for important safety information and a warning about improperly positioning head restraints.

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from whiplash and other injuries.

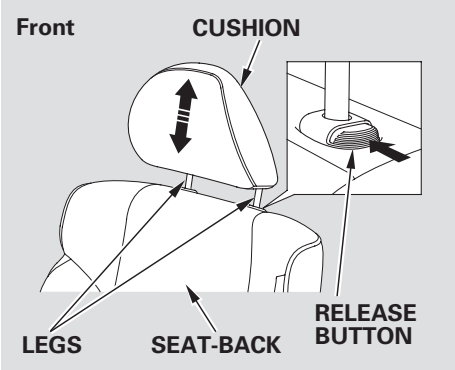


They are most effective when you adjust them so the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint.

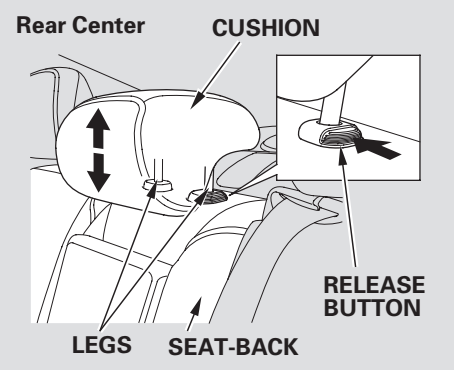
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats



Adjusting the Head Restraint
The head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust a restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.



Removing the Head Restraint
To remove a head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button, then pull the restraint out of the seat-back.

⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

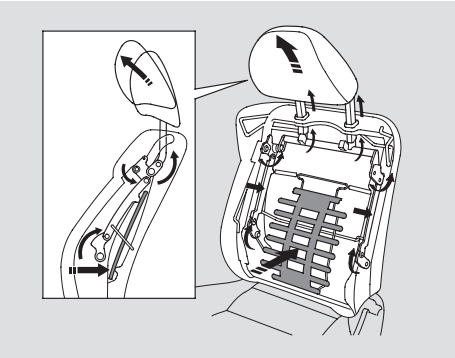
Always replace the head restraints before driving.

When reinstalling a head restraint, put the legs back in place. Then adjust it to the appropriate height while pressing the release button.

Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you reinstall it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Active Head Restraints



The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. If the vehicle is struck severely from the rear, the occupant properly secured with the seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will automatically move forward.

This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head. It also helps protect the occupants against whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.

After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position.

If the restraints do not return to their normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by an Acura dealer.

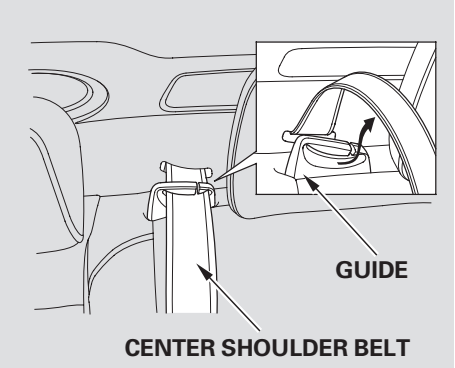
For a head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.
- Only use genuine Acura replacement head restraints.

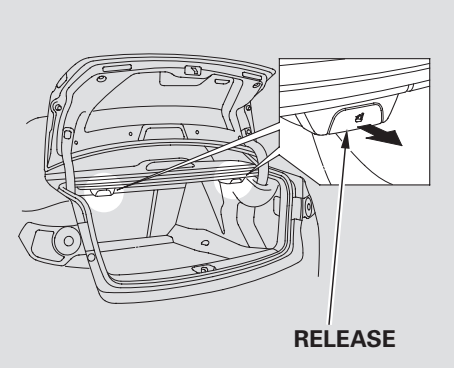
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats

Folding the Rear Seats
The back of the rear seat folds down to give you direct access to the trunk. Each side folds down separately. With only half the seat folded, you can still carry a passenger in the back seat. The seat-back can be released from inside the trunk.

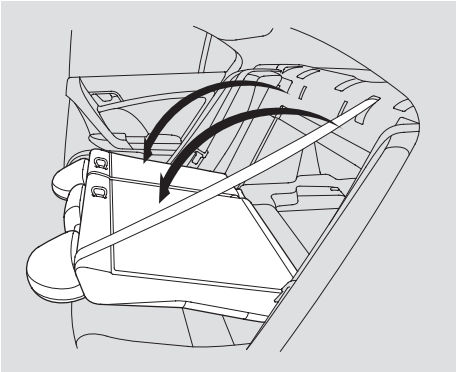


When storing cargo, you can move the rear center shoulder belt out of the way by removing the belt from the guide.



To release the seat-back from inside the trunk, pull the release under the trunk panel. Push the seat-back down from inside the trunk, or pull the seat-back down from inside the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Remove any items from the seat before you fold down the seat-back.

Make sure the rear seat armrest is stored.

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger's seat, as this could cause the weight sensors to work improperly.

If the rear head restraints get caught on the front seat backs and you cannot fold down the rear seat-back fully, you can remove the head restraints (see page 136).
Make sure the removed head restraints are securely stored.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it firmly against the trunk panel. Make sure it is latched in place by pulling on the top of the seat.

Make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the rear seat-back, and the center shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide whenever the seat-back is in its upright position. Be sure there are no twists in any shoulder belt.

Do not put any heavy items on the seat-back when it is folded down.

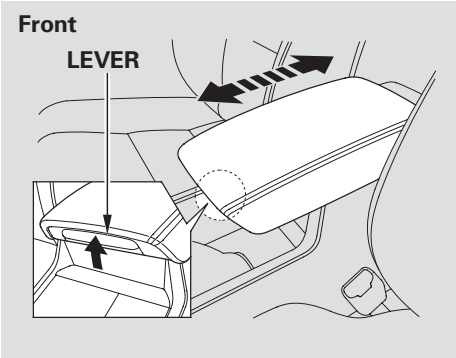
Make sure all items in the trunk, or items extending through the opening into the back seat, are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard. See **Carrying Cargo** on page 360 .

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the trunk lid open. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 55 .

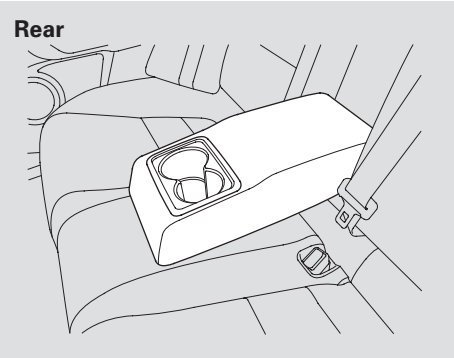
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats

Armrest



To use the console lid as an armrest, slide it to the desired position while pulling up the release lever. Release the lever to lock it in position where you want it to stop.

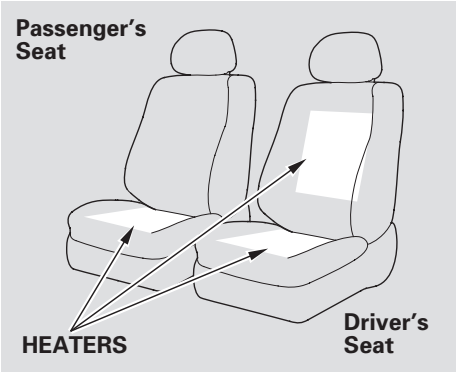


The rear seat armrest is in the center of the rear seat. Pivot it down to use it.

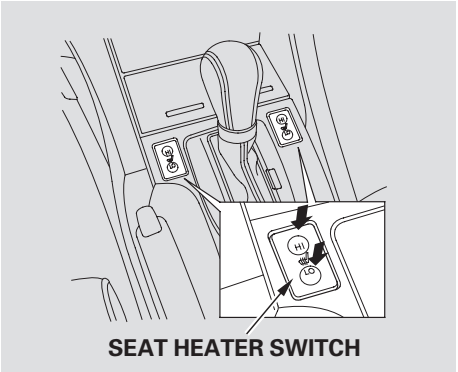
A beverage holder is located in the armrest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Heaters



Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. Because of the sensors for the side airbag cutoff system, there is no heater in the passenger's seat-back. The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use the heaters.



Push the front of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the back of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Position Memory System

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

Your vehicle has a memory feature for the driver's seat position.

Two seat positions can be stored in separate memories. You select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate button or using the appropriate remote transmitter (Driver 1 or Driver 2).

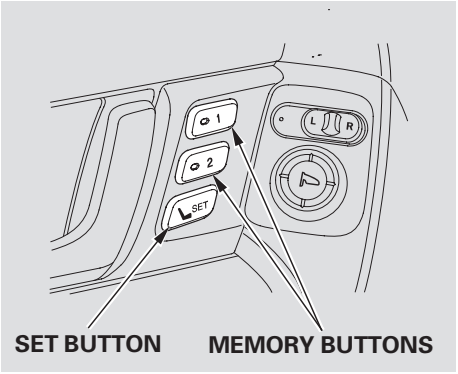
This setting can be linked or unlinked with the remote transmitter. To switch the link setting, see page 93 .

Storing a Driving Position in Memory

Store a driving position only when the vehicle is parked.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. You cannot add a new driving position to the memory unless the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. You can recall a memorized position with the ignition switch in any position.

2. Adjust the seat to a comfortable position (see page 134).



3. Press and release the SET button on the control panel. You will hear a beep. Immediately press and hold one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) until you hear two beeps. The indicator in the memory button will come on. The current position of the driver's seat is now stored.

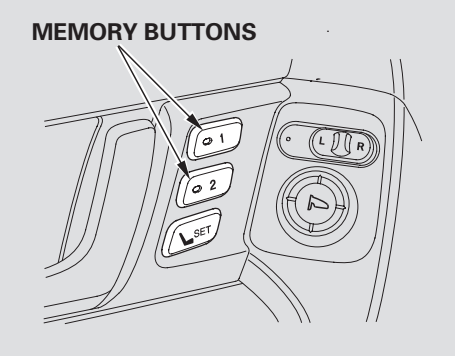
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To cancel the storing procedure after pressing the SET button, do any of the following:

- Fail to press a memory button within 5 seconds.
- Readjust the seat position.
- Turn the ignition switch out from the ON (II) position.

Each memory button stores only one driving position. Storing a new position erases the previous setting stored in that button's memory. If you want to add a new position while retaining the current one, use the other memory button.

Selecting a Memorized Position



To select a memorized position, do this:

1. Make sure the parking brake is set and the shift lever is in Park (automatic).
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2) until you hear a beep, then release the button.

The system will move the driver's seat to the memorized position. The indicator in the selected memory button will flash during movement. When the adjustment is complete, you will hear two beeps, and the indicator will stay on.

On vehicles with manual transmission
If the parking brake is not set, you must press and hold the memory button until the adjustment is complete.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

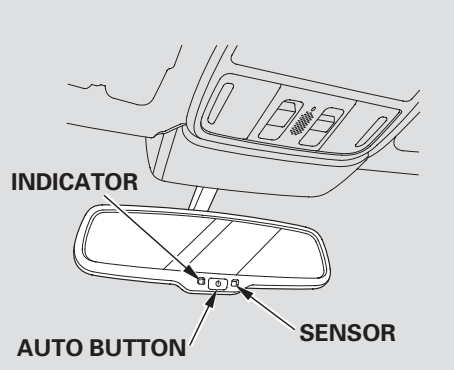
Driving Position Memory System

To stop the system's automatic adjustment, do any of these actions:

- Press any button on the control panel: SET, 1, or 2.
- Push any of the adjustment switches for the seat.
- Shift out of Park (automatic).
- Release the parking brake (manual).

If desired, you can use the adjustment switches to change the seat position after it is in its memorized position. If you change the memorized position, the indicator in the memory button will go out. To keep this seat position for later use, you must store it in the driver's seat position memory.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



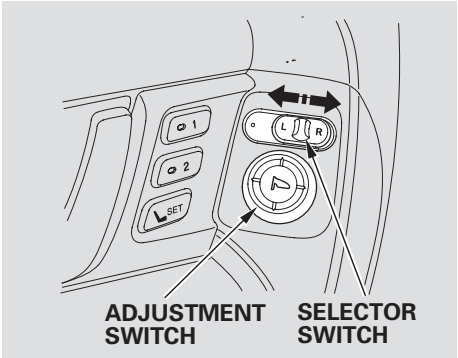
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror can automatically darken to reduce glare. To turn on this feature, press the button on the bottom of the mirror. The AUTO indicator comes on as a reminder. When it is on, the mirror darkens when it senses the headlights of a vehicle behind you, then returns to normal visibility when the lights are gone. Press the button again to turn off this feature.

NOTICE

There is also a sensor on the back of the mirror. Items hung on the mirror may block this sensor and affect its performance.

Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Move the selector switch to L (driver's side) or R (passenger's side).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors

3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.

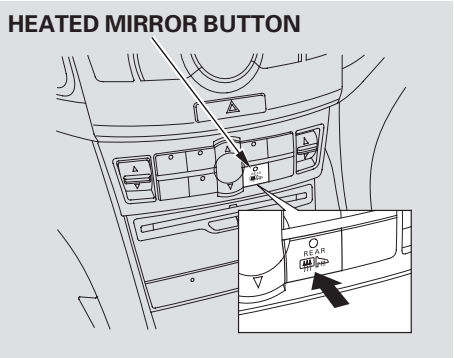
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the center (off) position. This turns the adjustment switch off to keep your settings.

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror

The passenger's outside mirror has a reverse tilt feature. When in reverse, the mirror will tilt down slightly to improve your view as you parallel park. Shifting out of reverse will return the mirror to its original position.

- To tilt the passenger mirror, place the selector switch in the right position.
- To turn the feature off, place the switch in the center or left position.

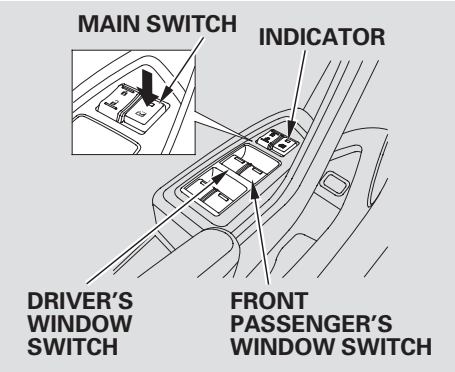
Power Mirror Heaters



The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the rear window defogger button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters and the defogger off.

This heated mirror function has a timer (see page 117).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window. To open a window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

AUTO – To open either front window fully, push the window switch firmly down to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

To close either front window fully, pull back the window switch firmly to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows

When you push the main switch in, the indicator comes on and the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. Use the main switch when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again. The switch will pop out and the indicator will go off.

The windows and the main switch feature will operate for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

The indicators inside the window switches come on when the light control switch is in either ≡DOC≡ or ≡D position.

AUTO REVERSE — If either front window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

NOTE: The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

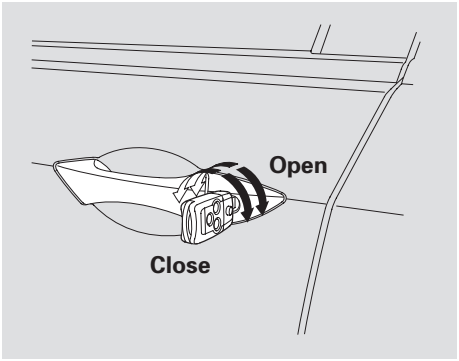
Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote Transmitter

You can open all of the windows and the moonroof from outside with the remote transmitter.

1. Press the UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver's door.
2. Press the UNLOCK button a second time, and hold it. The remaining doors unlock, and all four windows and the moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and moonroof, release the button.
3. To open the windows and moonroof further, press the button again (within 10 seconds of step 1) and hold it. If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 1 and 2.

You cannot close the windows or the moonroof with the remote transmitter.

Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key



You can open and close the windows and moonroof with the key in the driver's door lock.

To open:
1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.
2. Turn the key clockwise, then release it.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows

3. Turn the key clockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.

4. To open the windows and the moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 10 seconds of step 2).

To close:
1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.

2. Turn the key counterclockwise, then release it.

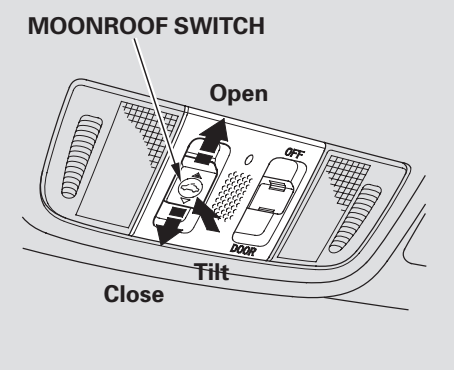
3. Turn the key counterclockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to close. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.

4. To close the windows and the moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 10 seconds of step 2).

NOTE: If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 2 and 3.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moonroof



The moonroof can be tilted up in the back for ventilation, or it can be slid back into the roof. Use the switch on the front ceiling to operate the moonroof. You must turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to operate the moonroof.

To tilt up the moonroof, push on the center of the moonroof switch. To stop the moonroof from tilting up fully, push the switch briefly.

To open the moonroof, pull back on the switch and hold it. Release the switch when the moonroof reaches the desired position. To close the moonroof, push the switch forward and hold it. Release the switch to stop the operation.

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

AUTO – To open the moonroof fully, pull back the moonroof switch firmly, then release it. The moonroof automatically opens all the way. To stop the moonroof from opening, push the switch briefly.

To close the moonroof fully, firmly push the moonroof switch forward, then release it. The moonroof automatically closes all the way. To stop the moonroof from closing, push the switch briefly.

To open or close the moonroof partially, lightly pull the switch back or push it forward and hold it. The moonroof will stop when you release the switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moonroof

Auto Reverse
If the moonroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the moonroof, remove the obstacle, then use the moonroof switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the moonroof before closing it.

You can open and close the moonroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

NOTICE

If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or its motor.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof from the outside. Refer to page 149 for details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Brake

To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 61).

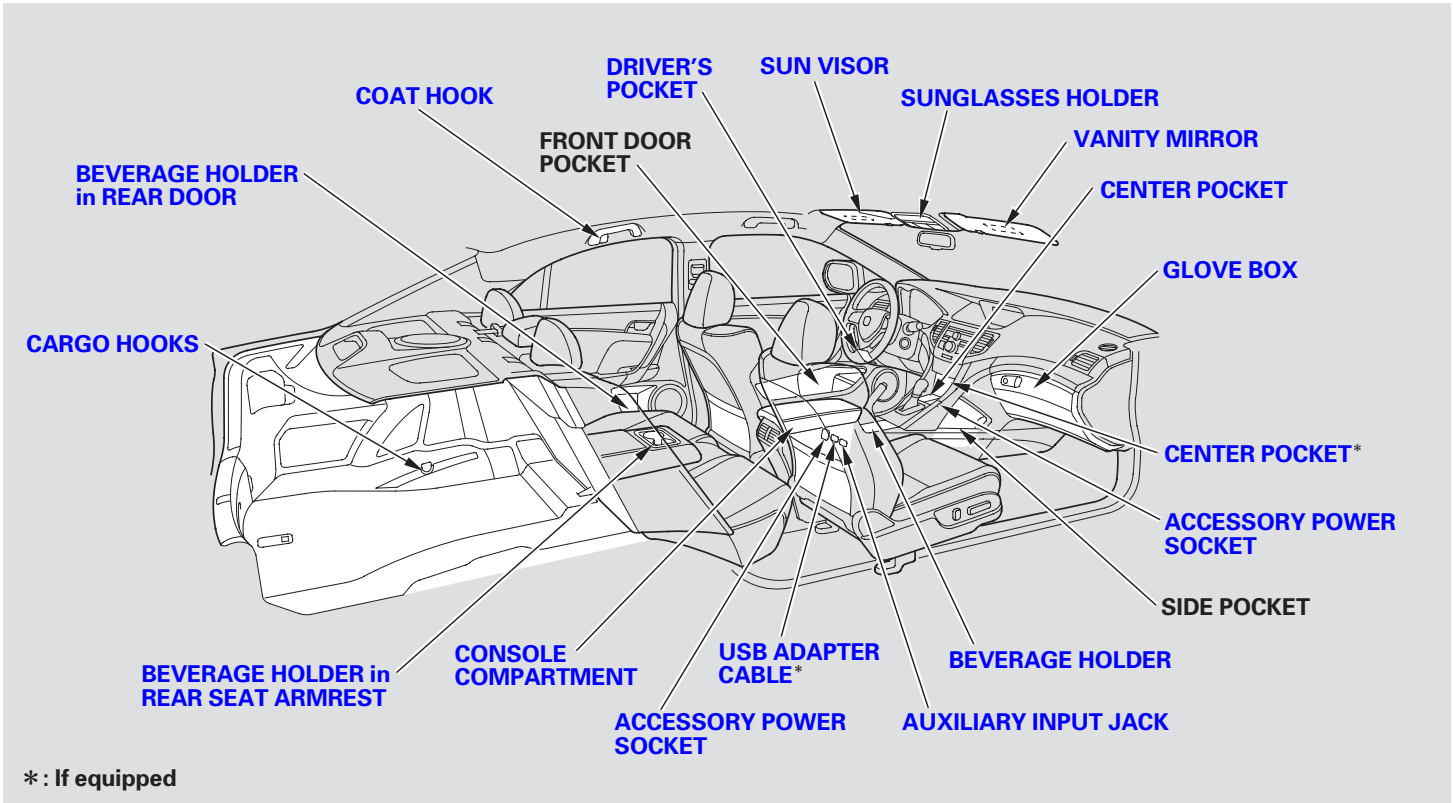
If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a "RELEASE PARKING BRAKE" message on the multi-information display.

NOTICE

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and hubs. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

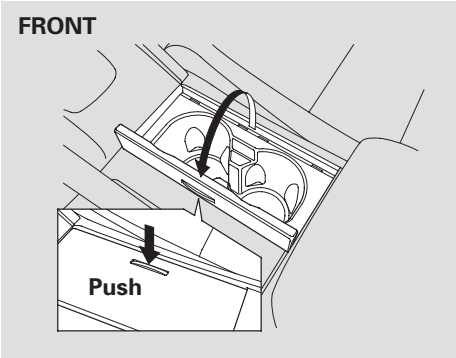
Interior Convenience Items



*: If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

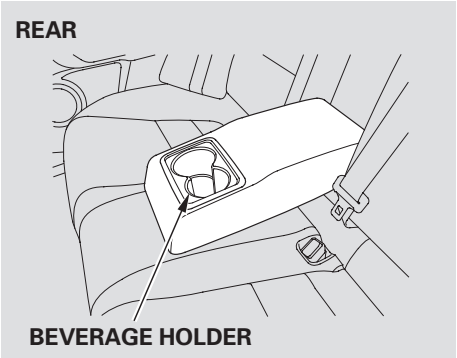
Beverage Holders



To use the front beverage holder, push on the lid. It will swing open. To close the lid, push it down until it latches.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Liquid can also spill from the rear door pocket beverage holders when you open or close the doors. Use only resealable containers in the door pockets.

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

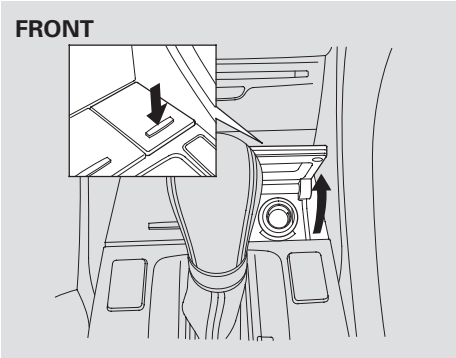


The rear seat also has a beverage holder in the center armrest. To use it, pivot the armrest down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

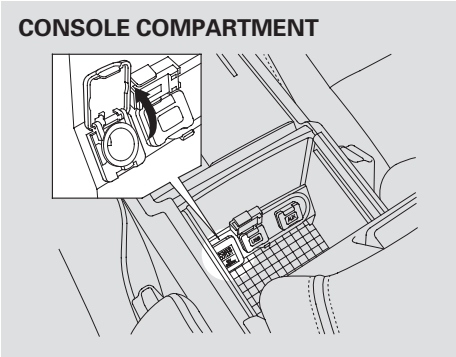
Accessory Power Sockets



Your vehicle has two accessory power sockets; one is at the front of the center console and the other is in the console compartment.

To use an accessory power socket, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

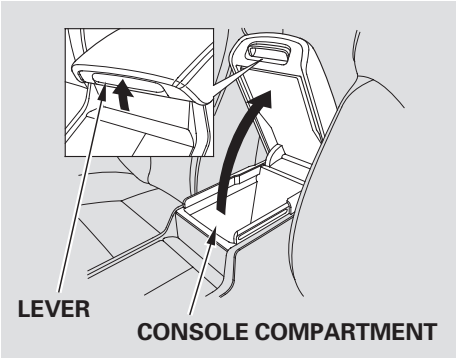
Each socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).



None of the sockets will power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

Make sure to put the socket cover back in place to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the socket.

Console Compartment

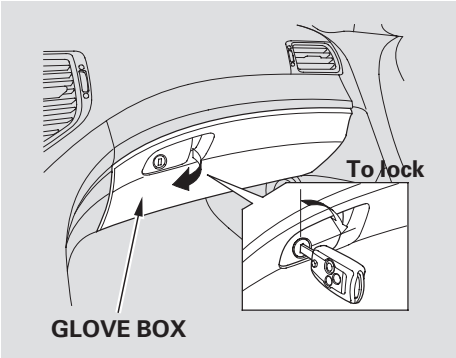


To open the console compartment, pull up on the lever and lift the armrest.

To close, lower the armrest, and push it down until it latches.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Glove Box



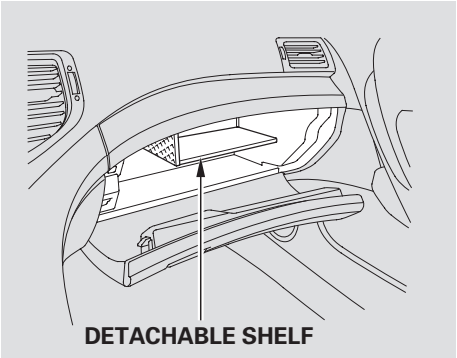
Open the glove box by pulling the handle to the left. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the master key.

The glove box light comes on when the parking lights are on.

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

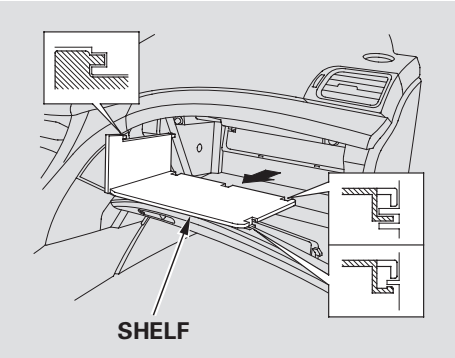


Inside the glove box, there is a detachable shelf.

CONTINUED

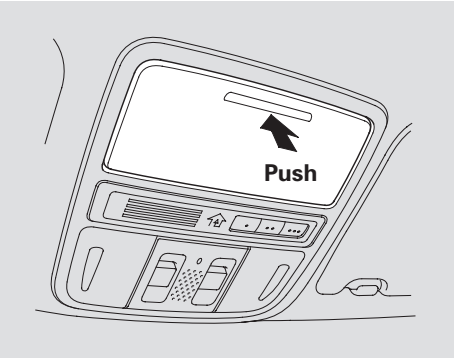
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

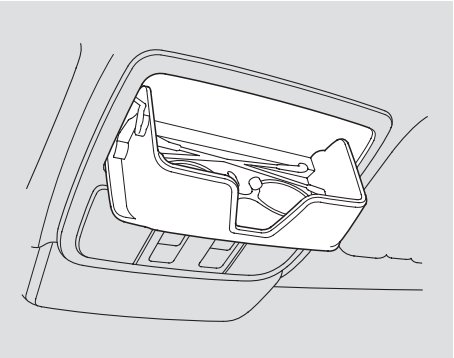


You can remove the shelf to get more space in the glove box. To remove it, open the glove box and pull out the shelf while disengaging its tabs from the glove box frame.

Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push then release the indent. It will unlatch and swing down. To close it, push it until it latches. Make sure the holder is closed while you are driving.

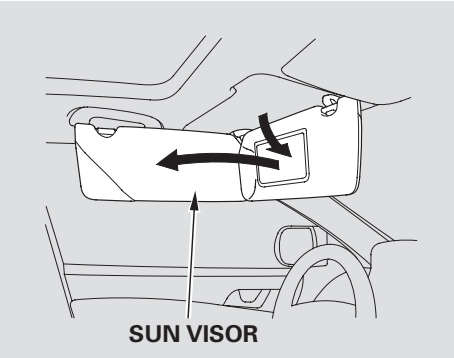


Some larger styles of sunglasses may not fit in the holder.

You may also store small items in this holder. Make sure they are small enough to let the holder close and latch, and that they are not heavy enough to cause the holder to pop open while driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

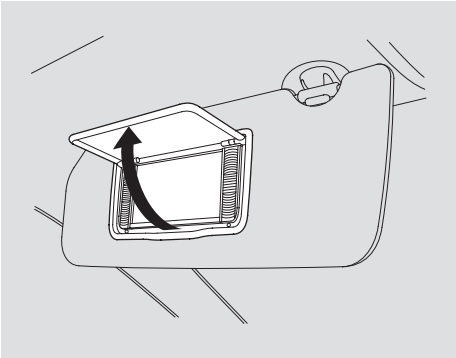
Sun Visors



To use the sun visor, pull it down. You can also use the sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip and swing the sun visor toward the side window.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.

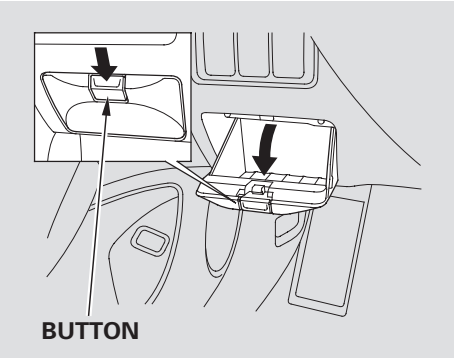
Vanity Mirror



To use the vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

The vanity mirror lights come on when you pull up the cover.

Driver's Pocket

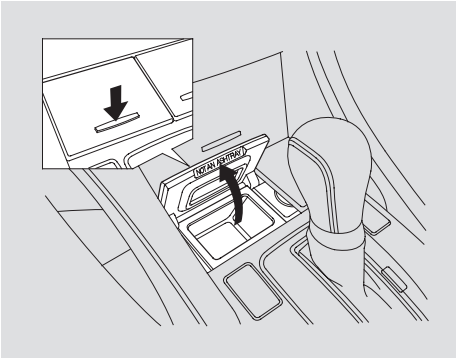


To open the driver's pocket, push the button on the lid. To close it, push the lid up until it latches.

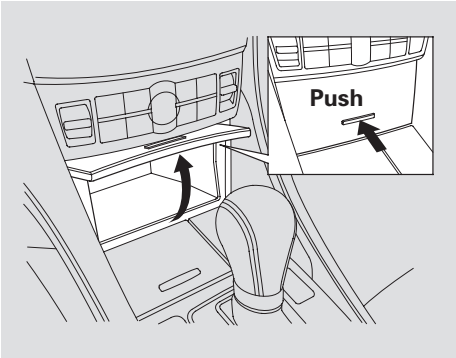
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

Center Pockets

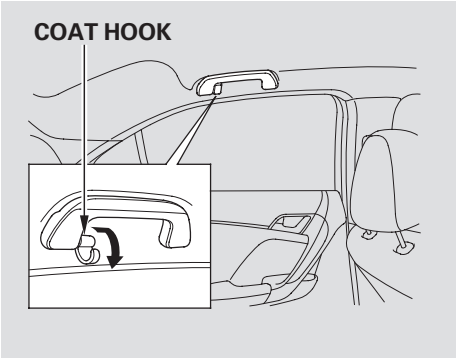


To open the pocket, push on the lid. To close it, push the lid down until it latches.



On vehicles without navigation system
To open the center pocket, push on the lid. It will unlatch and swing up. To close it, push the lid down until it latches.

Coat Hook



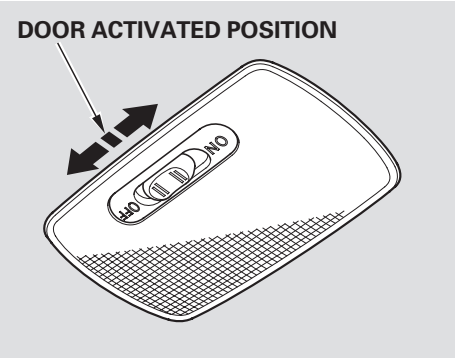
To use a coat hook, slide it out slightly, then pull it down.

Make sure the coat hook is pulled up when you are not using it. This hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lights

Ceiling Light



The ceiling light has a three-position switch: ON, Door Activated, and OFF. In the Door Activated (center) position, the light comes on when you:

- Open any door.
- Unlock the driver's door with the key or remote transmitter.

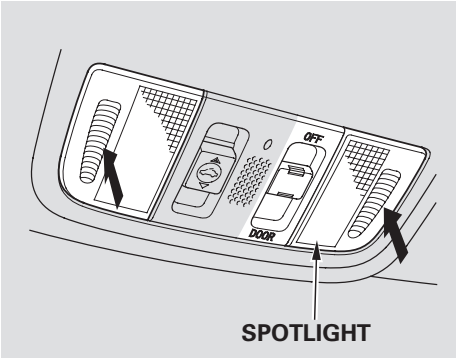
After all doors are closed tightly, the light dims slightly, then fades out in about 30 seconds.

The ceiling light (with the switch in the center position) comes on when you remove the key from the ignition switch. If you do not open a door, the light stays on, then fades out in about 30 seconds.

To change the "INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME" setting, see page 95 .

If you leave any door open without the key in the ignition switch, the ceiling light will go off after about 15 minutes.

Spotlights

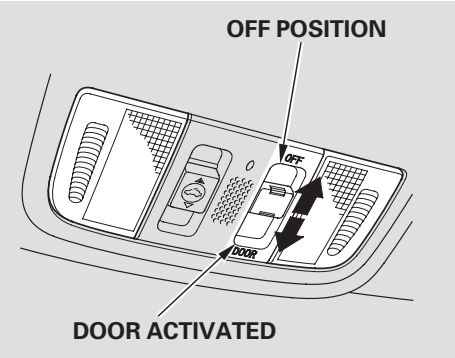


Turn on a spotlight by pushing the lens. Push the lens again to turn it off. You can use the spotlights at all times.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

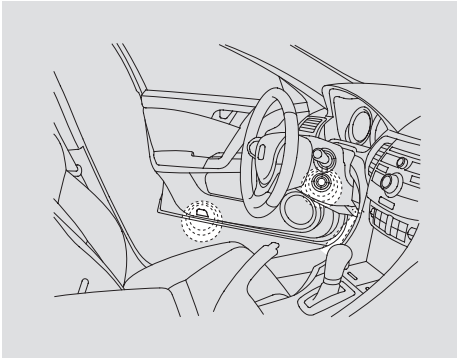
Interior Lights



The spotlights have a two-position switch. In the DOOR position, the lights come on when you open any door. The lights fade out in about 30 seconds after the doors are closed tightly. In the OFF position, the lights do not come on.

The spotlights (with the switch in the DOOR position) also come on when you unlock the door with the key or the remote transmitter, and when you remove the key from the ignition switch.

Courtesy Lights

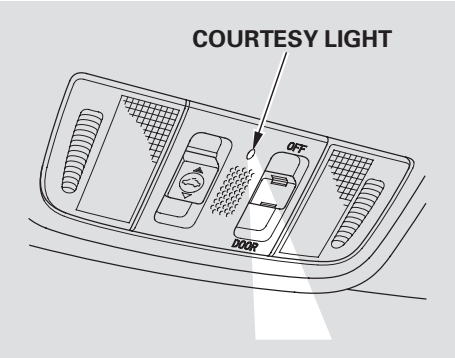


The courtesy light in each door comes on when the door is opened, and goes out when the door is closed.

Your vehicle also has a courtesy light in the ignition switch. This light comes on when you open the driver's door. It fades out in about 30 seconds after the door is closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lights



The courtesy light between the spotlights comes on when you turn the parking lights on. To adjust its brightness, turn the instrument panel brightness control knob on the dashboard, with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position (see page 115).

In addition to the courtesy light on the ceiling, the driver's ambient foot light comes on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2010 TSX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The climate control system in your vehicle provides a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

The standard audio system has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

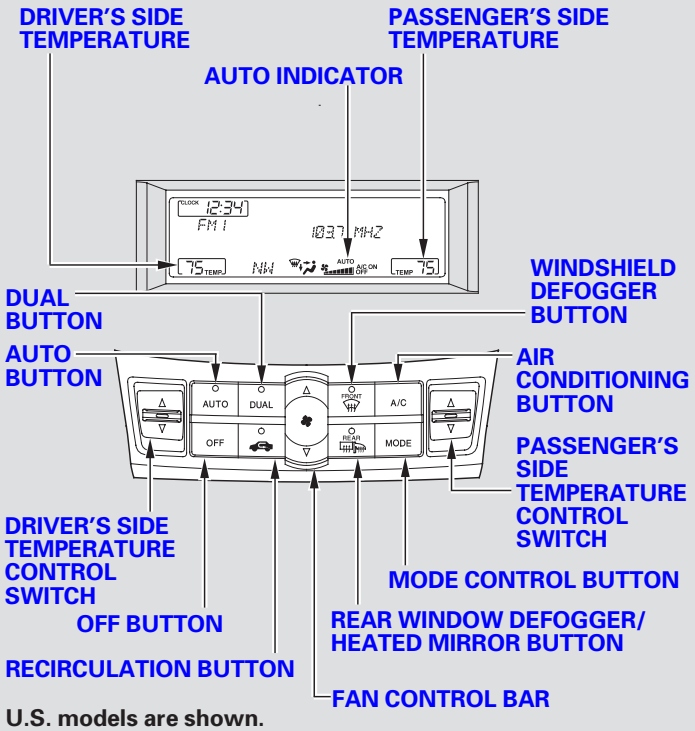
The security system helps to discourage vandalism and theft of your vehicle.

Climate Control System 166
Using Automatic Climate Control 167
Dual Temperature Control 171
Climate Control Sensors 173
Audio System 174
Models without navigation system
Audio System 175
Playing the FM/AM Radio 176
Playing the XM® Radio 183
Playing a Disc 189
Disc Player Error Messages 198
Playing an iPod® 199
iPod® Error Messages 207
Playing a USB Flash Memory Device 208
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages 216
Bluetooth® Audio System 217
Models with navigation system
Audio System 222
Playing the FM/AM Radio 223
Playing the XM® Radio 236
Playing Discs 244
Disc Changer Error Messages 255
Protecting Your Discs 256
Playing an iPod® 259
iPod® Error Messages 268
Playing a USB Flash Memory Device 269
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages 278
Bluetooth® Audio System 279
FM/AM Radio Reception 284
Remote Audio Controls 286
Auxiliary Input Jack 287
Radio Theft Protection 288
Setting the Clock 289
Security System 292
Compass 294
Cruise Control 298
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver 301
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 304
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only) 328
Rearview Camera and Monitor 344

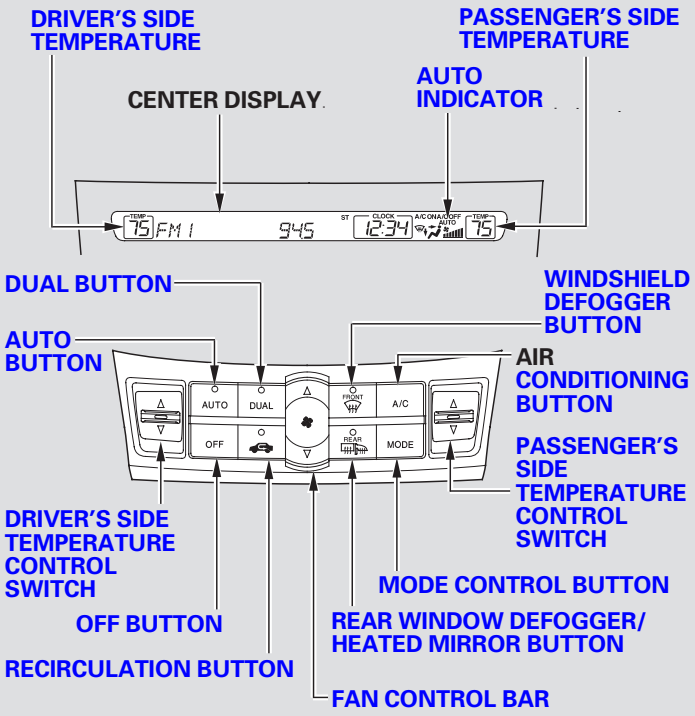
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Without navigation system



With navigation system



U.S. models are shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice Control System

On models with navigation system

The climate control system can also be operated by voice control. See the Navigation System manual for complete details.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system in your vehicle maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels.

1. Press the Auto button. The indicator in the button also comes on as a reminder. You will see AUTO on the display (in the center display on models with navigation system).

2. Set the desired temperature with the temperature control switch. You can set the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature separately.

   The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.

Temperature Control

The driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately. Push up the switch of the appropriate temperature control to increase the temperature of airflow. Push down the switch to decrease it. Each set temperature is shown in the display (in the center display on models with navigation system).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

When you set the temperature to its lower limit (Lo) or its upper limit (Hi), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

When you adjust a fan control, the fan is taken out of AUTO mode.

When the indicator in the dual button is on, the driver's side and passenger's side temperature can be controlled independently (see page 171).

On models with navigation system
In AUTO mode, the vehicle's interior temperature is independently regulated for the driver and front passenger according to each adjusted temperature. The system also regulates each temperature based on the information of the sun light sensor and the sun's position which is updated automatically by the navigation's global positioning system (GPS). If one side of the vehicle is getting too much sun, the system lowers the temperature only on that side.

Dual Button
You can set the temperatures for the driver's side and the passenger's side separately when this button is pressed (indicator is on). When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, the temperatures for both sides are synchronized to the driver's side set temperature. When defrost mode is selected, dual mode operation is canceled.

To Turn Everything Off
If you press the OFF button, the climate control system shuts off completely.

- Keep the system completely off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Semi-automatic Operation
You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

Fan Control
Press the ▲ side of the bar to increase the fan speed and airflow. Press the ▼ side of the bar to decrease them.

Air Conditioning (A/C) Button
This button turns the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the temperature control below the outside temperature.

Recirculation Button
When the indicator in the button is on, air from the vehicle's interior is sent through the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the climate control system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Rear Window Defogger Button This button turns the rear window defogger off and on (see page 117).

Pushing this button also turns the power mirror heaters on and off.

Mode Control
Use the mode control button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard vents in all modes.

Airflow is divided between the floor and corner vents and the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

Air flows from the floor vents.

Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard.

Windshield Defroster Button This button directs the main airflow to the windshield for faster defrosting. It also overrides any mode selection you may have made.

When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. For faster defrosting, manually set the fan speed to high. You can also increase airflow to the windshield by closing the center and corner vents on the dashboard. To close the vents, rotate the wheel on the side of each center and corner vent.

When you turn off by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

To remove fog from the inside of the windows, set as follows:

1. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.
2. Adjust the temperature with the driver's side temperature control so the airflow feels warm.
3. Select to help clear the rear window.
4. To increase airflow to the windshield, close the center and corner vents.
   For faster defogging, manually set the fan speed to high.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

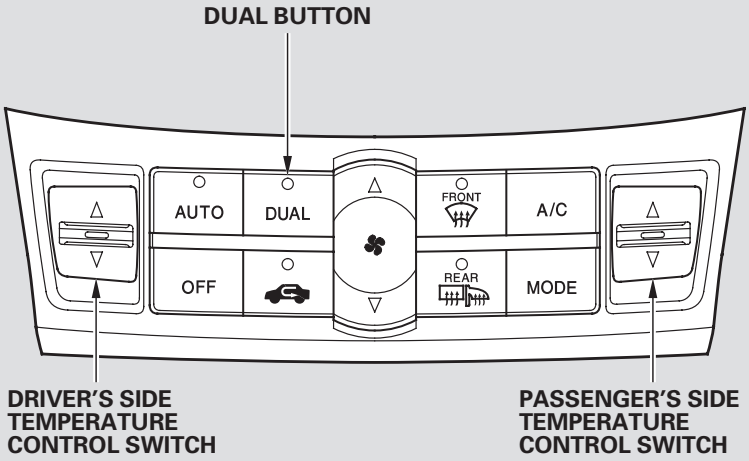
When the indicator in the button is on, the front passenger's temperature cannot be set separately from the driver's.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Temperature Control
Your vehicle has two temperature control switches, one for the driver, and one for the front passenger.

The driver's side and the passenger's side temperature can be controlled independently by adjusting these switches when the green indicator in the DUAL button is on.

Temperature Control
Push AUTO or . The selected temperatures appear in the display (in the center display on models with navigation system). When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, you can adjust both sides to the same temperature by pushing the driver's side temperature control switch up or down.



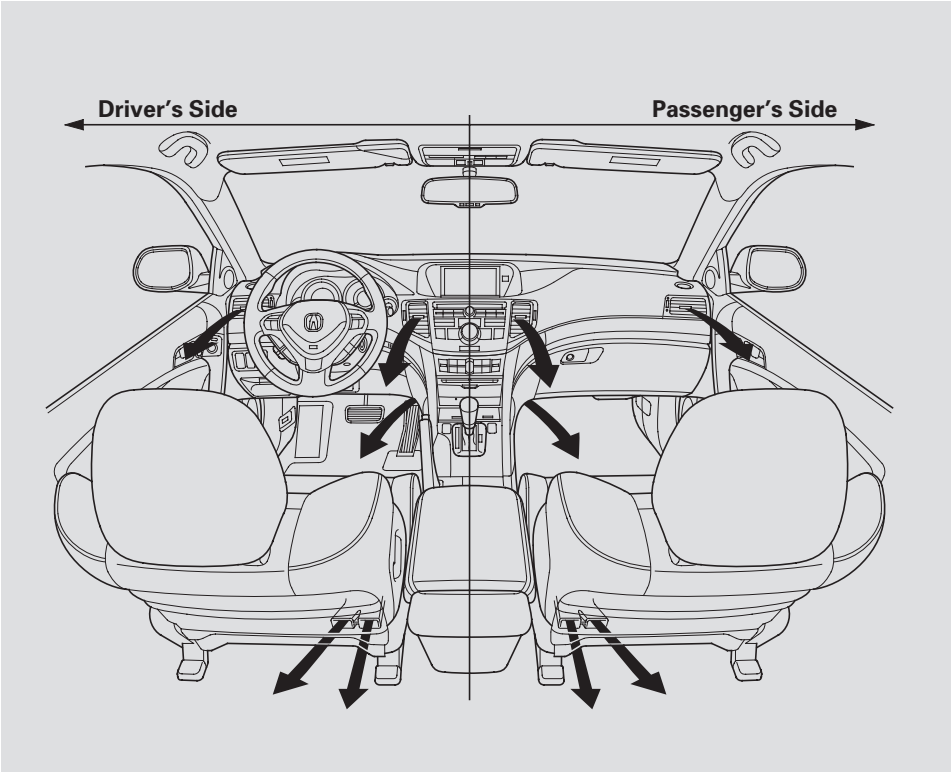
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

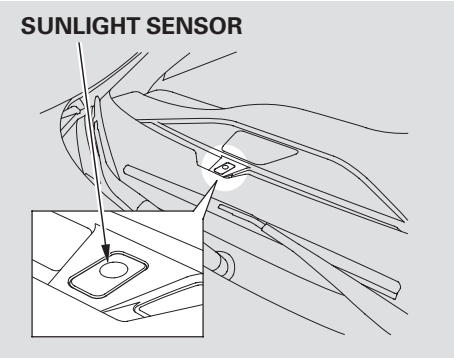
To set the driver's side temperature to a different value than the passenger's, press the DUAL button, then push the switch up or down on the driver's side. To set the passenger's side to a different value than the driver's, push the switch up or down on the passenger's side. You can adjust the passenger's side without pressing the DUAL button first.

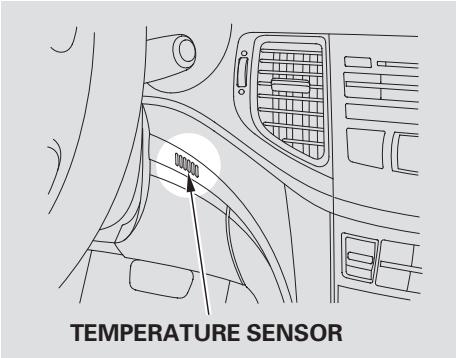
When you set the temperature to its upper or lower limit, it is displayed as Hi or Lo .



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control Sensors





The climate control system has two sensors: a sunlight sensor on top of the dashboard, and a temperature sensor next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

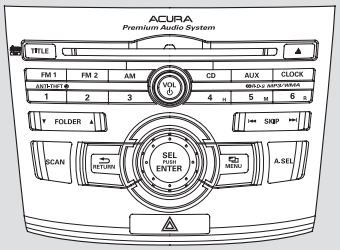
An audio system is standard on all models. Read the appropriate pages (as shown below) to use your vehicle's audio system.

For vehicles without navigation system, see pages 175 through 221 .

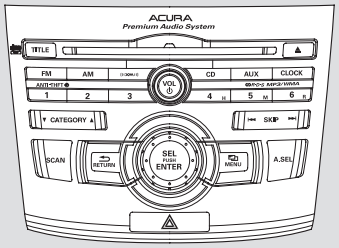
For vehicles with navigation system, see pages 222 through 283 .

Audio system without navigation system

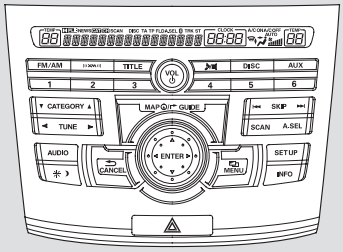
Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine



All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

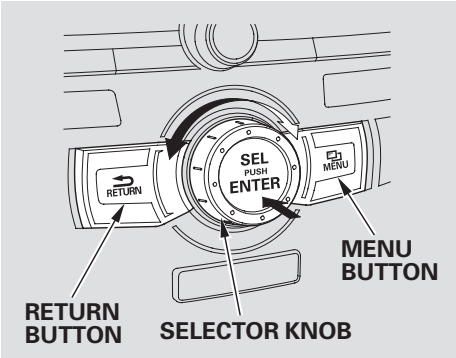


Audio system with navigation system



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selector Knob



Most audio system functions can be controlled by standard buttons, bars, and knobs. In addition, you can access some functions by using the selector knob on the audio system.

The knob turns left and right. Use it to scroll through lists, or to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu item on the display. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

When the audio system is in XM® Radio mode or playing discs, pushing the selector (ENTER) knob switches the display between the normal display and the extended display. The extended display has three segments to display the detailed information.

Menu Display

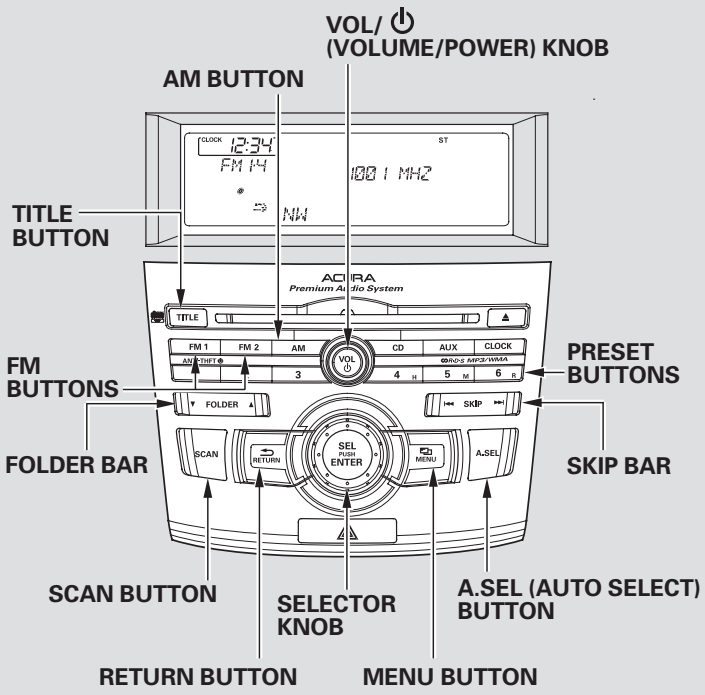
To select any setting such as the clock, sound adjusting, or the compass, press the MENU button. To use any audio system function, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. You can select the item by turning the selector knob. To go back to the previous display, press the RETURN button.

Pressing the MENU button again will also cancel the menu display mode.

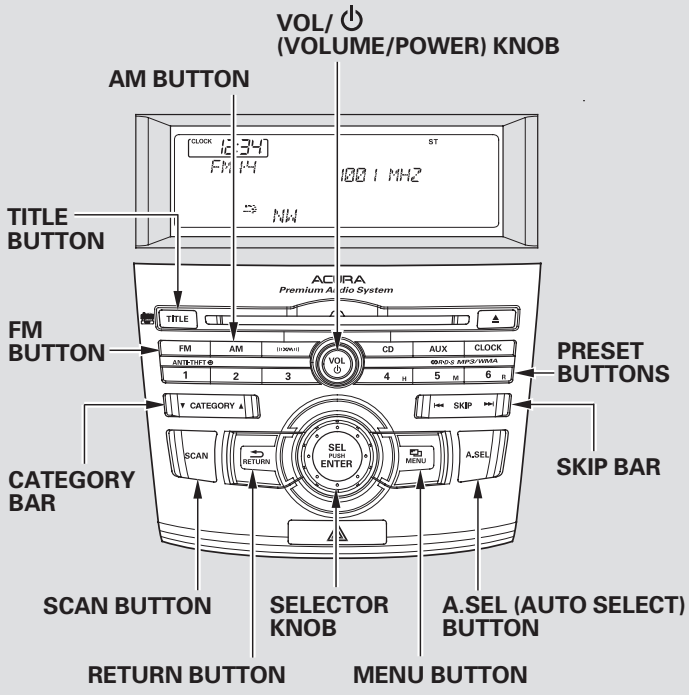
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Without XM® Radio



With XM® Radio



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models without navigation system)

To Play the Radio
The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the VOL/ ⏻ (power/volume) knob or the AM or FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM or FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.

To Select a Station
You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, skip, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

On the FM band, you can also use the features provided by the radio data system (RDS). For more information on the RDS, see page 179 .

TUNE — Use the selector knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob right to tune to a higher frequency, or left to tune to a lower frequency.

SKIP — The skip function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press and hold the ►►| or |◄◄ side of the SKIP bar until you hear a beep, then release it.

SCAN — The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. When the system finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Preset — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.
2. Use the tune, skip, scan, or RDS function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick a preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. "A-SEL" flashes in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. It stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a "0" displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for that preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

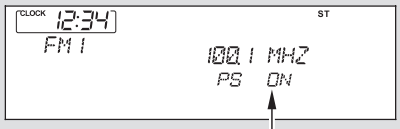
To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL (auto select) button. This restores the presets you originally set.

For information on FM/AM radio frequencies and reception, see page 284 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Data System (RDS)
On the FM band, you can select a favorite station and display the program service name provided by the radio data system (RDS).

Program Service (PS) Name Display
The program service name display function shows the name of the station you are listening to. You can turn this function on or off.



PROGRAM SERVICE NAME DISPLAY ON

To switch the function between on and off, press and release the TITLE button. With the system on, you will see the “PS ON” message on the display. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the displayed frequency switches to the station name.

If the station you are listening to is not an RDS station, the display continues to show the frequency with the PS name display function on.

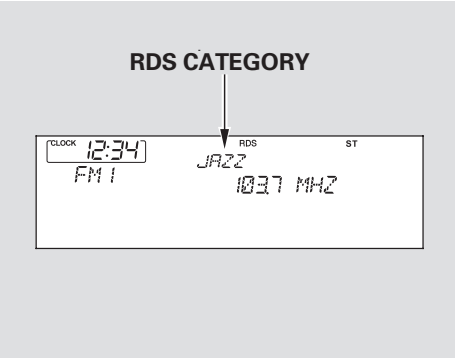
When you turn off this function by pressing the TITLE button, the display shows “PS OFF.”

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models without navigation system)

Radio Data System (RDS) Category



On the FM band selected, you can select the program category provided by the RDS. Press either side (▲ or ▼) of the CATEGORY bar (FOLDER bar on models without XM radio) to display and select an RDS category. The principal RDS categories are shown as follows:

ALL: All RDS category stations
ROCK: Rock, classic rock and soft rock music
COUNTRY: Country music
SOFT: Adult hits and soft music
TOP 40: Top 40 hits
OLDIES: Nostalgia music and oldies
R & B: Rhythm and blues, and soft rhythm and blues
RELIGION: Programs concerned with religion
CLASSIC: Classical music
JAZZ: Jazz
INFO: News, information, sports, talk shows, foreign language, personality, public, college, and weather
TRAFFIC: Traffic information

Press either side of the CATEGORY bar (FOLDER bar on models without XM Radio) to select an RDS category. The display shows the selected RDS category name for about 10 seconds. You can use the search or scan function to find radio stations in the selected RDS category. If you do nothing while the RDS category name is displayed, the selected category is canceled.

RDS Program Search

This function searches up and down a frequency for the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the selected RDS category information. This can help you to find a station in your favorite category. To activate it, press and release either side (⏮ or ⏭) of the SKIP bar. You will see the selected RDS category name blinking while searching it. When the system finds a station, the selected RDS category name will be displayed again for about 5 seconds.

If the system does not find a station, “NOTHING” will be blinking for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RDS Program SCAN

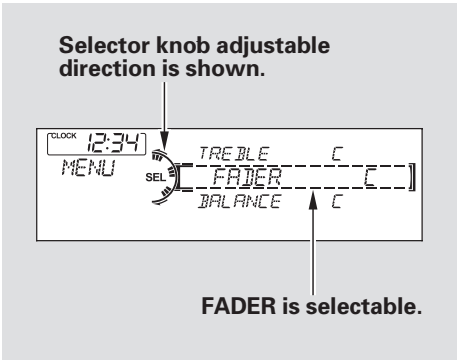
The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected RDS category. To activate it, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal in the selected RDS category. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking while searching it. When it finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

If the system does not find a station, "NOTHING" will be blinking for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

You can use the RDS program search or scan function even if the PS name display function is off. In this case, the display shows a frequency in place of a PS name.

Adjusting the Sound

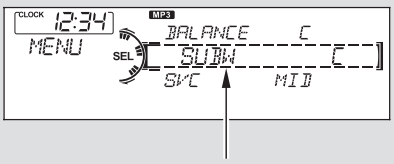


Press the MENU button to display the sound settings. Turn the selector knob to select an appropriate setting: bass, treble, fader, balance, SUBW (subwoofer), SVC (speed-sensitive volume compensation), and CLOCK ADJUST (clock adjustment). Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter the setting, then turn the selector knob to adjust the setting.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models without navigation system)



SUBWOOFER is selectable.

BASS — Adjusts the bass.

TREBLE — Adjusts the treble.

FADER — Adjusts the front-to-back strength of the sound.

BALANCE — Adjusts the side-to-side strength of the sound.

SUBW — Adjusts the strength of sound from the subwoofer speaker.

SVC — Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

CLOCK ADJUST — Adjusts the clock setting (see page 290).

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the selector knob to adjust the setting to your liking. When the level reaches the center, you will see “C” in the display.

To return to the normal play, push the RETURN or MENU button after you stop adjusting a mode.

Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

The SVC has four modes: SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. Turn the selector knob to adjust the setting to your liking. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

This function is set to MID as the default setting when the vehicle leaves the factory.

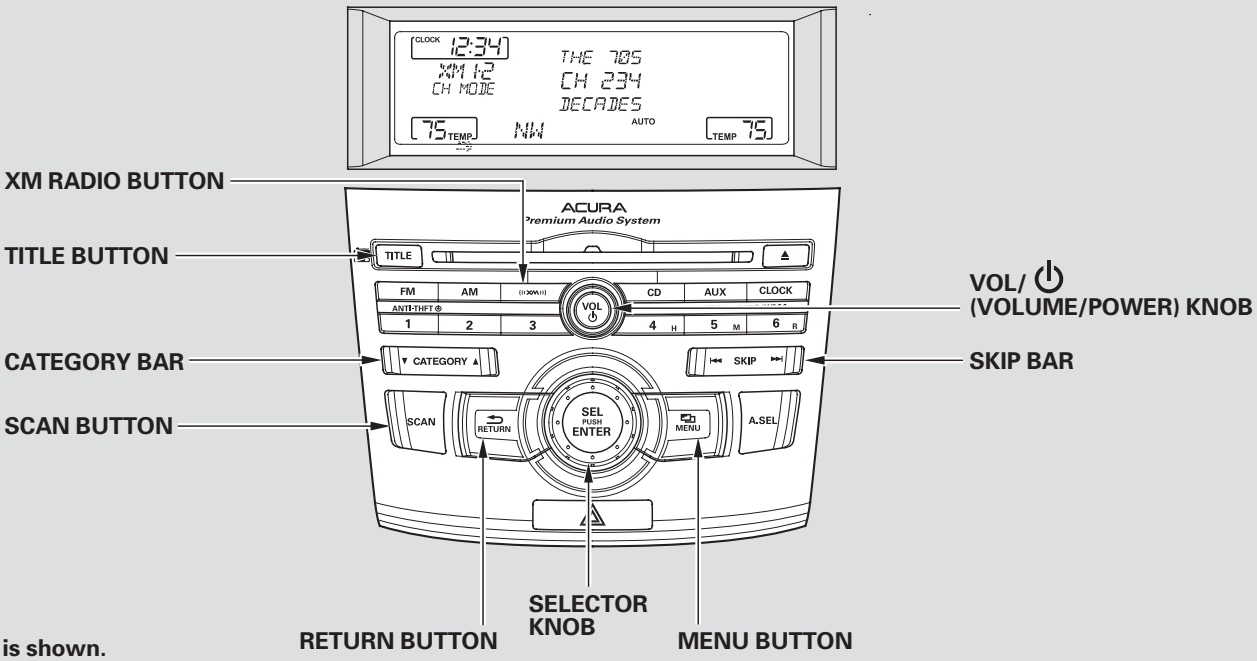
Audio System Lighting

You can use the instrument panel brightness control knob to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page115). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine



U.S. model is shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM® Radio anywhere in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico. XM is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio, Inc. and XM CANADA® is a registered business name of Canadian Satellite Radio Inc.

XM Radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM Radio allows you to view channel and category selections in the display.

Operating the XM Radio

To listen to XM Radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, and press the «XM» button. The last channel you listened to will show in the display. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

MODE — To switch between channel mode and category mode, press and hold the TITLE button until the mode changes.

In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels. In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can select all of the channels within that category.

Each time you press and release the TITLE button, the display changes in the following sequence: name, title, and category.

You can also change the mode from the menu items. Press the MENU button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select MODE/CATEGORY or MODE/CHANNEL and press the selector knob (ENTER). Each time you press and release the selector knob (ENTER), the display changes between CHANNEL and CATEGORY. To enter the setting, press the «XM» button.

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist's name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

TUNE – Turn the selector knob to change channel selections. Turn the knob right for higher numbered channels and left for lower numbered channels. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

Channel list is shown.

You can also select a channel or category from the list by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to the list displayed with three segments, then turn the knob to select a channel or category. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

CATEGORY (▼ or ▲) – Press either side of the CATEGORY bar to select another category.

SCAN – The SCAN function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the stations within that category are scanned. To activate scan, press the SCAN button. The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the button again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

Preset — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:
1. Press the «XM» button. Either XM1 or XM2 will show in the display.

2. Use the selector knob, or the CATEGORY bar or SCAN button to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the «XM» button again. The other XM band will show. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

XM Radio Display Messages

"LOADING" — XM is loading the audio or program information.

"OFF AIR" — The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

"UPDATING" — The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

"NO SIGNAL" — The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

" - - - - " — The selected channel number does not exist, or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

"ANTENNA" — There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

"NO INFO" — The selected channel has no artist or title information at this time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

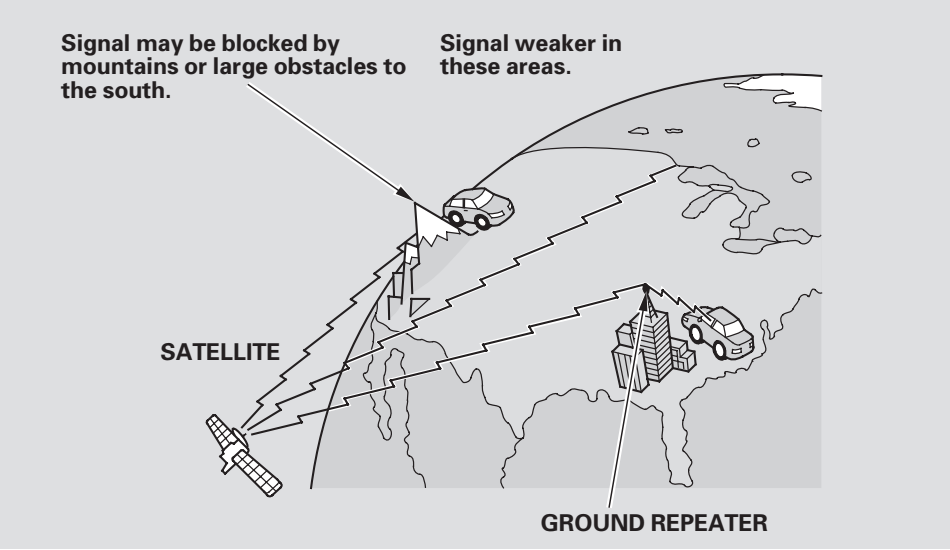
Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.

Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator. Carrying large items on a roof rack can also block the signal.

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.


Signal may be blocked by mountains or large obstacles to the south.
Signal weaker in these areas.
SATELLITE
GROUND REPEATER

- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.
- Large items carried on a roof rack.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models without navigation system)

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM Radio reception.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Receiving XM Radio Service
If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, press the «XM» button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

If you decide to purchase XM radio service, contact XM Radio at *www.xmradio.com*, or at 1-800-852-9696. In Canada, contact XM CANADA® at *www.xmradio.ca*, or at 1-877-209-0079. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, press the «XM» button, then turn the selector knob until "CH 000" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

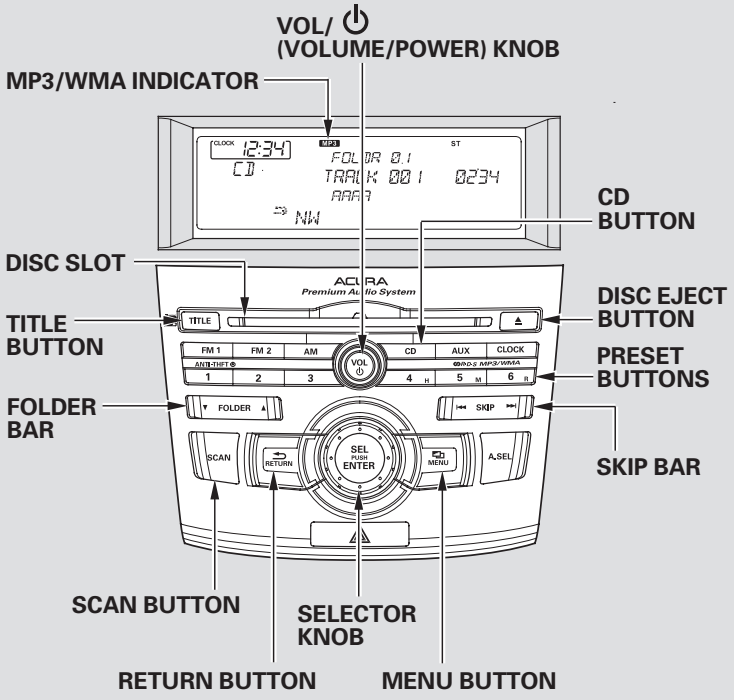
After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the XM Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, "CATEGORY" or "CHANNEL" will appear in the display, and you'll be able to listen to XM radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM® Radio. In Canada, contact XM CANADA®.

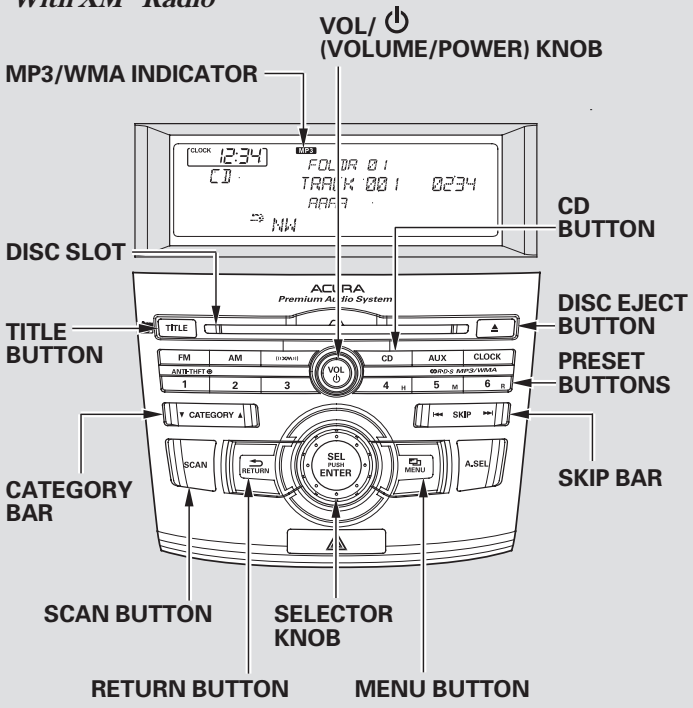
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
Without XM® Radio



All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
With XM® Radio



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

To Play a Disc
To load or play a disc, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

You operate the disc player with the same controls used for the radio. To select the disc player, press the CD button. You will see "CD" in the display. The disc and track numbers, and the elapsed time are shown in the display. You can also select the displayed information with the TITLE button (see page 191). The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA format. When playing a disc in MP3, you will see "MP3" in the display. In WMA format, "WMA" will appear in the display. The disc, folder and track numbers are displayed. You can select up to 255 folders or tracks.

A disc compressed in AAC format cannot be played in this audio system.

Video CDs and DVDs do not work in this unit.

The specifications for compatible MP3 files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
  16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bitrate:
  32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps (MPEG1)
  8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160 kbps (MPEG2)
  Compatible with variable bitrate and multi-session
- Maximum layers (including ROOT): 8 layers

The specifications for compatible WMA files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  22.05/32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate:
  48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps
  Compatible with variable bitrate and multi-session
- Maximum layers (including ROOT): 8 layers

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

NOTE:
If a file on a WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, and then skips to the next file.

To Load a Disc
Insert a disc about halfway into the disc slot. The drive will pull the disc in the rest of the way to play it. You operate the disc player with the same controls used for the radio. The number of the current track is shown in the display. When playing a disc in MP3 or WMA, the numbers of the current folder and file are shown. The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this unit.

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 256 .

Text Data Display Function
Each time you press the TITLE button, the display shows you the text, if the disc was recorded with text data.

You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the artist, album, and track tag.

With the folder name, you will see the FOLDER indicator in the display. The TRACK indicator is shown with the file or track name.

When you press and release the TITLE button while a disc without text data is playing, you will see “NO INFO” on the display.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

The display shows up to 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.).

If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the ▶ indicator on the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown. You can see up to 31 characters of text data.

If you press and hold the TITLE button again, the display shows the first 15 characters again.

If any letter is not available, it is replaced with " . " (dot) in the display. When the disc has no text data, you will see "NO INFO" on the display.

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.

When playing a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, the display shows the folder and file name.

When you turn on the audio system next time, the system keeps your selection with the TITLE button.

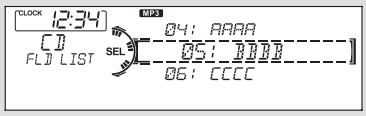
To Change or Select Tracks/Files

Use the SKIP bar while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3 or WMA mode).

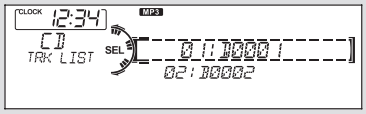
In MP3 or WMA mode, use the FOLDER bar (CATEGORY bar on models with XM Radio) to select folders in the disc and use either side of the skip bar to change files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folder Selection



Track Selection ↓ **Press ENTER**



In MP3 or WMA mode, you can also select a folder or track/file from the list by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to the list displayed with three segments, then turn the knob to select a folder. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to change the display to the track/file list, then turn the same knob to select a track/file. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA mode). Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

To move rapidly within a track or file, press and hold either side (|◄◄ or ►►|) of the SKIP bar.

In MP3 or WMA mode

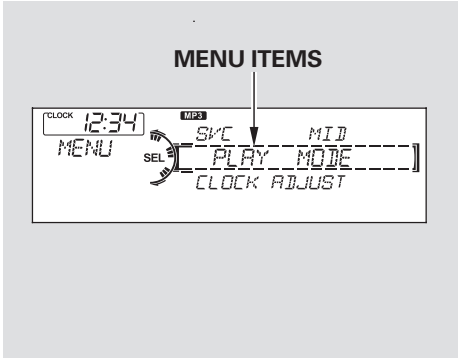
FOLDER SELECTION – To select a different folder, press either side (▲ or ▼) of the FOLDER bar (CATEGORY bar on models with XM Radio) to move to the beginning of the next folder. Press the ▲ side to skip to the next folder, and press the ▼ side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

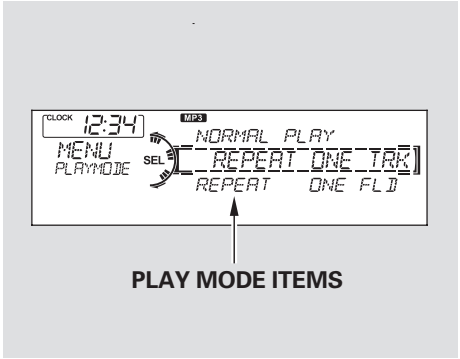
Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:



You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes by using the MENU button and the selector knob. Push the MENU button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select "PLAY MODE." Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set the selection.

Turn the selector knob to select an appropriate repeat, random or scan mode, then press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.



To cancel the selected repeat, random, or scan mode, press the MENU button to show "PLAY MODE," then press the selector knob (ENTER). When you see "NORMAL PLAY," press ENTER again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REPEAT ONE TRK — To continuously replay a track (file in MP3 or WMA mode), select REPEAT ONE TRK from the menu items. You will see REPEAT in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.
Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also turns off the repeat feature.

In MP3 or WMA mode
REPEAT ONE FLD — This feature, when activated, replays all the files on the selected folder in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To activate folder repeat mode, select REPEAT ONE FLD from the menu items. You will see F-REPEAT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. Select normal play to turn it off. Selecting a different folder with the FOLDER bar (CATEGORY bar on models with XM Radio) also turns off the repeat feature.

In MP3 or WMA mode
RANDOM IN FLD — This feature, when activated, plays the files within the current folder in random order, rather than in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To activate folder random play, select RANDOM IN FLD from the menu items. You will see F-RANDOM in the display. The system will then select and play files randomly. This continues until you deactivate folder random play by selecting normal play, or you select a different folder with the FOLDER bar (CATEGORY bar on models with XM Radio).

RANDOM IN DISC — This feature plays the tracks within a disc (the files in MP3 or WMA mode) in random order. To activate random play, select RANDOM IN DISC from the menu items. You will see RANDOM in the display. Select normal play to return to normal play.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

SCAN TRK — The SCAN function samples all the tracks on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc (all files in the selected folder in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file in the disc/folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of scan mode and play the last track sampled.

You can also select the scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 194).

In MP3 or WMA mode
SCAN FLD — This function samples the first file in each folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see F-SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of the first file in each folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

You can also select the folder scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 194).

Pressing either side of the CATEGORY or SKIP bar also turns off the feature.

Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes between scan and normal play.

In MP3 or WMA mode
Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from file scan to folder scan, then to normal play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a Disc (Models without navigation system)

To Stop Playing a Disc
Press the eject button (⏏) to remove the disc. If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds and begin playing.

You can also eject the disc when the ignition switch is off.

To play the radio when a disc is playing, press the AM, FM or XM (if equipped) button. Press the AUX button to switch to an appropriate audio unit (if it is connected to the auxiliary input jack or the USB adapter cable). Press the CD button again to switch back to the disc player.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the VOL/ ⏻ knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

Protecting Discs
For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 256 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disc Player Error Messages (Models without navigation system)

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.
For additional information on damaged discs, see page 257 .

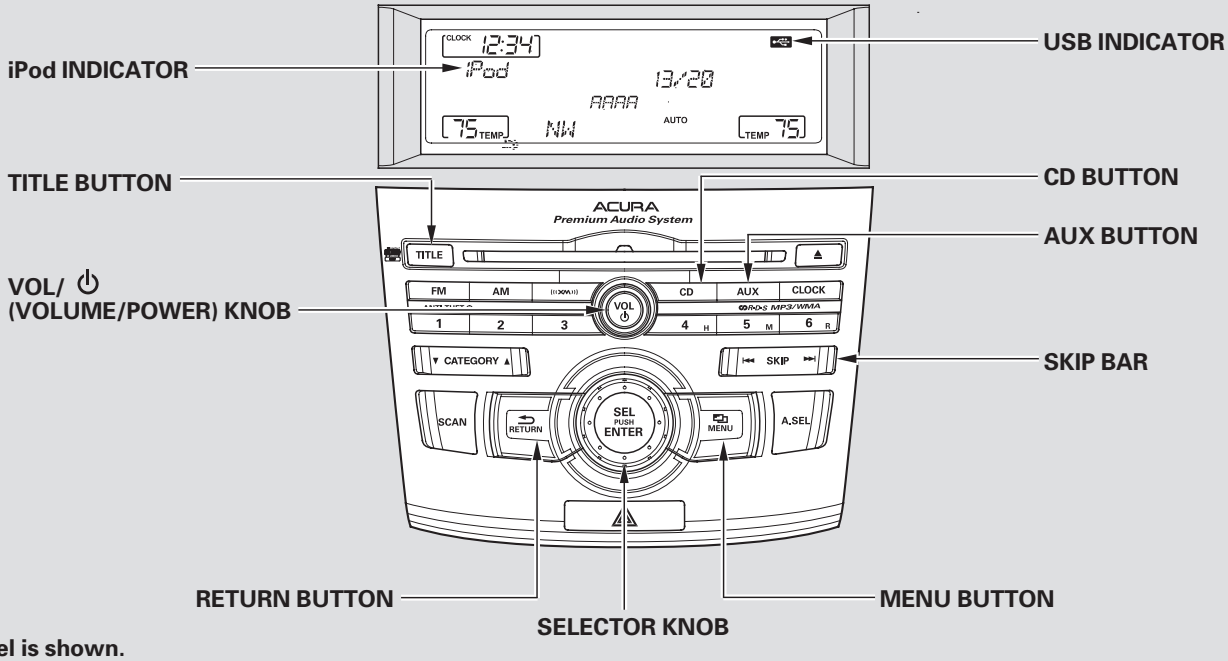
The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
UNSUPPORTED	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 257). Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
MECH ERROR		
CHECK DISC LOAD		
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo error	
CHECK DISC	Disc error	Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 257).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine



U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

To Play an iPod®
This audio system can select and play the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the disc player. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment by using your dock connector, then press the AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The iPod will also be charged with the ignition switch in these positions.

The audio system reads and plays playable sound files on the iPod. The system cannot operate an iPod as a mass storage device. The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

iPods compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model	Software
iPod Classic 5th Gen. (2005 or later)	Ver. 1.2 or more
iPod classic (2007 or later)	Ver. 1.0 or more
iPod nano	Ver. 1.2 or more
iPod nano 2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or more
iPod nano 3rd generation	Ver. 1.0 or more
iPod touch	Ver. 1.1.1 or more
iPhone	Ver. 1.1.1 or more

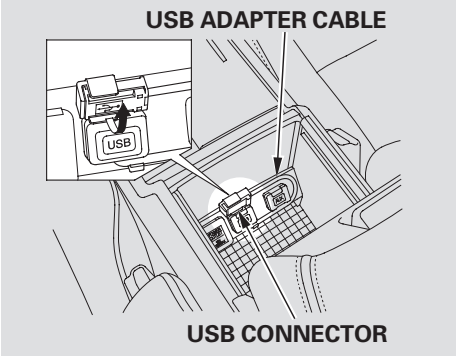
Use only compatible iPods with the latest software. iPods that are not compatible will not work in this audio unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

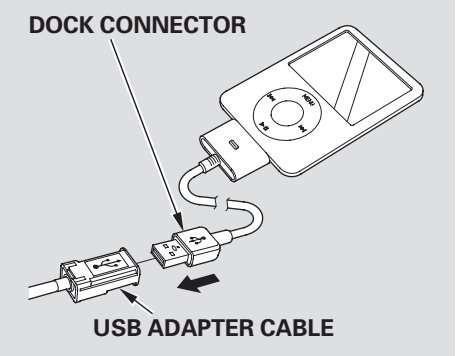
Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

NOTE:
- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.

Connecting an iPod



1. Unclip the USB connector by pivoting it, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
3. Install the dock connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

If the audio system still does not recognize the iPod, the iPod may need to be reset. Follow the instructions that came with your iPod, or you can find reset instructions online at *www.apple.com/ipod.*

Text Data Display Function
Each time you press the TITLE button the display mode switches between the album name, the song name, the artist name, or name off (which turns off the text display).

The display shows up to 16 characters of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the ▶ indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

To Change or Select Files
Use the SKIP bar while an iPod is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP — Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

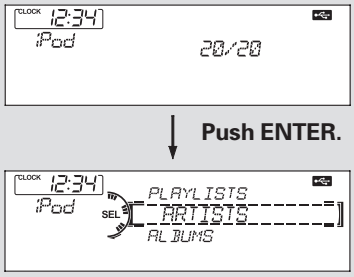
To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►| or |◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

Turning the selector knob to the right or the left also changes the file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

To Select a File from iPod Menu



You can also select a file from any list on the iPod menu: playlists, artists, albums and songs, by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to an iPod menu, then turn the selector knob to select a desired list. Press ENTER to set your selection.

The display shows items on the selected list. Turn the selector knob to select an item, then press ENTER to set your selection.

If you select “ALL,” all available files on the selected list are played.

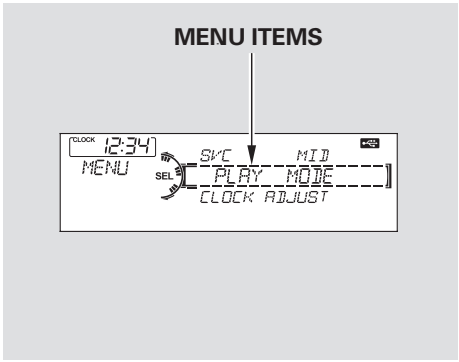
Pressing the RETURN button goes back to the previous display and pressing the MENU button cancels this setting mode.

CONTINUED

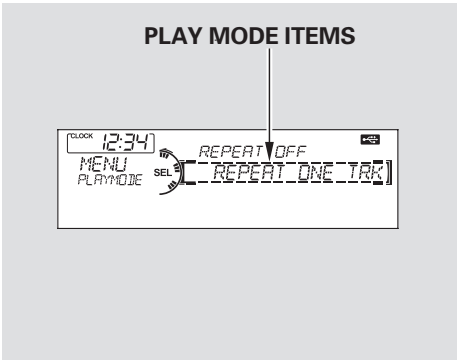
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

To Select Repeat or Shuffle Mode:



You can select any type of repeat and shuffle mode by using the MENU button and the selector knob. Press the MENU button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select “PLAY MODE.” Press ENTER to set the selection.

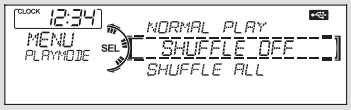


Turn the selector knob to select a play mode: normal play, shuffle off, shuffle all, shuffle album, repeat off, or repeat one track, then press ENTER to set your selection.

To cancel the selected mode, press the MENU button and turn the selector knob to show “PLAY MODE,” then press ENTER. When you see “NORMAL PLAY,” press ENTER again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)



SHUFFLE OFF — This feature turns off either of the shuffle modes (SHUFFLE ALL and SHUFFLE ALBUM).

SHUFFLE ALL — This feature plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order.
You will see SHUFFLE in the display.
Select the normal play mode or SHUFFLE OFF to turn off this feature.

SHUFFLE ALBUM — This feature plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. The files in each album are played in the recorded order. You will see ALB SHUF in the display.
Select the normal play mode or SHUFFLE OFF to turn off this feature.

REPEAT OFF — This feature turns off the repeat mode.

REPEAT ONE TRK — This feature continuously plays a file. You will see REPEAT in the display.
Select normal play or REPEAT OFF to turn it off.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar or turning the selector knob changes the file while keeping the repeat feature.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar or turning the selector knob changes a file while keeping the shuffle function.

NOTE:
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models without navigation system)

To Stop Playing Your iPod

To play the radio, press the AM, FM, or «XM» (if equipped) button. Press the CD button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the AUX button to switch the audio mode between the *Bluetooth*® Audio (if equipped) and iPod.

Disconnecting an iPod

You can disconnect the iPod at any time when you see "OK to disconnect" message* in the iPod display. Always make sure you see "OK to disconnect" message in the iPod display before you disconnect it. Make sure to follow the iPod's instructions on how to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

* : The displayed message may vary on models or versions. On some models, there is no message to disconnect.

If you reconnect the same iPod, the system may begin playing where it left off, depending on what mode the iPod is in when it is reconnected.

iPod® Error Messages

If you see an error message in the display, see page 207.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

iPod® Error Messages (Models without navigation system)

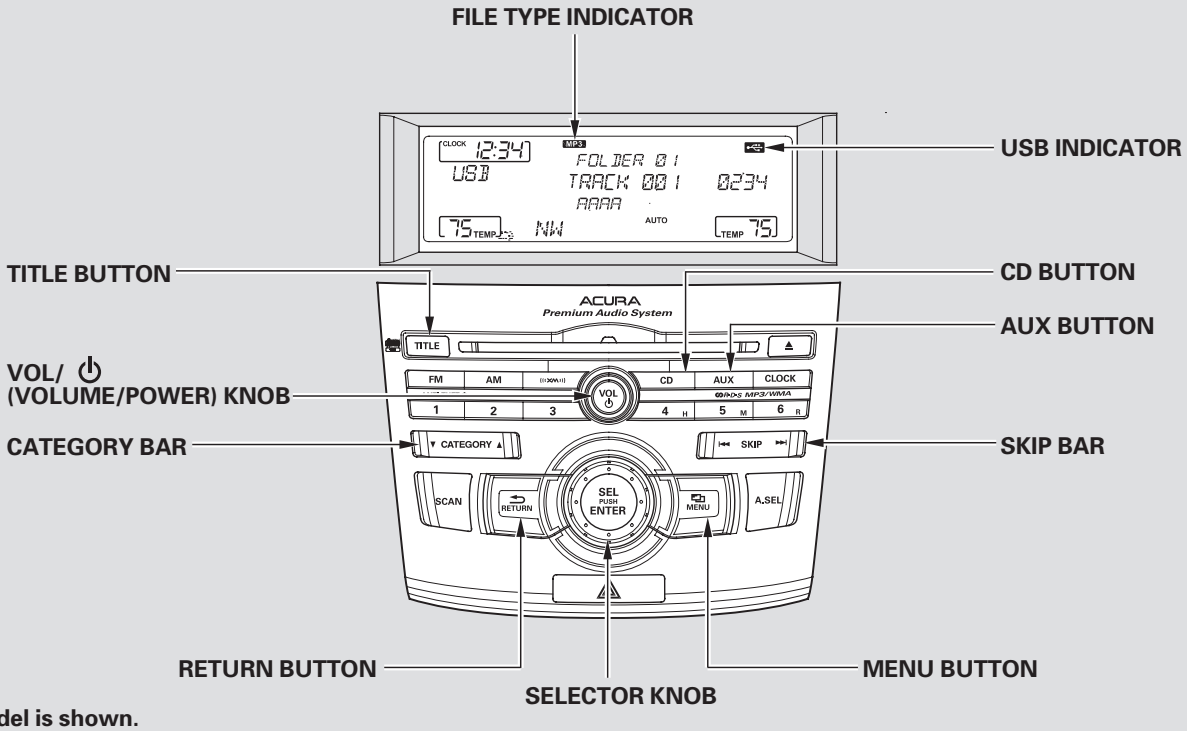
If you see an error message on the audio display while playing an iPod, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Solution
FILE ERROR	The system cannot read the file(s). Check the files in the iPod. There is a possibility that the files have been damaged.
MEDIA ERROR	Appears when an unsupported iPod is inserted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine



U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can select and play the audio files on a USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the disc player. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment, then press the AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC* formats. Depending on the format, the display shows MP3, WMA or AAC when a USB flash memory device is playing. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 65535 files.

* : Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit.

NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as the device or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.
- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing a USB flash memory device.
- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.
- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.
- Depending on the type of encoding and writing software used, there may be cases where character information does not display properly.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

• The order of files in USB playback may be different from the order of files displayed in PC or other devices etc. Files are played in the order stored in USB flash memory device.

The specifications for compatible MP3 files are:
—Sampling frequency:
32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
—Bitrate:
32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320/VBR kbps (MPEG1)
—Supported standards:
MPEG1 Audio Layer3
MPEG2 Audio Layer3
—Partition: Top partition only
—Maximum layers: 8

The specifications for compatible WMA files are:
—Sampling frequency:
32/44.1/48 kHz
—Bitrate:
48—320/VBR kbps (Max 384)
—Supported standards:
WMA version 7/8/9
—Partition: Top partition only
—Maximum layers: 8

The specifications for compatible AAC files are:
—Sampling frequency:
8/11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 kHz
—Bitrate:
48—320 kbps
—Supported standards:
MPEG4/AAC LC
MPEG2/AAC LC
—Partition: Top partition only
—Maximum layers: 8

Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, then skips to the next file.

In WMA or AAC format, DRM (digital rights management) files cannot be played. If the system finds a DRM file, the audio unit displays UNPLAYABLE FILE, and then skips to the next file.

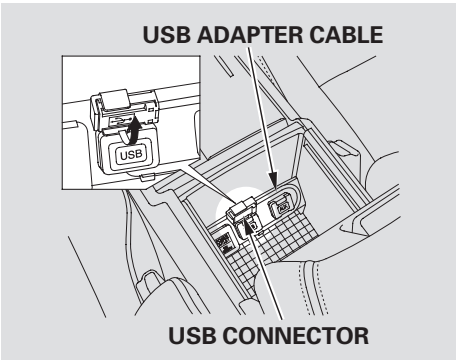
NOTICE

Combining a low sampling frequency with a low bitrate may result in extremely degraded sound quality.

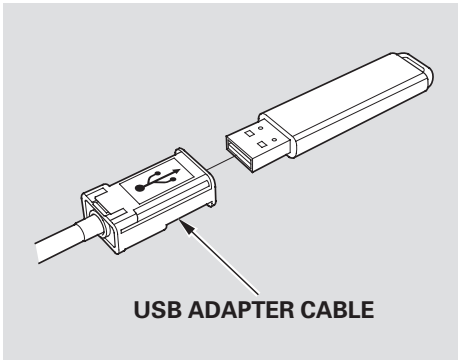
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



1. Unclip the USB connector by pivoting it, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

When the USB flash memory device is connected, the USB indicator is shown in the display.

Text Data Display Function

Each time you press the TITLE button, the display mode shows you in sequence, the folder name, the file name, the artist name, the album name, the song name, or name off (which turns off the text display).

The display shows up to 16 characters of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the ▶ indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

To Change or Select Files

Use the SKIP bar while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►I side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the I◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

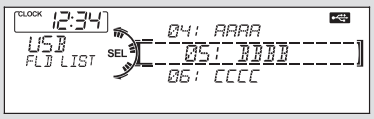
To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►I or I◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

Turning the selector knob to the right or the left also changes the file.

Folder Selection – To select a different folder, press and release either side of the CATEGORY bar. Press the ▲ side to skip to the next folder, and press the ▼ side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

To Select a File from Folder and File Lists

Folder Selection



Track Selection **Press ENTER.**

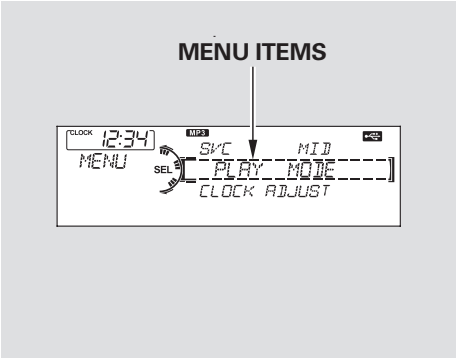
You can also select a folder or file from the list by using the selector knob. Push the selector knob (ENTER) to switch the display to the folder list, then turn the selector knob to select a folder. Press ENTER to change the display to the file list, then turn the same knob to select a file. Press ENTER to set your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

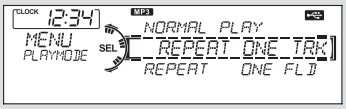
Pressing the RETURN button goes back to the previous display and pressing the MENU button cancels this setting mode.

To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:



You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes by using the MENU button and the selector knob. Push the MENU button to display the menu items, then turn the selector knob to select “PLAY MODE.” Press the selector knob (ENTER) to set the selection.

Turn the selector knob to select an appropriate repeat, random or scan mode, then press the selector knob (ENTER) to set your selection.

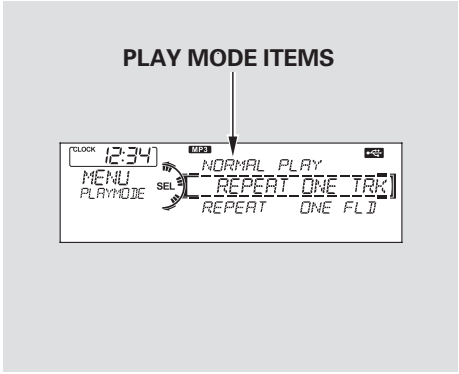


To cancel the selected mode, press the MENU button and turn the selector knob to show “PLAY MODE,” then press ENTER. When you see “NORMAL PLAY,” press ENTER again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)



REPEAT ONE TRK — This feature continuously plays a file. Select normal play to turn it off. Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also turns off this feature.

REPEAT ONE FLD — This feature replays all the files on the selected folder in the order they are stored. Select normal play to turn it off. Pressing either side of the CATEGORY bar also turns off this feature.

RANDOM IN FLD — This feature plays the files in the selected folder in random order. You will see F-RANDOM in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.

RANDOM ALL — This feature plays all the files in random order. You will see RANDOM in the display. Select normal play to turn it off.

SCAN TRK — This function samples all files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each file in the folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the scan mode and play the last file sampled.

You can also select the scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 213).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models without navigation system)

SCAN FLD — This function samples the first file in each folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see F-SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of the first file in each folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

You can also select the folder scan feature from the menu items with the selector knob (see page 213).

Select normal play to turn either scan feature off. Pressing either side of the CATEGORY or SKIP bar also turns off the feature.

To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

To play the radio, press the FM, AM or «» button. Press the CD button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the AUX button to switch the audio mode between the USB or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

If you reconnect the same USB flash memory device, the system will begin playing where it left off.

Disconnecting a USB Flash Memory Device

You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Make sure to follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the display, see page 216 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

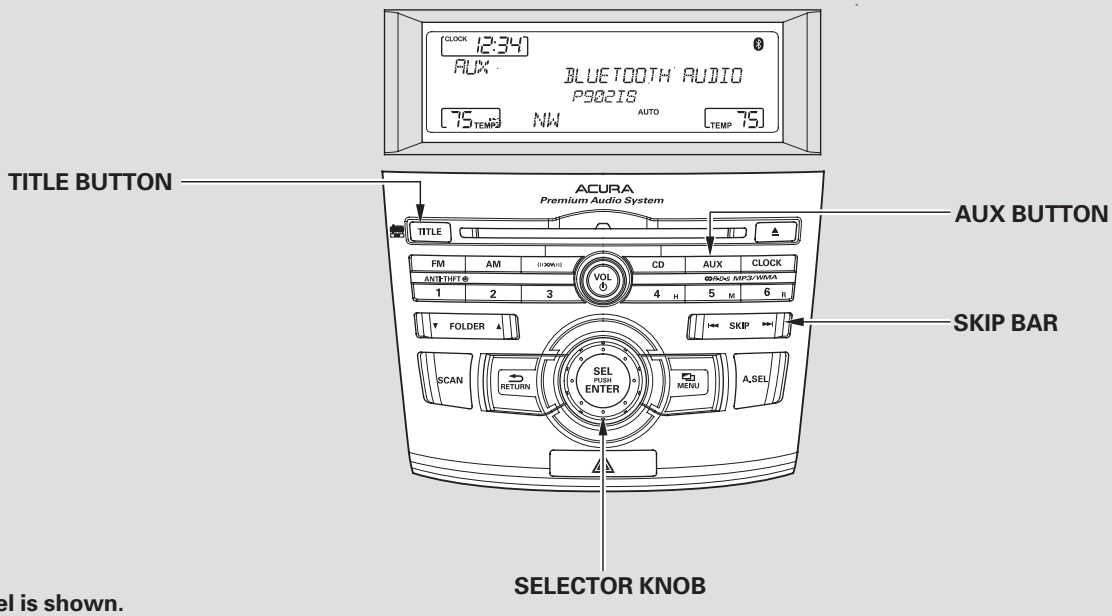
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages (Models without navigation system)

If you see an error message on the audio display while playing a USB flash memory device, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Solution
FILE ERROR	The system cannot read the file(s). Check the files in the USB flash memory device. There is a possibility that the files have been damaged.
MEDIA ERROR	Appears when the unsupported USB flash memory device is inserted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)



U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

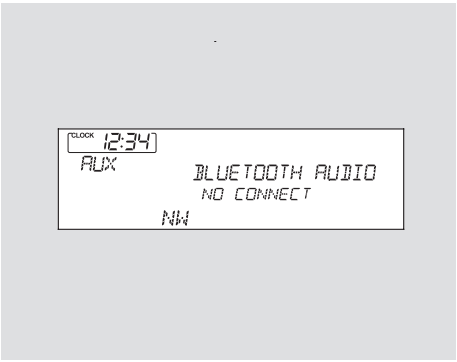
Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)

Your vehicle is equipped with a *Bluetooth*® Audio system, which allows you to listen to streaming audio from your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone. This function is only available on phones that are paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system (see page 311).

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. You can find an approved phone by visiting *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or by calling the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876. In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call 1-888-9-ACURA-9.

NOTE: In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.
Press the AUX button* with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The audio display shows the *Bluetooth*® Audio message and mark. Until the phone is recognized, you will see "NO CONNECT" on the display. This message will go off when the phone is recognized, then the system begins to play.

After a device is linked, press the TITLE button to confirm the device name. The name of the device will appear on the audio display.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be delay before the system begins to play.

To begin to play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

* : If an iPod, USB flash memory device, or audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack was selected at the last mode, you will see iPod, USB, or AUX in the audio display. Push the AUX button again to play audio files from your *Bluetooth*® Audio phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)

In the following conditions, the display shows "NO CONNECT" message.

- The phone is not linked to HFL.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- Another HFL compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, is already connected.

To skip a file

Press the ►►| side of the SKIP bar to skip forward to the next file, and press the |◄◄ side to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Push the |◄◄ side again to skip to the previous file.

Turning the selector knob to the right or left also changes a file.

To pause or resume a file

The resume/pause mode can stop playing a file temporarily. Press the MENU button to display the audio settings.

Turn the selector to select RESUME/PAUSE mode, then press ENTER to set your selection. Repeat to resume play.

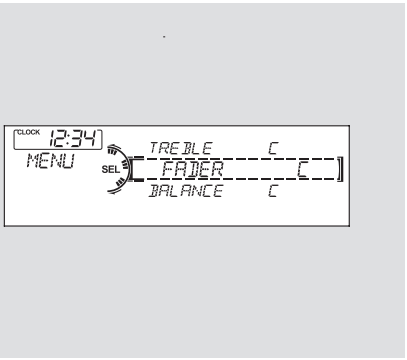
NOTE: The pause function may not be available on some phone devices.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models without navigation system)

To change sound settings



Press the MENU button to display the audio settings. Turn the selector to select a desired sound mode, then press ENTER to set your selection. Turn the selector to your liking (see page 181 for more sound setting information).

To switch to HFL mode

If you receive a call when the *Bluetooth*® Audio is playing, press the HFL Talk button on the steering wheel. The display switches to the HFL mode (see page 307).

After ending the call, press the HFL Back button to go back to the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If you receive a call while the system is in the pause mode, the mode will be canceled and *Bluetooth*® Audio will continue to play.

To turn off the Bluetooth® Audio mode

Select any other audio mode by pressing a button; FM, AM, «XM»*or CD (if a disc is loaded), on the audio control panel or press the mode button on the steering wheel to select another audio mode. If iPod or USB flash memory device is connected to the USB adapter cable or audio unit is connected to AUX jack, pressing the AUX button also changes the mode.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

* : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

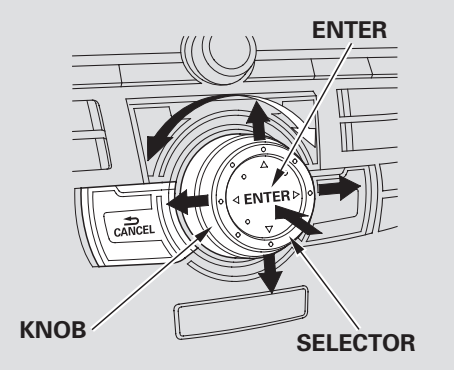
This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System (Models with navigation system)

Interface Dial

Most audio system functions can still be controlled by standard buttons, dials, and knobs, but some functions can only be accessed using the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.



The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

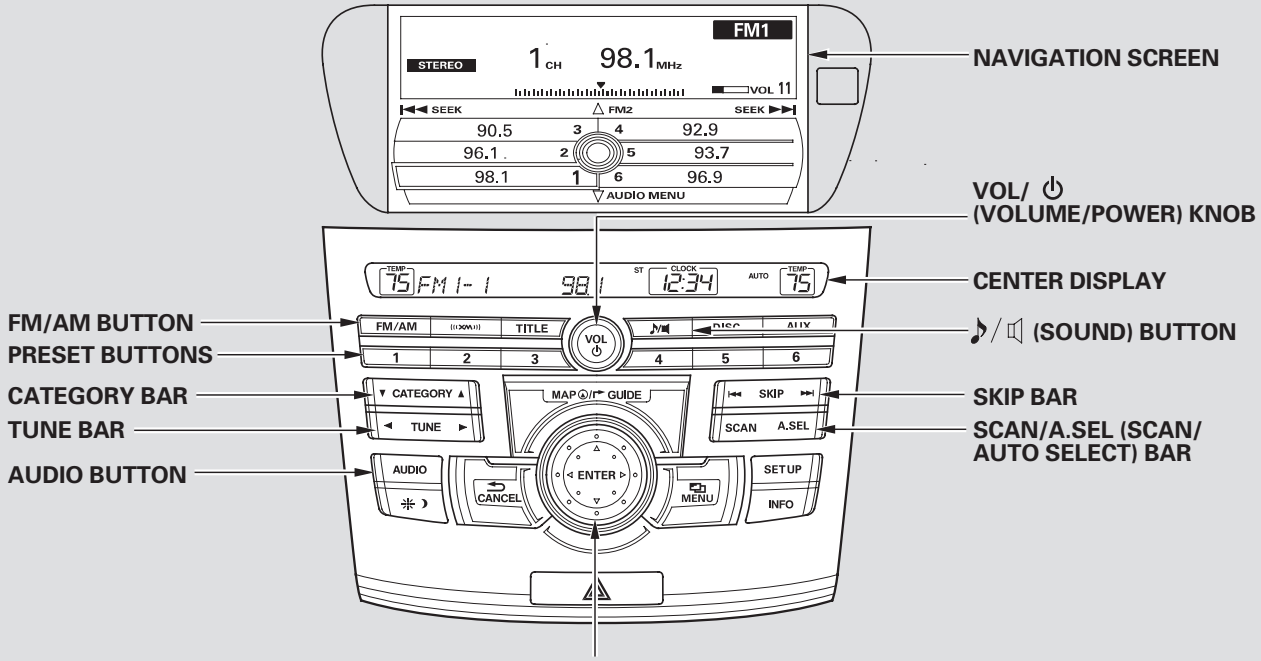
The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

Voice Control System

The audio system can also be operated by voice control.
See the Navigation System manual for complete details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

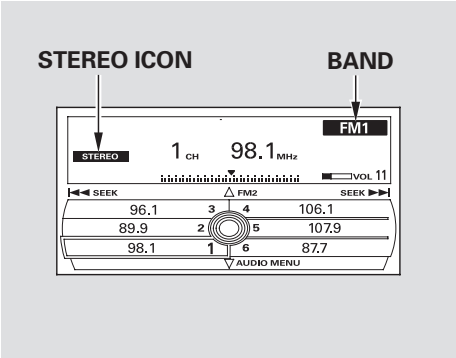


U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

To Play the FM/AM Radio



The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Press the AUDIO button to view the audio control display. Turn the system on by pressing the VOL/ ⏻ knob or the FM/AM button. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are shown on the display. To change bands, press the FM/AM button. You can also change bands by pushing the interface selector up. Each time you push it up, the band will change to FM1, FM2, or AM. On the FM bands, STEREO will be shown on the navigation screen and ST on the center display, if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

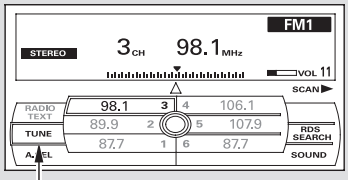
On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.

To Select a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, skip (seek), scan, the preset buttons, and auto select. On the FM band, you can also use the features provided by the radio data system (RDS). For more information on the RDS, see page 227 .

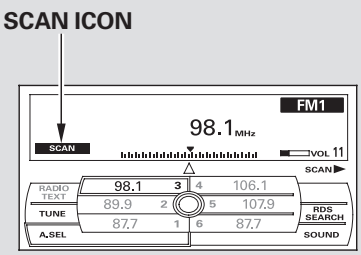
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)



TUNE — Use the TUNE bar to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Press the right side of the bar to tune to a higher frequency, or the left side to tune to a lower frequency. To tune with the interface dial, push the selector down, and turn the knob to TUNE icon. Then press ENTER on the selector, and turn the knob to the desired frequency. To exit the TUNE mode, press ENTER on the selector, then push the selector up.

SKIP (SEEK) — The skip (seek) function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press either side (⏮ or ⏭) of the SKIP bar, then release it. You can also activate the skip function (SEEK is displayed on the screen) by pushing the interface selector to the right or left.



SCAN — The SCAN function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar, then release it.

To scan with the interface dial, push the selector down, and then push it to the right. You will see SCAN on the screen.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

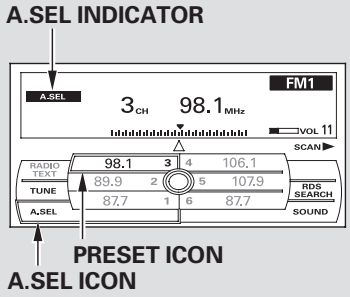
Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

When the system finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the scan side of the bar again, or push the interface selector to the right again.

Preset — Each preset button or preset icon can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

To store a preset memory location:

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two sets of FM frequencies with the preset buttons (on-screen icons).
2. Use the tune, skip (seek), scan, or RDS function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Press the preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep. You can also store frequencies with the interface dial. Select the preset icon you want to store the frequency on, then press ENTER on the interface selector, and hold it for more than 2 seconds.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.



AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Push the interface selector down to scroll down the screen, highlight A.SEL, then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see A.SEL flashing on the screen, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To turn off auto select, press ENTER on the interface selector.

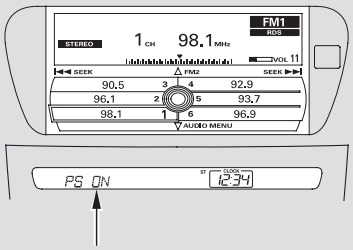
You can also press the A.SEL side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. You will see A.SEL on the screen, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. The system stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You will see "0" displayed if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons (icons) as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL side of the bar. This restores the presets you originally set.
For information on FM/AM radio frequencies and reception, see page 285 .

Radio Data System (RDS)
On the FM band, you can select a favorite station and display the program service name provided by the radio data system (RDS).

Program Service (PS) Name Display
The program service name display function shows the name of the station you are listening to. You can turn this function on or off.



PS ON MESSAGE

To switch the PS name display function on and off, press and release the TITLE button. With the system on, you will see the "PS ON" message on the center display. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the displayed frequency switches to the station name.

CONTINUED

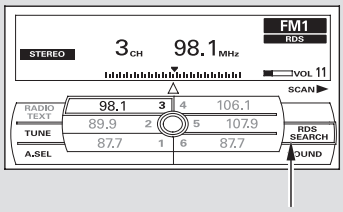
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

If the station you are listening to is not an RDS station, the audio screen and the center display continue to show the frequency.

When you turn off this function by pressing the TITLE button, the center display shows “PS OFF.”

Radio Data System (RDS) Category



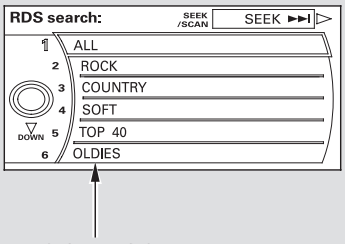
RDS SEARCH ICON

With the FM band selected, you can select the program type provided by the RDS. Press the AUDIO button to display the radio information on the screen. Push down the selector on the interface dial, then turn the knob to select RDS SEARCH icon. Press ENTER to set your selection. The principal RDS categories are shown as follows:

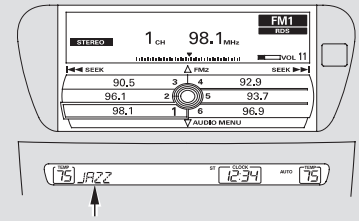
ALL: All RDS category stations
ROCK: Rock, classic rock and soft rock music
COUNTRY: Country music
SOFT: Adult hits and soft music
TOP 40: Top 40 hits
OLDIES: Nostalgia music and oldies
R & B: Rhythm and blues, and soft rhythm and blues
RELIGION: Programs concerned with religion
CLASSIC: Classical music
JAZZ: Jazz
INFO: News, information, sports, talk shows, foreign language, personality, public, college, and weather
TRAFFIC: Traffic information

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)



Turn the selector to select an RDS category. You can use the search or scan function to find radio stations on the selected RDS category by pressing the selector to the right repeatedly. Press ENTER to set your selection. If you do nothing while the RDS category is selected, the selected category is canceled.



U.S. model is shown.

You can also select an RDS category with the CATEGORY bar. Press either side (▲ or ▼) of the CATEGORY bar to display an RDS category in the center display. Select a category by pressing either side of the bar.

RDS Program Search

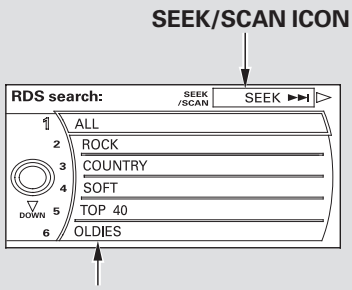
This function searches up and down a frequency for the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the selected RDS category information. This can help you to find a station in your favorite category. To activate it, press and release either side (|◄◄ or ►►|) of the SKIP bar. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking in the center display while searching it. When the system finds a station, the selected RDS category name will be displayed again for about 5 seconds in the center display.

If the system does not find a station, “NOTHING” will be blinking for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)



SEEK is selected.

To activate RDS program search with the interface dial, push the AUDIO button to display the FM radio information on the screen. Push the selector down, and turn the knob to select RDS SEARCH icon. Press ENTER on the selector. The screen shows you the RDS category list.

Turn the knob to the desired RDS category.

While the RDS category is selected, move the selector knob to the right to select SEEK in the upper right corner of the screen. Then press ENTER to activate the seek function.

RDS Program SCAN

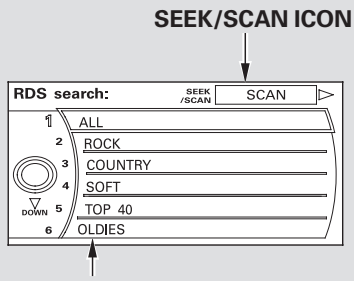
The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected RDS category. To activate it, press and release the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. You will see SCAN in the center display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal in the selected RDS category. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking in the center display while searching it. When the system finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/ A.SEL bar again.

If the system does not find a station, “NOTHING” will be blinking for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.



SCAN is selected.

To activate RDS program scan with the interface dial, push the AUDIO button to display the FM radio information on the screen. Push the selector down, and turn the knob to select RDS SEARCH icon. Press ENTER on the selector. The screen shows you the RDS category list.

Turn the knob to the desired RDS category.

While the RDS category is selected, move the selector knob to the right to select SCAN in the upper right corner of the screen. Then press ENTER to activate the scan function.

You can use the RDS program search or scan function even if the PS name display function is off. In this case, the display shows a frequency in place of a PS name.

CONTINUED

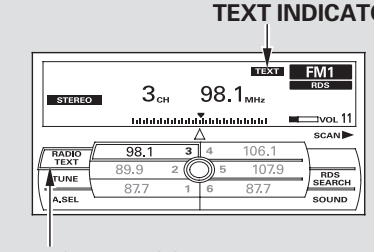
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

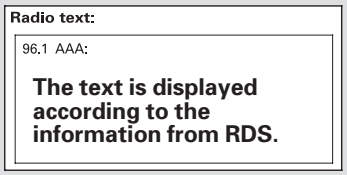
Radio Text Display

This function displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

If the selected RDS station has the radio text information, you will see the text indicator on the screen.



To activate radio text display, use the interface dial. Push the selector down, and turn the knob to select RADIO TEXT icon. Press ENTER on the selector to enter the setting.



The display shows up to 64 characters on the selected RDS station.

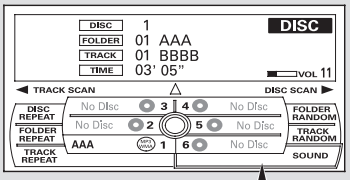
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

Adjusting the Sound

BASS, TREBLE, FADER, and BALANCE are each adjustable. You can also adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and subwoofer speakers. In addition, you can set the Dolby PL (ProLogic) II and Speed-sensitive volume compensation (SVC).

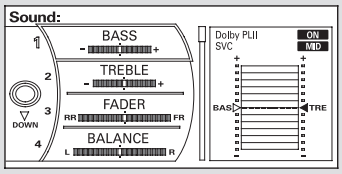
These adjustments can be made with the ♪/🔊 (Sound) button or the interface dial.



SOUND ICON

To adjust them, press the AUDIO button, push the interface selector down, and turn the interface knob to SOUND. Then press ENTER on the selector.

Select the mode you want to adjust by turning the interface dial.



You can also adjust the sound by pushing the ♪/🔊 (Sound) button repeatedly. Each mode is shown in the center display as it changes. Turn the VOL/ ⏻ knob to adjust the setting to your liking. When the level reaches the center, you will see "C" in the display.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the FM/AM Radio (Models with navigation system)

The system will return to the audio playing mode in the center display about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

BASS/TREBLE – To adjust bass and treble, select BASS or TREBLE, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the display. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

FADER/BALANCE – These modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. Fader adjusts the front-to-back strength, while balance adjusts the side-to-side strength. To adjust fader and balance, select FADER or BALANCE, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. To equalize the fader or balance, turn the interface knob until the marks on the sound grid come to the center of the adjustment bar.

If the fader adjustment is set to F9 (maximum front level), the subwoofer is turned off.

CENTER – Adjusts the strength of sound from the center speaker.

SUBWOOFER – To adjust the strength of the sound from the subwoofer speaker, select it and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dolby PL (ProLogic) II – Dolby PL (ProLogic) II signal processing creates multi-channel surround sound from 2 channel stereo audio sources. Dolby ProLogic II can only be activated when listening to DISC (CD-DA, MP3/WMA), XM Radio, and AUX. When ProLogic II is active, "PL II" is shown in the audio display.

To set this feature on or off, select Dolby PL II, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Rotate the interface dial to ON or OFF, and press ENTER.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "ProLogic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

NOTE: In some audio playing modes (XM, AUX), when DPLII is on, the music coming from the rear speakers may sound distorted. This is due to compression of the music, and it does not indicate a problem with the setting.

Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)

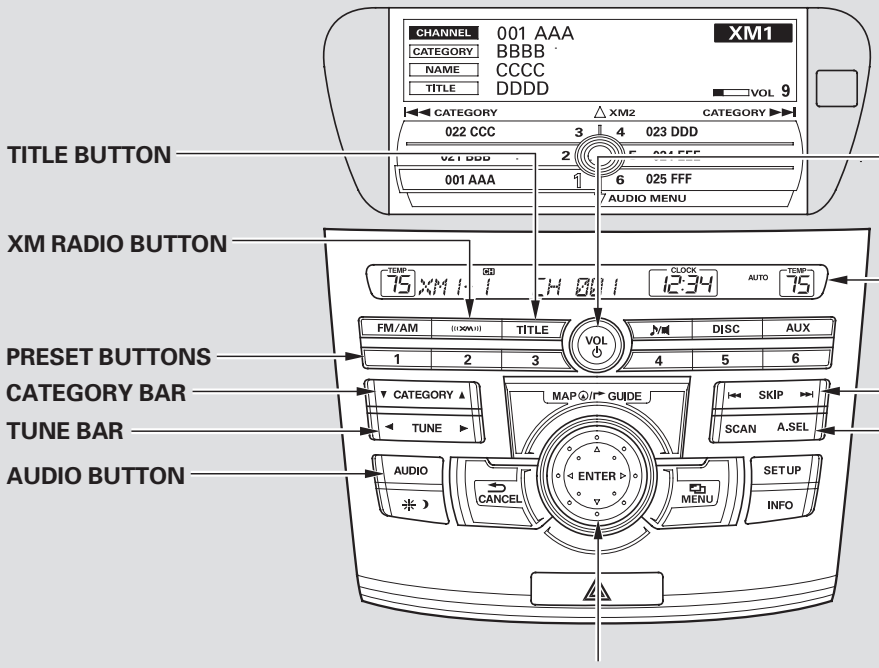
The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

The SVC has four modes: SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. The default setting is MID. To change the SVC mode, select SVC, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

®

Playing the XM Radio (Models with navigation system)



TITLE BUTTON

XM RADIO BUTTON

PRESET BUTTONS

CATEGORY BAR

TUNE BAR

AUDIO BUTTON

VOL/ ⏻ (VOLUME/POWER) KNOB

CENTER DISPLAY

SKIP BAR

SCAN/A.SEL (SCAN/ AUTO SELECT) BAR

INTERFACE DIAL

U.S. model is shown.

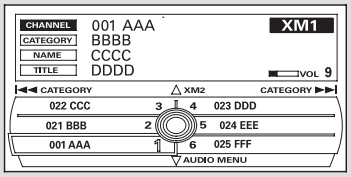
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM® Radio anywhere in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico. XM is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio, Inc. and XM CANADA® is a registered business name of Canadian Satellite Radio Inc.

XM Radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM Radio also allows you to view channel and category selections in the audio display.

Operating the XM Radio



To listen to XM Radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, and press the ((XM)) button. The last channel you listened to will show in the audio screen and the center display. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/ ⏻ knob.

Push the AUDIO button to display XM information on the screen. You can operate the XM Radio system with the interface dial.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

MODE — To switch between the category mode and channel mode, press and hold the TITLE button until the mode changes. The CATEGORY or CHANNEL mode is displayed on the screen. To switch the mode with the interface dial, push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the knob to select MODE, and press ENTER on the selector repeatedly.

In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can navigate through all of the channels within that category. In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels.

Each time you press and release the TITLE button, the center display changes in the following sequence: NAME (artist name), TITLE (music title), and CHANNEL NAME (channel name).

On the screen, you will see the selected CHANNEL (number), CATEGORY, NAME (artist name), and TITLE (music title).

TUNE — Press either side of the TUNE bar to change channel selections. Press the ▶ side of the bar for higher numbered channels and the ◀ side for lower numbered channels. You can also change channels with the interface selector, push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface knob to choose TUNE and press ENTER on the selector. Turn the interface knob to the appropriate direction. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

CHANNEL LIST — Push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface knob to select CHANNEL LIST and press ENTER on the selector. Turn the interface knob to select a channel, then press ENTER to set your selection.

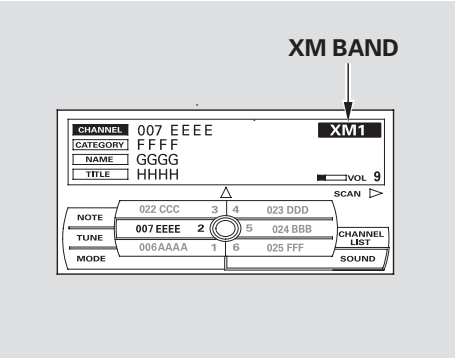
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

CATEGORY (▼ or ▲) — Press either side of the bar to select another category. You can also change a category by pushing the interface selector left or right.

SCAN — The scan function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the channels within that category are scanned. To activate SCAN, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar. To scan with the interface dial, scroll down, and push interface selector to the right. You will see SCAN on the screen and center display.

The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, push the interface selector to the right again or press the SCAN side of the bar to cancel.



Preset — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the «XM» button or scroll up by pushing the interface selector up. Either XM1 or XM2 will be shown on the display.
2. Use the tune, skip (seek), or scan function to tune to a desired channel.

   In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.
3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the preset button until you hear a beep. You can also pick the number with the interface dial. Select your desired number and press and hold ENTER on the interface selector.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

5. Press the «XM» button or scroll up again. The other XM band will be shown. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

   Once a channel is stored, press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

XM Radio Display Messages

"LOADING" — XM is loading the audio or program information.

"OFF AIR" — The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

"UPDATING" — The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

"NO SIGNAL" — The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

" - - - - " — The selected channel number does not exist, or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

"ANTENNA" — There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

"NO INFO" — The selected channel has no artist or title information at this time.

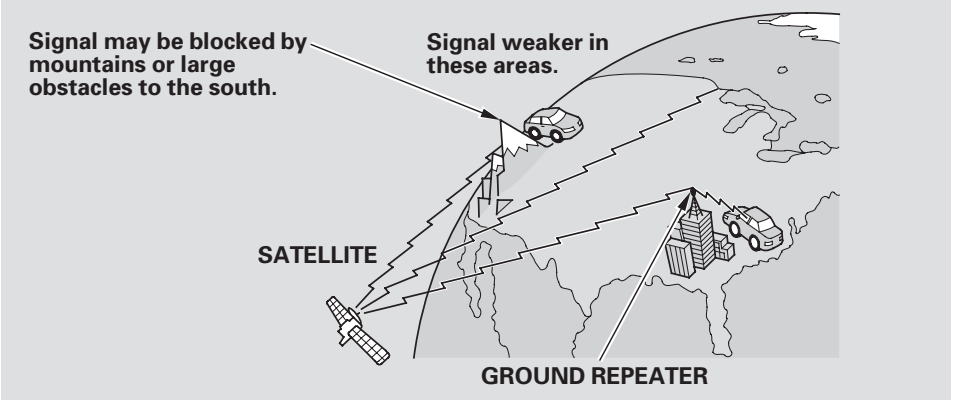
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.
Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.


Signal may be blocked by mountains or large obstacles to the south.
Signal weaker in these areas.
SATELLITE
GROUND REPEATER

- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM Radio reception.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)

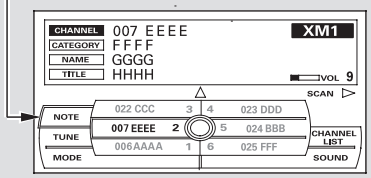
Note Function
If equipped
This function stores the sound content played on the selected satellite radio station with the channel, category, name and title information.

To activate this function, press and hold the «XM» button for about 2 seconds while a song or passage which you want to store is playing.

The function records for about 10 seconds, enough for you to identify the selection when you play it back.

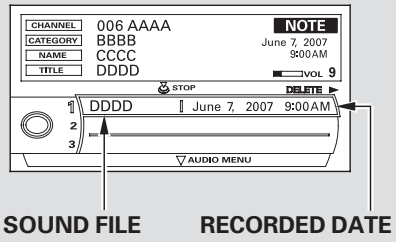
Once you store the recorded sound file, you can replay it and confirm the information. The system can store up to 30 sound files. If you continue to store more files, the oldest one will be deleted each time you add new file.

NOTE ICON



To replay and see the stored file, press the AUDIO button to select the audio display on the navigation screen.

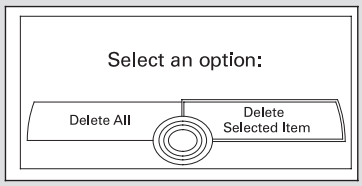
Push down the selector knob to display the audio menu. Turn the selector knob to select NOTE, then press ENTER.



Turn the selector knob to select a sound file, then press ENTER. The display shows the category, name and title information of the selected file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio (Models with navigation system)



To delete a file, select it by turning the selector knob, then push it to the right. Select “Delete All” or “Delete Selected Item,” then press ENTER.

Receiving XM Radio Service

If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, press the «XM» button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

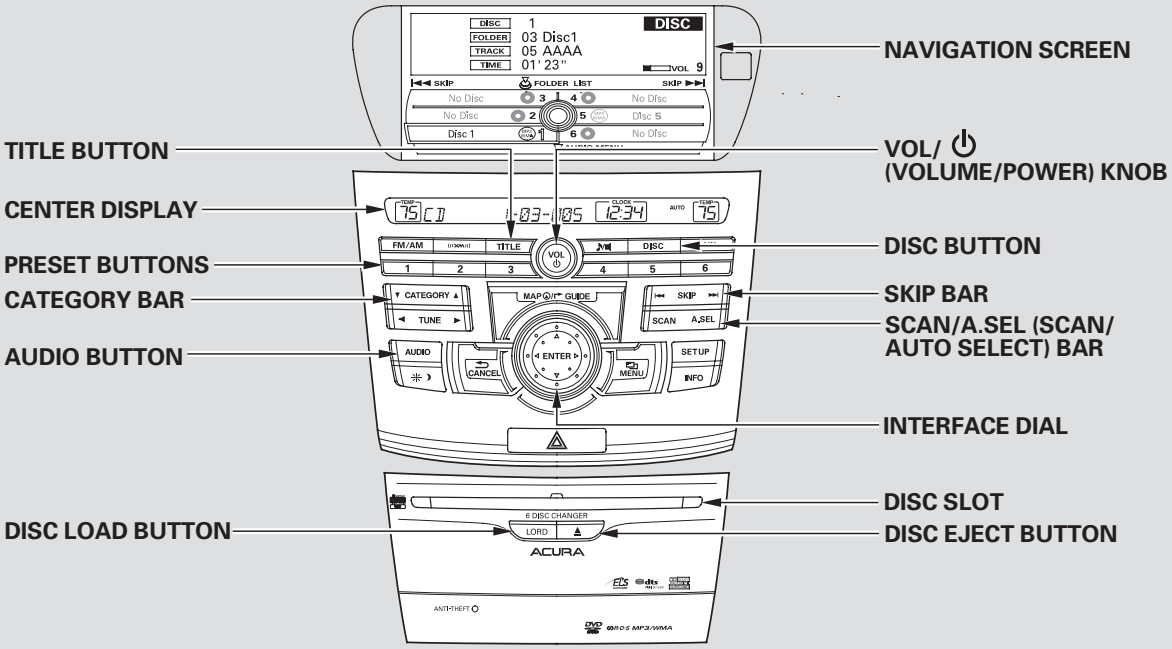
If you decide to purchase XM radio service, contact XM Radio at *www.xmradio.com*, or at 1-800-852-9696. In Canada, contact XM CANADA® at *www.xmradio.ca*, or at 1-877-209-0079. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, press the ▶ side of the TUNE bar until “0” appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you’ve registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the XM Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, CAT (category) or CH (channel) will appear in the center display, and you’ll be able to listen to XM Radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM® Radio. In Canada, contact XM CANADA®.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)



U.S. model is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle's audio system has an in-dash disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To operate the disc changer, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

The disc changer can play these disc formats:
- CD (CD-DA)
- MP3/WMA
- DVD-A

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

The changer can also play MP3 or WMA format (see page 251).

When playing a disc in MP3, you will see "MP3" in the audio display (if selected). In WMA format, "WMA" will appear in the display. In the center display, you will see MP3 or WMA, depending on what format you are playing.

A disc compressed in AAC format cannot be played in this audio system.

NOTE:
If a file on a WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, and then skips to the next file.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

DVD-A discs not meeting DVD verification standards may not be playable.

Video CDs and DVD-V format discs will not work in this unit.

Some CD-DA and CD-ROM mixed discs are not playable.

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and DTS Digital Surround are registered trademarks and the DTS logos and Symbol are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © 1996-2007 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

Loading Discs in the Changer

To load multiple discs in one operation:

1. With the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, press and hold the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "DISC LOAD" in the center display, then release the button.

2. Insert a disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see "DISC READ" in the center display. When you insert the first disc, the changer will start to play the disc.

3. When "DISC LOAD" appears in the center display again, insert the next disc into the slot.
   Do not try to insert a disc until "DISC LOAD" appears. You could damage the audio unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. If you are not loading all six positions, the system will then begin playing the last disc loaded.

If you stop loading discs before all six positions are filled, the system will wait for 10 seconds, stop the load operation, and begin playing the last disc loaded.

To load a single disc:
1. Press and release the LOAD button.

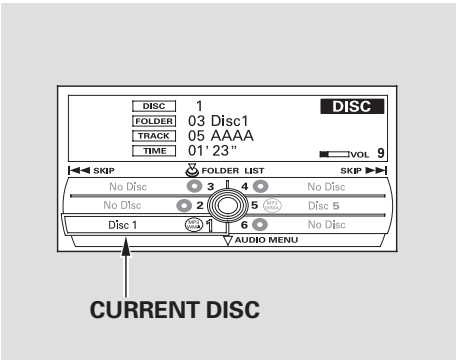
2. "NO DISC" is shown on the screen for an empty position in the changer. When the green load indicator comes on and you see "DISC LOAD" in the center display, insert the disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.

Do not try to insert a disc until "DISC LOAD" appears. You could damage the audio unit.

You can select the position to load a disc. Turn the interface knob or press a preset button to select the position, then press ENTER on the selector. This starts the loading sequence. If you do not select the position, the system loads the disc to the first empty position in numerical order.

If you press the LOAD button while a disc is playing, the system will stop playing that disc and start the loading sequence. It will then play the disc just loaded.

To Play a Disc
Select the changer by pressing the DISC button. The system will begin playing the last selected disc in the disc changer. You will see the current disc position highlighted.



To select a different disc, press the corresponding number on the preset buttons, or turn the interface knob to highlight the desired disc number, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

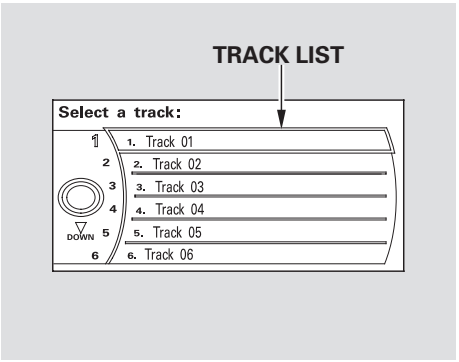
The player can play CD-TEXT, MP3, and WMA formats.

When you play CD-TEXT, you will see the track name, artist name, and album name on the screen. When you play MP3/WMA discs, you will see the track name and folder name on the screen. If the disc was not recorded with this information, it will not be displayed.

To Change Tracks

Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the skip bar or push the interface selector to the right, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the skip bar or push the interface selector to the left to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press the |◄◄ side or push the interface selector to the left again to skip to the previous track. To move rapidly within a track, press and hold either side of the skip bar.

To Choose a Track



You can also choose a track directly from a track list. Press ENTER on the interface selector, and the track list screen will be shown. If there are no track names, track numbers are displayed. You will see the current track is highlighted. Turn the interface knob to select the desired track, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To exit the track list display, press the AUDIO button, or push the interface selector to the left, or press the cancel button.

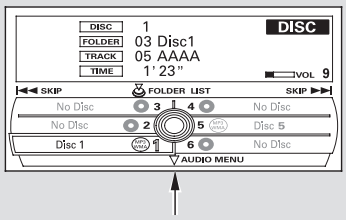
Track Scan
When you press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A. SEL bar or scroll down and push the interface selector to the left, the next track of the current track plays for about 10 seconds. You will see SCAN next to TRACK on the screen and center display. To listen to the rest of the track, press and hold the SCAN side of the bar until you hear a beep or push the interface selector to the left again within 10 seconds.

If you don't, the system advances to the next track, plays about 10 seconds of it, and continues through the rest of the tracks the same way.

Disc Scan
When you press the SCAN side of the SCAN/A. SEL bar repeatedly until you see SCAN in the center display and the disc number begins to blink, or push the interface selector to the right, the first track of the current disc plays for about 10 seconds. You will see SCAN next to DISC on the screen. The disc number is blinking and SCAN is also shown in the center display. To listen to the rest of the disc, press and hold the SCAN side of the bar until you hear a beep, or push the interface selector to the right again within 10 seconds.

If you don't, the system advances to the next disc, plays about 10 seconds of its first track, and continues through the rest of the discs the same way. When the system reaches the last disc, DISC SCAN is canceled, and that disc continues to play.

To Select Repeat or Random Mode:



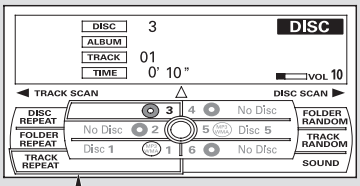
Push down the selector.

You can select any type of repeat and random modes by using the interface dial.
Push the AUDIO button to display the audio information on the screen, then scroll down by pushing down the selector to select the audio menu.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)



AUDIO MENU SCREEN

Turn the interface knob to select a desired repeat or random mode, then press ENTER to set your selection.

To cancel the selected repeat or random mode, have the selected mode highlighted, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Track Repeat
To replay the current track continuously, select TRACK REPEAT, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see REPEAT next to TRACK on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight TRACK REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Disc Repeat
To replay the current disc continuously, select DISC REPEAT, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see REPEAT next to DISC on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight DISC REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Random Play
To play the tracks on the current disc in random order, select TRACK RANDOM, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see RANDOM next to TRACK on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight TRACK RANDOM (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

To Pause a Disc
To pause a disc, press the preset button which corresponds to the current disc. To play the disc again, press the preset button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Stop Playing a Disc
To take the system out of disc mode, press the FM/AM button, the «» button, or the AUX button. To return to disc mode, press the DISC button.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the VOL/ knob or the ignition switch, play will continue at the same point when you turn it back on.

Playing a DVD-A Disc
Use the disc controls previously described.

Playing an MP3/WMA Disc
The changer plays MP3/WMA files in recorded order. Each disc can hold up to 400 playable files within 8 folder layers. When playing MP3 discs, a disc can support a maximum number of 100 folders, and each folder can hold 255 playable files.

The specifications for compatible MP3 files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
  16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bitrate:
  32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps (MPEG1)
  8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160 kbps (MPEG2)
  Compatible with variable bitrate and multi-session
- Maximum layers
  (including ROOT): 8 layers

The specifications for compatible WMA files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  22.05/32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate:
  32/40/48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps
  Compatible with variable bitrate and multi-session
- Maximum layers
  (including ROOT): 8 layers

To play an MP3/WMA disc, use the disc controls previously described, along with the following information.

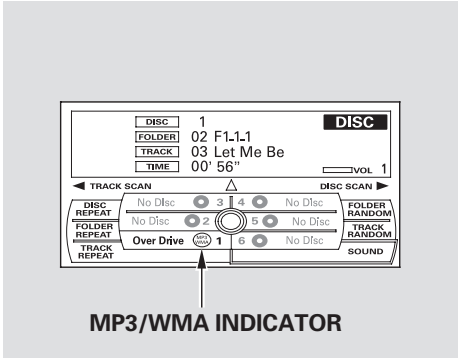
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

Changing the Folders

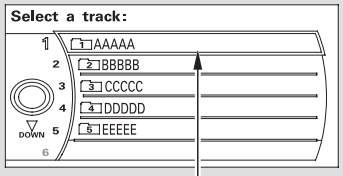
While playing an MP3/WMA disc, you can select a folder within the disc by pressing either side of the category bar. Each time you press either side of the bar, the folder title and its first file's information appear in the display in recorded order.

Changing and Selecting the Folders/ Files



MP3/WMA INDICATOR

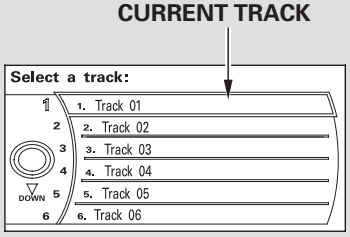
Using the interface selector, you can see the list of all the files and folders within a disc. While playing a MP3/ WMA disc, press the AUDIO button. The currently playing folder and file information comes on the screen.



CURRENT FOLDER

Push ENTER on the selector to show the folder list. Turn the selector knob, highlight the folder you want to see the information within, and press ENTER.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



You can see the list of all the files in the selected folder. Turn the selector knob, then press ENTER to set your selection.

If the root folder has some additional folders in the lower layer, they will be listed on the screen.

Folder Scan
This feature, when activated, samples the first file in each folder for 10 seconds. To scan a folder, press the SCAN side of the SCAN/ A. SEL bar repeatedly. You will see SCAN next to FOLDER and the folder number blinking.

To listen to the rest of the folder, press and hold the SCAN side of the bar until you hear a beep. If you do nothing, the system advances to the next folder, plays 10 seconds of it, and continues with the remaining folders in the same way. When the system has finished sampling the first file in all folders, folder scan is canceled, and the last file played continues to play.

Folder Repeat
This feature, when activated, replays all files in the selected folder. To activate folder repeat mode, select FOLDER REPEAT by interface knob, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see REPEAT next to FOLDER on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight FOLDER REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

To select any type of the repeat modes, use the interface dial. For more information, see page 249 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

Folder Random
This feature, when activated, plays all files in the current folder in random order. To activate folder random play, select FOLDER RANDOM by interface knob, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see RANDOM next to FOLDER on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight FOLDER RANDOM (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

To select any type of the random modes, use the interface dial. For more information, see page 249 .

Removing Discs from the Changer
To remove the disc that is currently playing, press the eject button. You will see "EJECT" in the center display. When you remove the disc from the slot, the system automatically enters the previous mode AM, FM1, FM2, or XM Radio. The system also begins the load sequence so you can load another disc. If you do not load another disc, the load sequence is canceled, and the system continues playing in the previous mode.

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system will reload the disc after 10 seconds. To begin playing the disc, press the DISC button.

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it by pressing the corresponding number on the preset button or turning the interface knob, and pressing ENTER on the interface selector. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button.

When you press the eject button while listening to the radio, or with the audio system turned off, the disc that was last selected is ejected. After that disc is ejected, pressing the eject button again will eject the next disc in numerical order. By doing this six times, you can remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off:
To eject one disc, press and release the eject button.
To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button until the first disc begins to eject.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disc Changer Error Messages (Models with navigation system)

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the center display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the center display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.
For additional information on damaged discs, see page 257 .

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High Temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
UNSUPPORTED	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc(s). Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 257). Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
MECH ERROR		
CHANGER ERROR		
CHECK DISC LOAD		
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo Error	
CHECK DISC	Disc Error	Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 257).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

General Information

- When using CD-R or CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the disc changer.
- When using DVD-R/RW discs, they should meet DVD verification standards.
- Play only standard, round, 5-inch (12 cm) discs. Smaller or odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

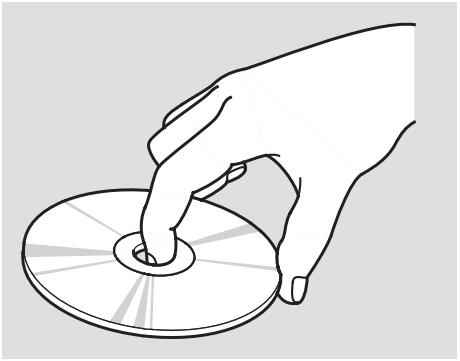
Protecting Discs

When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the center to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc changer.



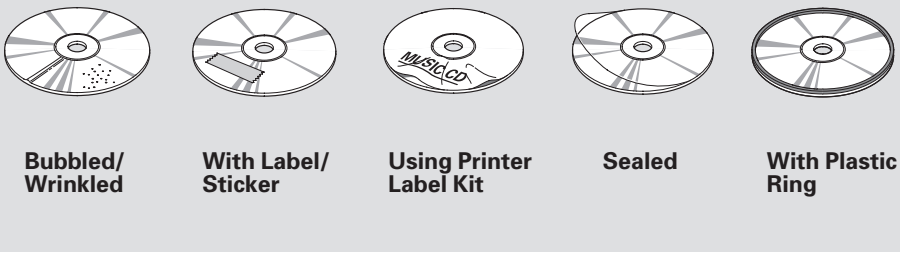
Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from finger prints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information on Recommended Discs
The in-dash disc player/changer has a sophisticated and delicate mechanism. If you insert a damaged disc as indicated in this section, it may become stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples of these discs are shown to the right:

1. Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick discs

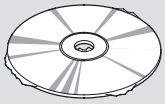


Bubbled/ Wrinkled | **With Label/ Sticker** | **Using Printer Label Kit** | **Sealed** | **With Plastic Ring**

2. Damaged discs

Chipped/ Cracked | **Warped**

3. Poor quality discs



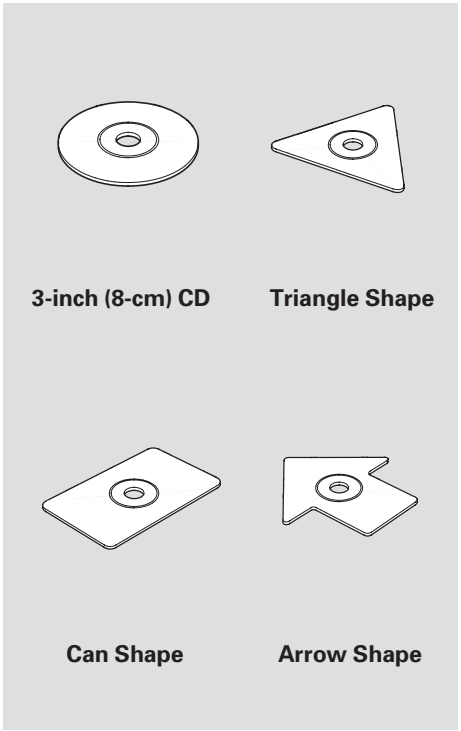
Burrs

CONTINUED

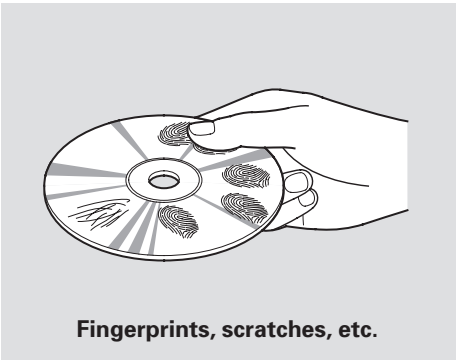
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

4. Small, irregular shaped discs



5. Discs with scratches, dirty discs



- CD-R or CD-RW may not play due to the recording conditions.
- Scratches and fingerprints on the discs may cause the sound to skip.

- Recommended discs are printed with the following logo.

COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO

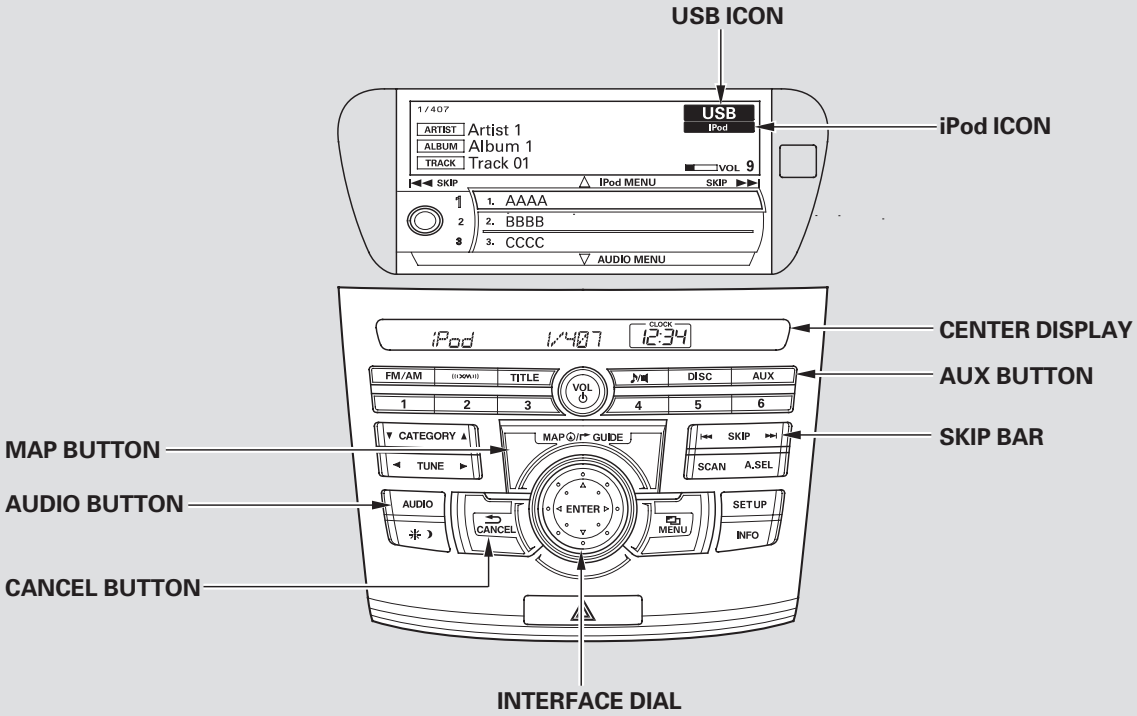
- Audio unit may not play the following formats.

mp3 Plays Windows Media™

- This audio unit cannot play a Dual-disc®.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

To Play an iPod®
This audio system can operate the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the in-dash disc changer. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment by using your dock connector, then press the AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The iPod will also be recharged with the ignition switch in these positions.

The audio system reads and plays playable sound files on the iPod. The system cannot operate an iPod as a mass storage device. The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

Voice Control System
You can select the AUX mode by using the navigation system voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

iPods compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model	Software
iPod Classic 5th Gen. (2005 or later)	Ver. 1.2 or more
iPod classic (2007 or later)	Ver. 1.0 or more
iPod nano	Ver. 1.2 or more
iPod nano 2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or more
iPod nano 3rd generation	Ver. 1.0 or more
iPod touch	Ver. 1.1.1 or more
iPhone	Ver. 1.1.1 or more

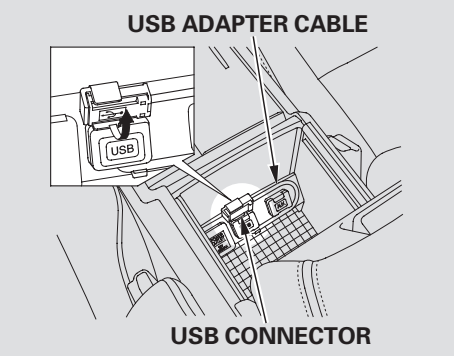
Use only compatible iPods with the latest software. iPods that are not compatible will not work in this audio unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

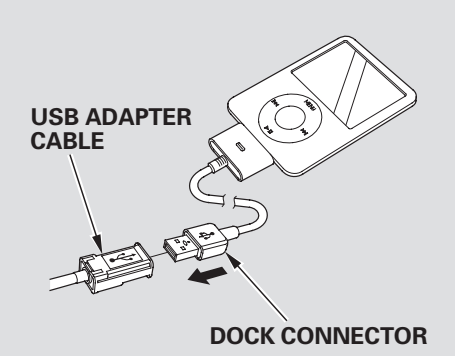
Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

NOTE:
- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.

Connecting an iPod



1. Unclip the USB connector by pivoting it, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
3. Install the dock connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

If the audio system still does not recognize the iPod, the iPod may need to be reset. Follow the instructions that came with your iPod, or you can find reset instructions online at *www.apple.com/ipod.*

The current file number and total of the selected playable files are displayed in the center display. Pressing the AUDIO button displays the artist, album and track (file) names on the navigation screen.

To Change or Select Files

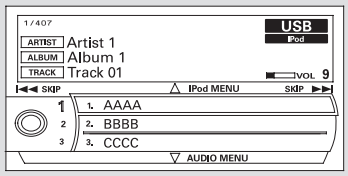
Use the SKIP bar while an iPod is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►I side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the I◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►I or I◄◄) of the SKIP bar.

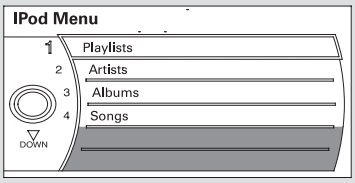
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

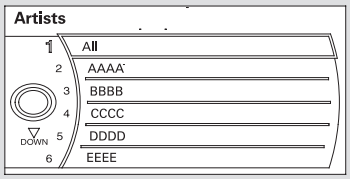


You can also change files with the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push the selector to the right side to skip forward and to the left side to skip backward.

To Select a File from iPod Menu



You can also select a file from any of the iPod menus: playlists, artists, albums and songs, by using the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to display the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push up the interface selector to display the iPod menu. Turn the knob on the interface dial to select a desired list.



Push ENTER on the selector to display the items on that list, then turn the knob on the interface dial to select a desired list. Pushing the selector up or down moves a selection to the top or bottom of the screen items. Press ENTER to set your selection.

CONTINUED

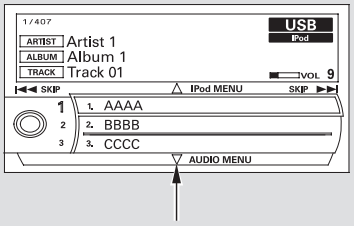
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

If you select “ALL” on either the artists or albums list, all available files on the selected list are played.

Press the AUDIO button to go back to the normal audio playing display. Pressing the CANCEL button goes back to the previous screen, and pressing the MAP button cancels the audio control display on the screen.

To Select Repeat or Random Mode:

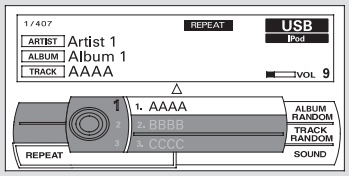


Push down the selector.

You can select any type of repeat and random mode on the audio menu. Press the AUDIO button to display the audio control screen, then push down the selector to display the audio menu. Turn the knob on the interface dial to select an audio mode: repeat, album random, and track random. Press ENTER to set your selection.

To cancel the selected mode, press ENTER again while the highlighted mode is selected on the audio control display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

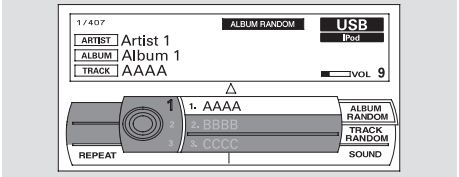


REPEAT — This feature continuously plays a file. To turn it off, press ENTER again.

Pressing either side of the SKIP bar changes the file while keeping the repeat feature.

TRACK RANDOM — This feature plays all available files from the selected items in the iPod menu list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. You will see TRACK RANDOM on the screen.

To turn it off, have this mode highlighted and press ENTER again.



ALBUM RANDOM — This feature plays all available albums from the selected items in the iPod menu list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. The files in each album are played in the recorded order. You will see ALBUM RANDOM on the screen.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod® (Models with navigation system)

To turn it off, have this mode highlighted and press ENTER again.

You can also select another list from the iPod menu while keeping the random function.

NOTE:
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

To Stop Playing Your iPod
To play the radio, press the AM, FM, or «XM» button. Press the DISC button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the AUX button to switch the audio mode between the *Bluetooth*® Audio and iPod.

Disconnecting an iPod
You can disconnect the iPod at any time when you see "OK to disconnect" message* in the iPod display. Always make sure you see "OK to disconnect" message in the iPod display before you disconnect it. Make sure to follow the iPod's instructions on how to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

* : The displayed message may vary on models or versions. On some models, there is no message to disconnect.

When you disconnect the iPod while it is playing, the center display and the audio screen (if selected) show NO DATA.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you reconnect the same iPod, the system may begin playing where it left off, depending on what mode the iPod is in when it is reconnected.

iPod® Error Messages

If you see an error message in the center display, see page 268 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

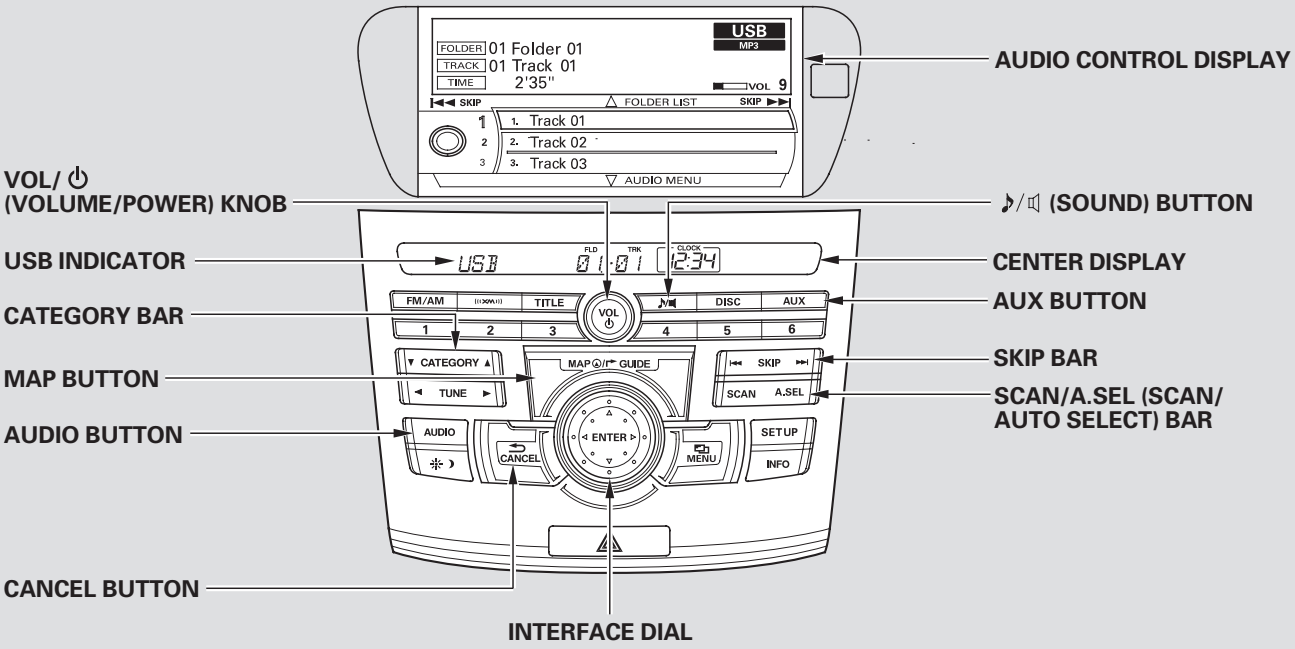
iPod® Error Messages (Models with navigation system)

If you see an error message in the center display while playing an iPod, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Solution
FILE ERROR	The system cannot read the file(s). Check the files in the iPod. There is a possibility that the files have been damaged.
MEDIA ERROR	Appears when an unsupported iPod is inserted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can operate the audio files on a USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the in-dash disc changer. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment, then press the AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC* formats. Depending on the format, the display shows MP3, WMA or AAC when a USB flash memory device is playing. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 65535 files.

* : Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit.

NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as the device or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.
- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing a USB flash memory device.
- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.
- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.
- Depending on the type of encoding and writing software used, there may be cases where character information does not display properly.
- The order of files in USB playback may be different from the order of files displayed in PC or other devices etc. Files are played in the order stored in USB flash memory device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

Voice Control System
You can select the AUX mode by using the navigation system voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

The specifications for compatible MP3 files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
  16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bitrate:
  32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320/VBR kbps (MPEG1)
- Supported standards:
  MPEG1 Audio Layer3
  MPEG2 Audio Layer3
- Partition:
  Top partition only
- Maximum layers: 8

The specifications for compatible WMA files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate:
  48－320/VBR kbps (Max 384)
- Supported standards:
  WMA version 7/8/9
- Partition:
  Top partition only
- Maximum layers: 8

The specifications for compatible AAC files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  8/11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate:
  48－320 kbps
- Supported standards:
  MPEG4/AAC LC
  MPEG2/AAC LC
- Partition:
  Top partition only
- Maximum layers: 8

Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, then skips to the next file.

In WMA or AAC format, DRM (digital rights management) files cannot be played. If the system finds a DRM file, the audio unit displays UNPLAYABLE FILE, and then skips to the next file.

NOTICE

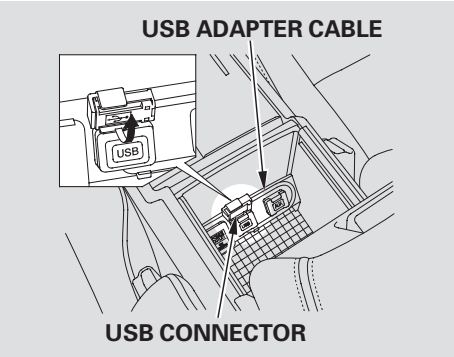
Combining a low sampling frequency with a low bitrate may result in extremely degraded sound quality.

CONTINUED

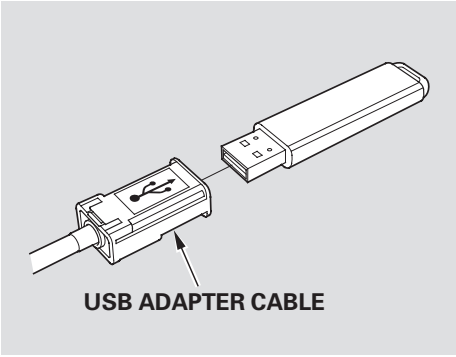
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



1. Unclip the USB connector by pivoting it, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

When the USB device is connected and the USB mode is selected on the audio system, the USB indicator is shown in the center display. It also shows the folder and file numbers. Pressing the AUDIO button displays the folder and file names, and the elapsed time in the navigation screen.

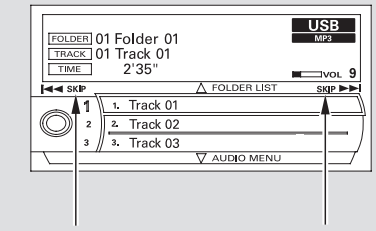
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

To Change or Select Files
Use the SKIP bar while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change files.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a file, press and hold either side (►►| or |◄◄) of the SKIP bar.



You can also change files with the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push the selector knob to the right side to skip to the beginning of the next file, and to the left side to skip to the beginning of the current file. Pushing it to the left again skips to the beginning of the previous file.

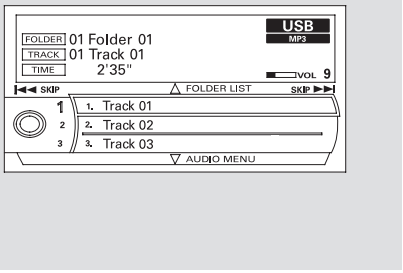
Folder Selection – To select a different folder, press and release either side of the CATEGORY bar. Press the ▲ side to skip to the next folder, and press the ▼ side to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

CONTINUED

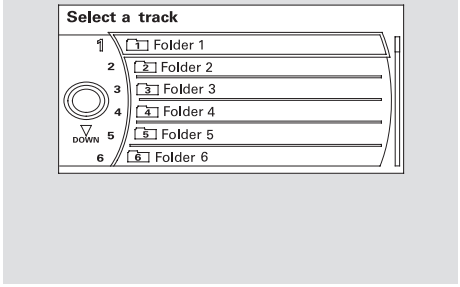
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

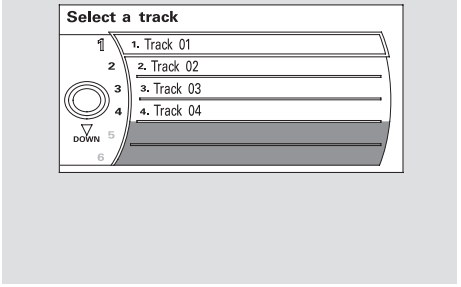
To Select a File from Folder and File Lists



You can also select a folder or file from the list by using the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen.



Push up the selector on the interface dial to switch the display to the folder list, then turn the knob on the interface dial to select a file.



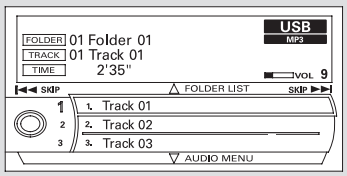
Press ENTER to change the display to the file list, then turn the knob on the interface dial to select a file. Press ENTER to set your selection.

To go back to the normal playing display, press the AUDIO button. Pressing the CANCEL button goes back to the previous screen and pressing the MAP button cancels the audio mode display.

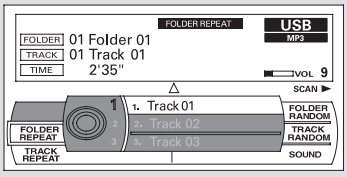
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:



You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes on the audio menu screen. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push down the selector on the interface dial to display the audio menu items.



Turn the knob on the interface dial to select a play mode: folder random, track random, folder repeat, track repeat. Press ENTER to set your selection.

To cancel the selected mode, push down the selector to display the audio menu on the audio control display. Turn the knob on the interface dial to select the highlighted play mode, then press ENTER to turn off that selected mode.

TRACK RANDOM — This feature plays all the files in random order.

FOLDER RANDOM — This feature plays the files in the selected folder in random order.

TRACK REPEAT — This feature continuously plays a file. Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also turns off this feature.

FOLDER REPEAT — This feature replays all the files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. Pressing either side of the CATEGORY bar also turns off this feature.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

TRACK SCAN — This function samples all files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. To activate the scan feature, push the selector to the right. You will see TRACK SCAN on the screen. You will also see SCAN on the center display and the file number blinking. You will get a 10 second sampling of each file in the folder. Push the selector repeatedly to get out of the scan mode. The system plays the last file sampled.

You can also select the scan feature with the SCAN side of the SCAN/ A.SEL bar on the control panel. Press and release the SCAN side of the bar. Press and hold the SCAN side of the bar to get out of the scan mode and play the last file sampled.

FOLDER SCAN — This function samples the first file in each folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, push the selector to the right repeatedly. You will see FOLDER SCAN on the screen. You will also see SCAN on the center display and the folder number blinking. You will get a 10 second sampling of the first file in each folder. Push the selector repeatedly to get out of the scan mode. The system plays the last file sampled.

You can also select the folder scan feature with the SCAN side of the SCAN/A.SEL bar on the control panel. Press and release the SCAN side of the bar repeatedly.
Press and hold the SCAN side of the bar to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

Pressing either side of the CATEGORY or SKIP bar also turns off the feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (Models with navigation system)

To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

To play the radio, press the AM, FM or «» button. Press the DISC button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the AUX button to switch the audio mode between the USB or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If you reconnect the same USB flash memory device, the system will begin playing where it left off.

Disconnecting a USB Flash Memory Device

You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Make sure to follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

When you disconnect the USB flash memory device while it is playing, the center display and the audio screen (if selected) show NO DATA.

USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the center display, see page 278 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

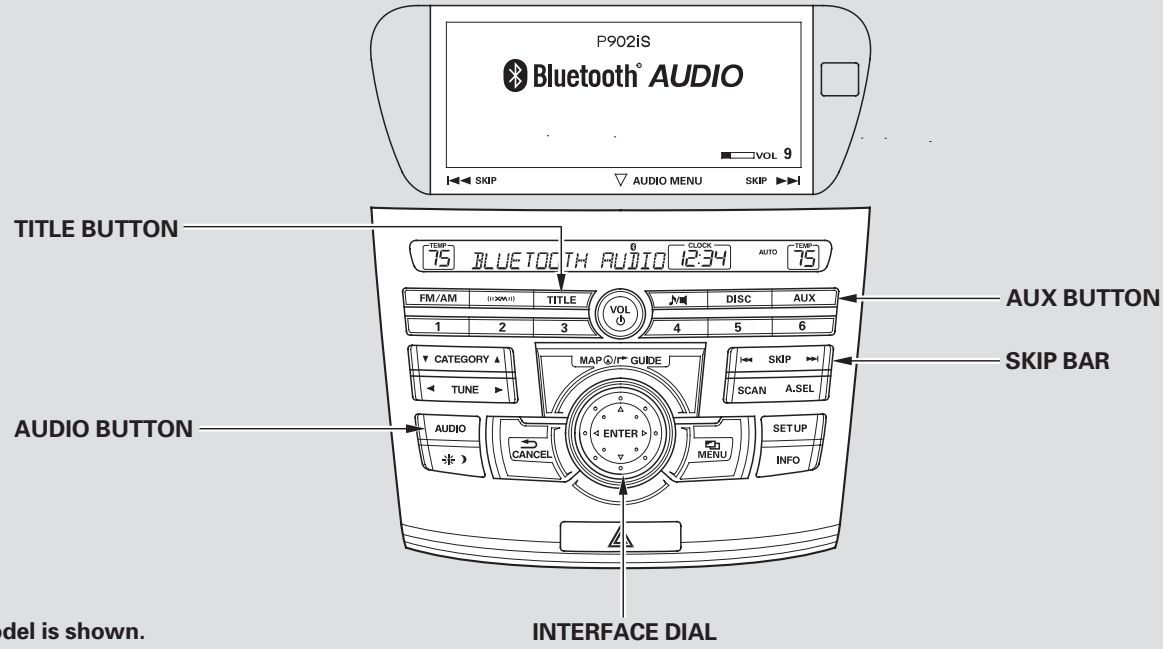
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages (Models with navigation system)

If you see an error message in the center display while playing a USB flash memory device, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Solution
FILE ERROR	The system cannot read the file(s). Check the files in the USB flash memory device. There is a possibility that the files have been damaged.
MEDIA ERROR	Appears when the unsupported USB flash memory device is inserted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)



U.S. model is shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle is equipped with a *Bluetooth*® Audio system, which allows you to listen to streaming audio from your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone. This function is only available on phones that are paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system (see page 311).

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. You can find an approved phone by visiting *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or by calling the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876. In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call 1-888-9-ACURA-9.

NOTE: In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.
To begin to play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Press the AUX button* with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. When the phone is recognized, you will see the *Bluetooth*® Audio message and icon on the center display and the audio control display on the navigation screen (if selected), and the system begins to play.

Once a device is linked, the name of the device will appear on the screen. Pressing the TITLE button switches the center display between the *Bluetooth*® Audio and the device name.
If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be delay before the system begins to play.

* : If an iPod, USB flash memory device or audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack was selected at the last mode, you will see iPod, USB or AUX in the center display and the audio control display on the navigation screen (if selected). Push the AUX button again to play audio files from your *Bluetooth*® Audio phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)

In the following conditions, the display shows "NO CONNECT" message after pressing the TITLE button.

- The phone is not linked to HFL.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- Another HFL compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, is already connected.

If your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone does not operate as described, make sure it is an Acura approved phone. To find out if your phone is approved, go to *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* (in Canada, *www.acura.ca*), or call the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876.

Voice Control System
You can select the AUX mode by using the navigation system voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

To skip a file
Press the ►►| side of the SKIP bar to skip forward to the next file, and press the |◄◄ side to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Push the |◄◄ side again to skip to the previous file.

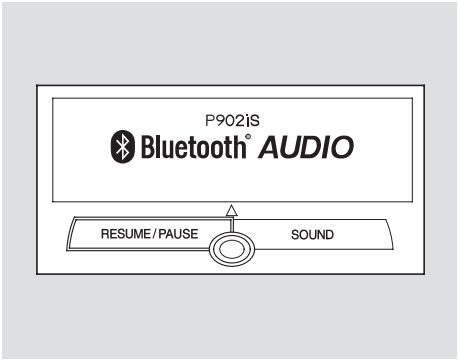
You can also operate the skip function with the interface dial on the audio control display of the navigation screen. Push the AUDIO button. Each time you push the selector on the interface dial to the right, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Push it to the left to skip backward to the beginning to the current file. Push the selector to the left again to skip to the previous file.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Audio System (Models with navigation system)

To pause or resume a file

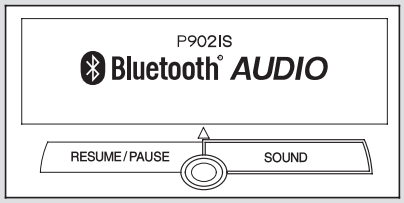


The resume/pause mode can stop playing a file temporarily.

Turn the knob on the interface dial to switch the setting between the resume/pause mode and the sound mode. Select RESUME/PAUSE, then press ENTER to set your selection. Each time you press ENTER, the system switches between the resume mode and pause mode.

NOTE: The pause function may not be available on some phone devices.

To change sound settings



Press the AUDIO button, then push down the selector to display the audio menu. Turn the knob to switch the setting between the resume/pause mode and the sound mode. Select SOUND, then press ENTER to set your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn the knob to select a sound mode, then press ENTER to set your selection. Turn the knob to your liking (see page 233 for more sound setting information).

To switch to HFL mode
If you receive a call when the *Bluetooth*® Audio is playing, press the HFL Talk button on the steering wheel. The screen and the center display switch to the HFL mode (see page 304).

After ending the call, press the HFL Back button to go back to the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If you receive a call while the system is in the pause mode, the mode will be canceled and *Bluetooth*® Audio will continue to play.

To turn off the Bluetooth® Audio mode
Select any other audio mode by pressing a button; FM, AM, «» or DISC (if a disc is loaded), on the audio control panel or press the mode button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select another audio mode. If iPod or USB flash memory device is connected to the USB adapter cable or audio unit is connected to AUX jack, pressing the AUX button also changes a mode.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FM/AM Radio Reception

FM/AM Radio Frequencies
The radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands.
Those bands cover these frequencies:

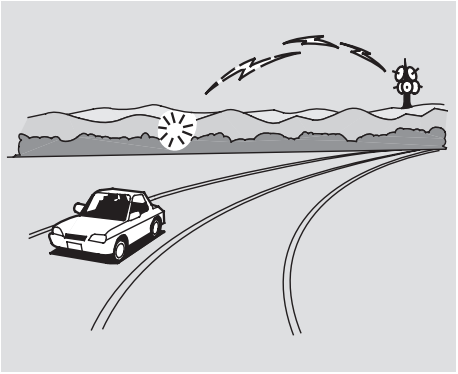
AM band: 530 to 1,710 kHz
FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least 10 kHz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 MHz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as “FM101.”

FM/AM Radio Reception
How well the radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station’s transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

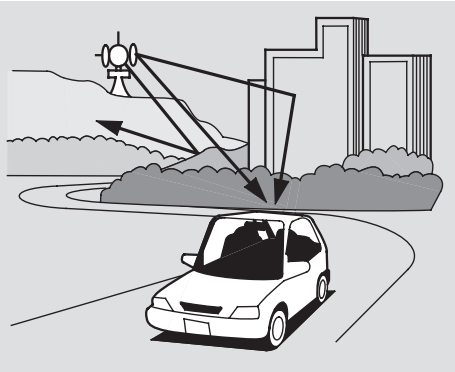
A radio station’s signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station’s signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio’s reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FM/AM Radio Reception



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.

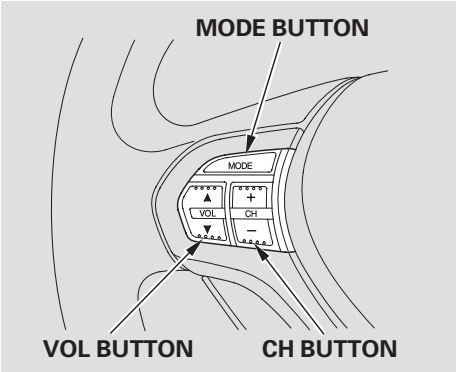
Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Audio Controls



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM, or disc (if a disc(s) is loaded). On models with XM Radio, you can also select XM1 and XM2. If an iPod or a USB flash memory device is plugged into the system, you can also select AUX.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (−) to go back to the previous preset station. If you press and hold the CH button (+) or (−), the system goes into the skip (seek) mode. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

If you are playing a disc, the system skips to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA format) each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (−) to return to the beginning of the current track/file. Press it twice to return to the previous track/file.

You will see the track/file number and the elapsed time. If the disc has text data or is compressed in MP3 or WMA, you can also see any other information (track title, file name, folder name, etc.).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Audio Controls, Auxiliary Input Jack

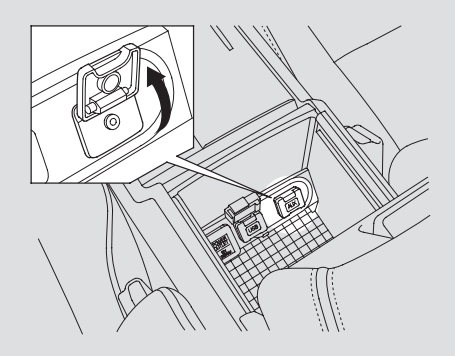
In MP3 or WMA mode, you can use the skip function to select folders. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep, to skip forward to the first file of the next folder. Press the bottom (−) to skip backward to the previous folder.

Except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine
If you are playing a USB flash memory device or iPod with the USB adapter cable, press and release the top (+) of the CH button to skip forward to the beginning of the next file. Press the bottom (−) to skip backward to the beginning to the current file. Press it twice to return to the previous file.

When playing a USB flash memory device, you can also use the seek function to skip the folder. To activate this, press and hold either side of the CH button until you hear a beep.

On models with navigation system
If you are playing a conventional CD (without the text data and not compressed in MP3 or WMA), you can use the skip function to select discs. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep, to skip forward to the next disc. Press and hold the bottom (−) to skip backward to the previous disc.

Auxiliary Input Jack



The auxiliary input jack is inside the console compartment. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.

When a compatible audio unit is connected to the jack, press the AUX button to select it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Theft Protection

Your vehicle's audio system may disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code with the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from the five digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a radio code card that lists your audio system's code and serial numbers. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from your dealer. To do this, you will need the audio system's serial number.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display (on the center display on models with navigation system) the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code. The code is on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have ten tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in ten attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

The system will retain your AM and FM presets even if power is disconnected.

On models with AcuraLink

NOTE:

If you have a My Acura account, you can retrieve the anti-theft code online.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock

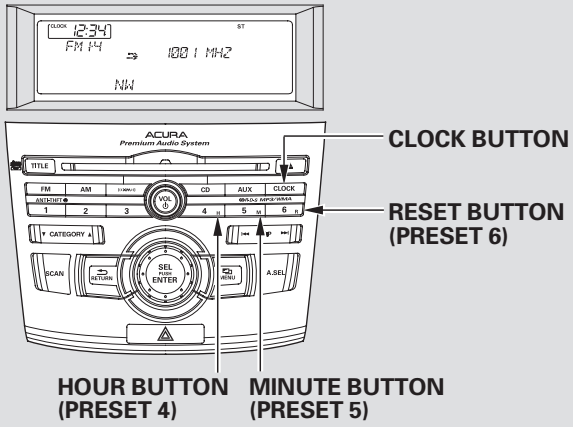
On models without navigation system
To set the time, press the CLOCK button until you hear a beep. The displayed time begins to blink.

Change the hours by pressing the H (hour) button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing the M (minute) button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

Press the CLOCK button again to enter the set time.

You can quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, press and hold the CLOCK button, then press the R (reset) button to set the time back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, the same procedure sets the time forward to the beginning of the next hour.

On models without navigation system



For example:
- 1:06 would RESET to 1:00.
- 1:52 would RESET to 2:00.

On models with navigation system
The navigation system receives signals from the global positioning system (GPS), and the displayed time is updated automatically by the GPS. Refer to the navigation system manual for how to adjust the time.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock

On models without navigation system

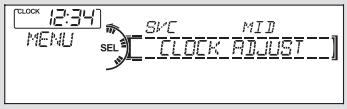
Adjusting the Clock with MENU Button

You can also adjust the clock and switch the clock display between 24-hours and 12-hours in the menu mode.

To adjust the clock setting:

1. Press and release the MENU button. The display shows you the menu items.

   You can adjust the clock setting with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.



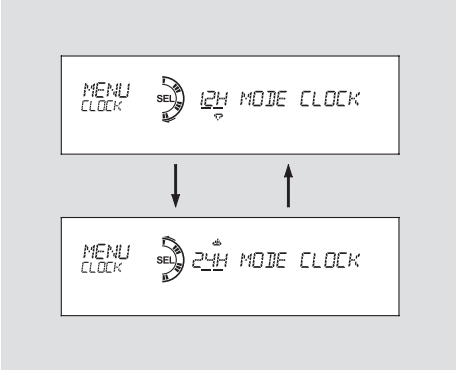
2. Turn the selector knob to select "CLOCK ADJUST."

3. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display changes to the clock adjusting display.

4. Turn the selector knob to select the item which you want to adjust. Turning the selector knob will change the selected item between the clock display setting, hours, minutes, and SET. The selected item is indicated with △ in the display.

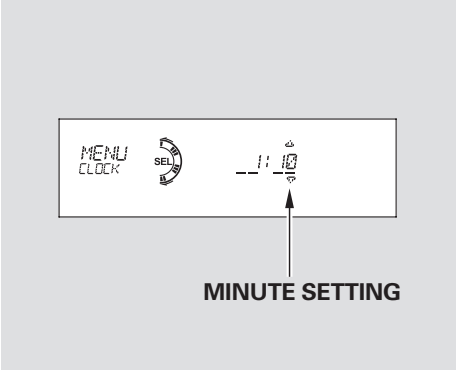
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock



5. Turn the selector knob to change the setting between 12H and 24H.

6. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display will return to the clock adjusting display.



7. To set the time, turn the selector knob and select the hours or the minutes, then press the knob to enter your selection. The display changes to the setting display.

8. Turn the selector knob to count the numbers up or down.

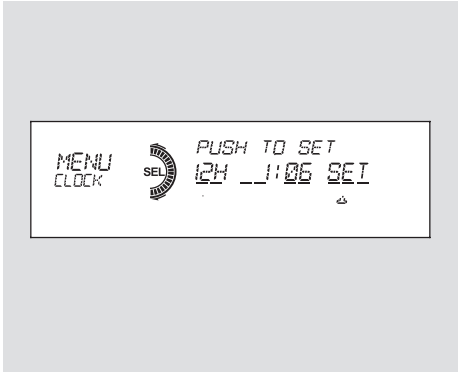
9. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display will return to the clock adjusting display.

While setting the clock, pressing the RETURN button will go back to the previous display. Pressing the MENU button again will cancel this setting mode.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock, Security System



10. To enter the clock setting, turn the selector knob to select "SET," then press the knob. The display will return to the menu item display.

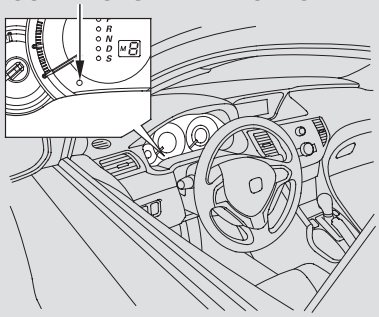
11. Press either the RETURN or MENU button to go back to the normal display.

Security System

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking lights, side marker lights and taillights flashes if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the audio unit. This alarm continues for two minutes, then the system resets. To reset an activated system before the two minutes have elapsed, unlock the driver's door with the key or the remote transmitter.

The security system automatically sets 15 seconds after you lock the doors, hood, and trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors from the outside with the key, driver's lock tab, door lock master switch, or remote transmitter. The security system indicator on the instrument panel starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.

SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR



Once the security system is set, opening any door (without using the key or the remote transmitter), the hood, or the trunk will cause the alarm to activate. It will also activate if the audio unit is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

With the system set, you can still open the trunk with the remote transmitter without triggering the alarm. The alarm will sound if the trunk lock is forced, or the trunk is opened with the trunk release button on the driver's door or the emergency trunk opener.

The security system will not set if the hood, trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and check the indicators on the multi-information display. Close any door or the trunk indicated on the display. Check the hood visually since it is not part of the display, and shut it if necessary.

NOTE: Use the remote transmitter to quickly check that the hood, the trunk, and all doors are closed. Push the lock button twice within 5 seconds. There should be an audible confirmation beep.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass

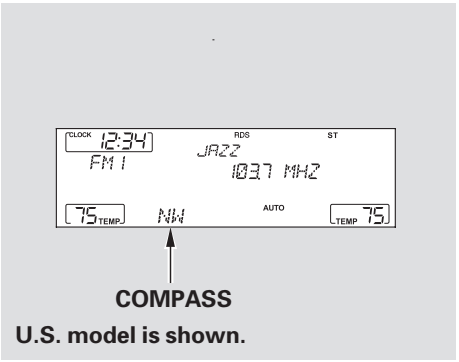
On models without navigation system

Compass Operation

Compass operation can be affected by driving near power lines or stations, across bridges, through tunnels, over railroad crossings, past large vehicles, or driving near large objects that can cause a magnetic disturbance. It can also be affected by accessories such as antennas and roof racks that are mounted by magnets.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the compass is self-calibrating, then the compass display is shown in the display.

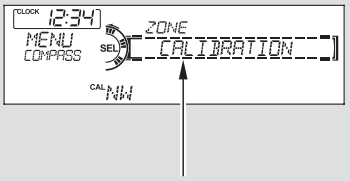
Compass Calibration



COMPASS

U.S. model is shown.

The compass may need to be manually calibrated after exposure to a strong magnetic field. If the compass seems to be continually showing the wrong direction and is not self-calibrating, or the compass display is blinking with the CAL indicator on, do the following.

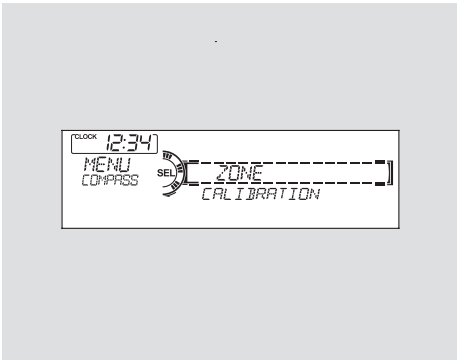


COMPASS SETTING MENU ITEMS

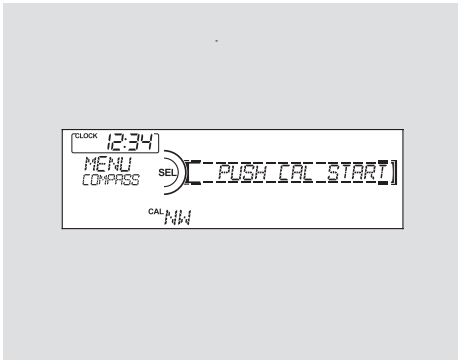
NOTE: Do this procedure in an open area, away from buildings, power lines, and other vehicles.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Press and hold the MENU button for about 5 seconds. The display shows you the compass setting menu items.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Turn the selector knob to select "CALIBRATION."



4. Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display shows you "PUSH CAL START."

   While setting the compass, pressing the RETURN button will go back to the previous display. Pressing the MENU button will cancel the compass setting mode.

5. Press the selector knob (ENTER). The compass display is blinking and the CAL indicator is shown.

6. Drive the vehicle slowly in two complete circles.

When the calibration is successfully completed, the CAL indicator goes off and the compass display will stop blinking and show an actual heading.

The audio system is not related to the compass system. Even if the compass system is calibrating, the display returns to the normal display which you last selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

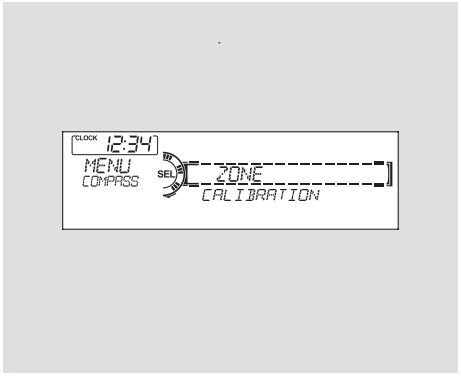
Compass

Compass Zone Selection
In most areas, there is a variation between magnetic north and true north. Zone selection is required so the compass can compensate for this variation. To check and select the zone, do this:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

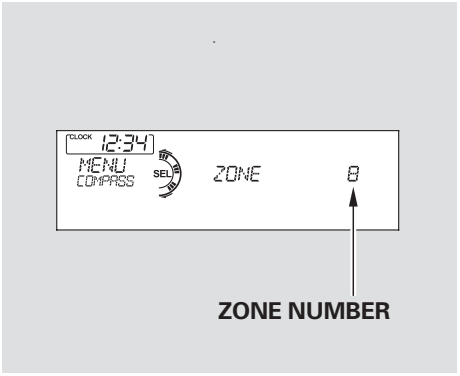
2. Press and hold the MENU button for about 5 seconds. The display shows you the compass setting menu items.

3. Turn the selector knob to select "ZONE." Press the selector knob (ENTER) to enter your selection. The display shows you the currently selected zone number.



4. Find the zone for your area on the map (see page 297). If the correct zone is not shown, turn the selector knob to cycle the zone lists up or down.

   If necessary, press the RETURN button to return to the previous display. Pressing the MENU button will cancel the compass setting mode.



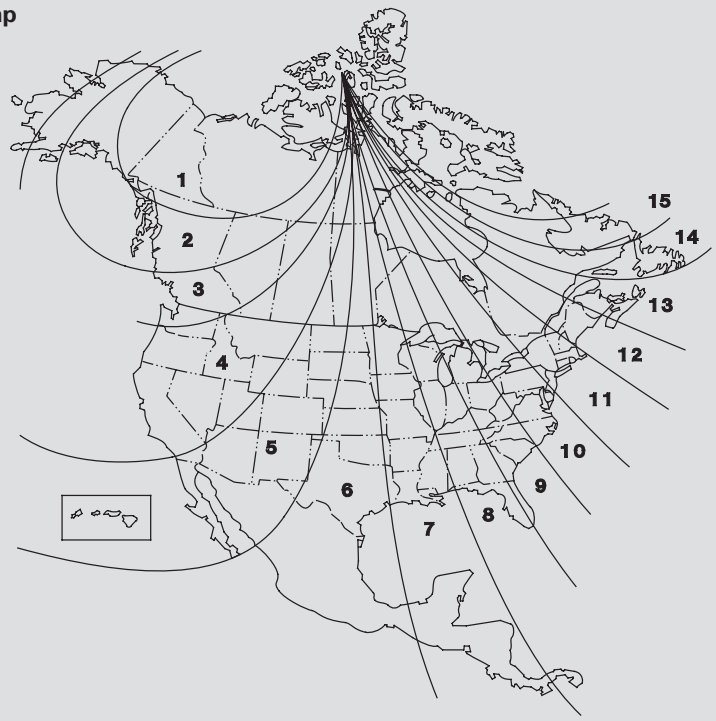
5. Once the correct zone is displayed, press the selector knob. The display then returns to normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass

The audio system is not related to the compass system. Even if the compass system is in the zone setting mode, the display returns to the normal display which you last selected.

Zone Map



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

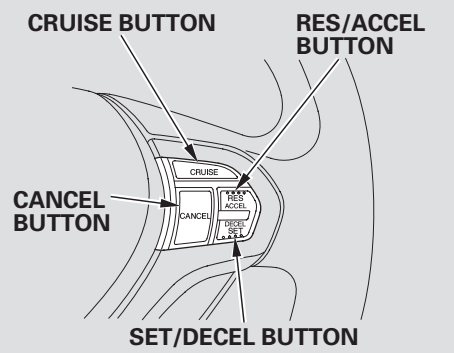
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

⚠WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Using Cruise Control



1. Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN indicator on the instrument panel comes on.

   The cruise control system can be left on, even when it is not in use.

2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your vehicle speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.

Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase the speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will speed up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

NOTE: If you need to decrease your speed quickly, use the brakes as you normally would.

- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button repeatedly. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Tap the brake or clutch pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

Even with the cruise control turned on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake or clutch pedal causes the cruise control to cancel.

Canceling Cruise Control
You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

Resuming the Set Speed
When you push the CANCEL button, or tap the brake or clutch pedal, the system will remember the previously set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h), and then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on. The vehicle will accelerate to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the CRUISE button turns the system completely off and erases the previous cruising speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver built into your vehicle can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

General Safety Information

Before programming your HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features.

If your garage door was manufactured before April 1, 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. These units do not have safety features that cause the motor to stop and reverse it if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury. Do not use HomeLink with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features.

Units manufactured between April 1, 1982 and January 1, 1993 may be equipped with safety stop and reverse features. If your unit does not have an external entrapment protection system, an easy test to confirm the function and performance of the safety stop and reverse feature is to lay a 2 × 4 under the closing door. The door should stop and reverse upon contacting the piece of wood.
As an additional safety feature, garage door openers manufactured after January 1, 1993 are required to have external entrapment protection systems, such as an electronic eye, which detect an object obstructing the door.

Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have this information, contact the manufacturer of the equipment.
Before programming HomeLink to a garage door or gate opener, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the device to prevent potential injury or damage.
When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage.

Training HomeLink

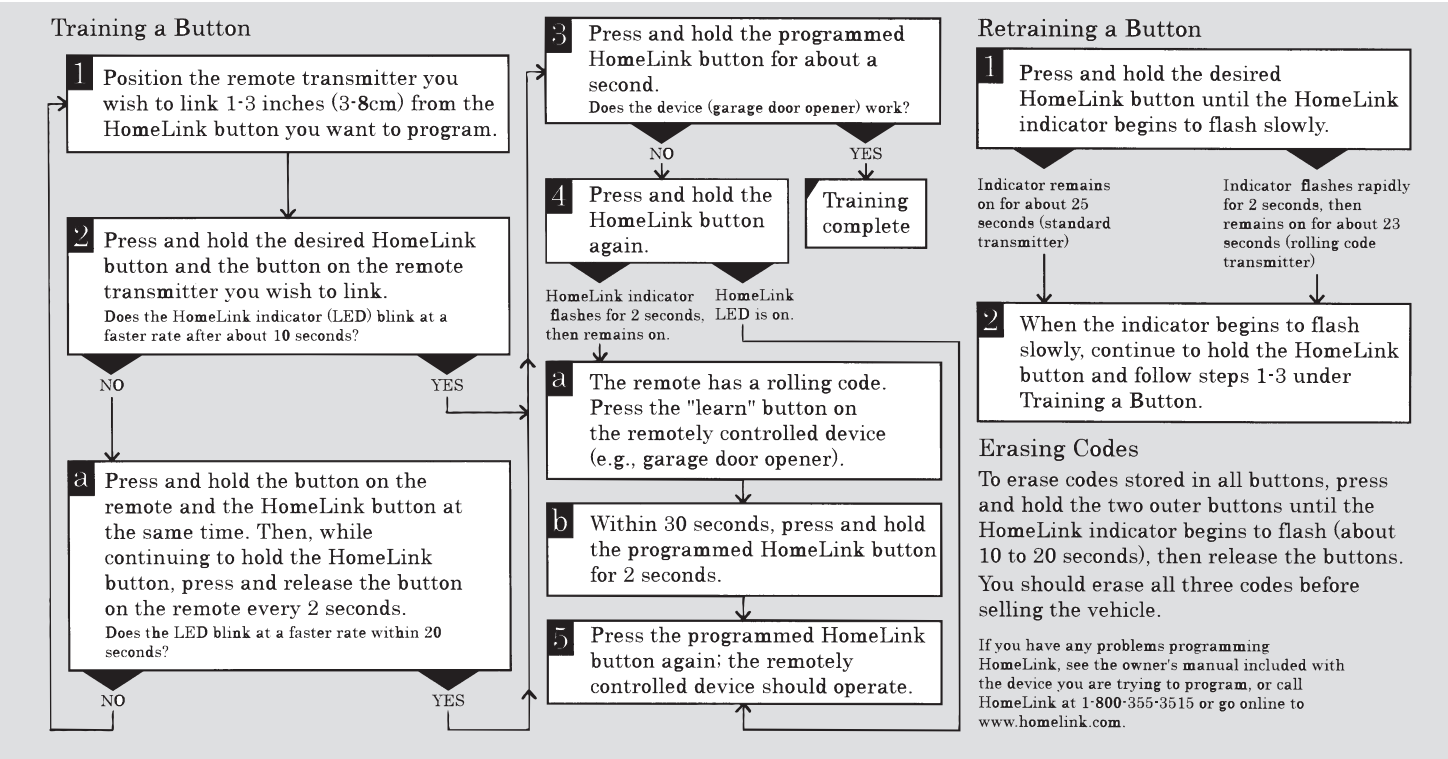
Before you begin — If you just received your vehicle and have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes before training the first button.
To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons on the HomeLink transceiver for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator flashes. Release the buttons, then proceed to step 1.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

If you are training the second or third buttons, go directly to step 1.


Training a Button
1 Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1-3 inches (3-8cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program.
2 Press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the button on the remote transmitter you wish to link.
Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) blink at a faster rate after about 10 seconds?
NO
YES
a Press and hold the button on the remote and the HomeLink button at the same time. Then, while continuing to hold the HomeLink button, press and release the button on the remote every 2 seconds.
Does the LED blink at a faster rate within 20 seconds?
NO
YES
3 Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a second.
Does the device (garage door opener) work?
NO
YES
4 Press and hold the HomeLink button again.
Training complete
HomeLink indicator flashes for 2 seconds, then remains on.
HomeLink LED is on.
a The remote has a rolling code. Press the "learn" button on the remotely controlled device (e.g., garage door opener).
b Within 30 seconds, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 seconds.
5 Press the programmed HomeLink button again; the remotely controlled device should operate.
Retraining a Button
1 Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly.
Indicator remains on for about 25 seconds (standard transmitter)
Indicator flashes rapidly for 2 seconds, then remains on for about 23 seconds (rolling code transmitter)
2 When the indicator begins to flash slowly, continue to hold the HomeLink button and follow steps 1-3 under Training a Button.
Erasing Codes
To erase codes stored in all buttons, press and hold the two outer buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash (about 10 to 20 seconds), then release the buttons.
You should erase all three codes before selling the vehicle.
If you have any problems programming HomeLink, see the owner's manual included with the device you are trying to program, or call HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or go online to www.homelink.com.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using voice commands, without handling your cell phone.

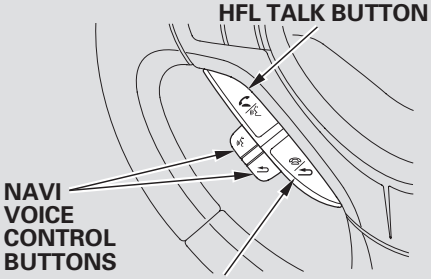
To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

In the U.S., visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or call (888) 528-7876.

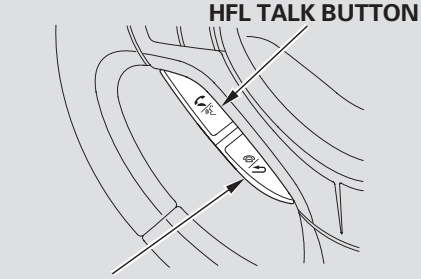
In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca,* or call (888) 9-ACURA-9.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons



On models with navigation system



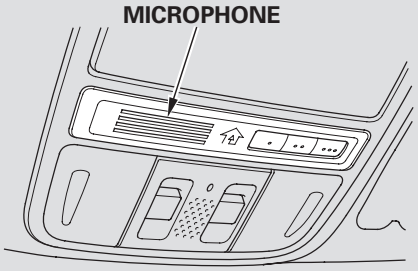
On models without navigation system

HFL Talk button – Press and release to give a command or answer a call.

HFL Back button – Press and release to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel the command.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice Control Tips



Vehicle with navigation system is shown.

- Air or wind noise from the dashboard and side vents, windows and moonroof may interfere with the microphone. Adjust or close them as necessary.
- Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you want to make a command. After the beep, speak in a clear, natural tone.
- Try to reduce all background noise. If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, commands may be misinterpreted.
- Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say “Call 123-456-7890” or “Dial Peter.”
- When HFL is in use, navigation voice commands cannot be recognized.
- To change the volume level of HFL, use the audio system volume knob or the steering wheel volume controls.

CONTINUED

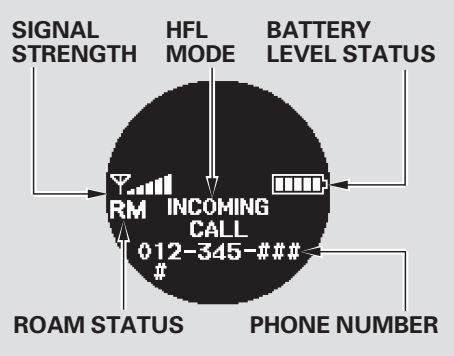
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Help Features

- To hear general HFL information, including help on pairing a phone or setting up the system, say "Tutorial."
- For help at any time, including a list of available commands, say "Hands free help."

Information Display

As an incoming call notification, you will see the following display:

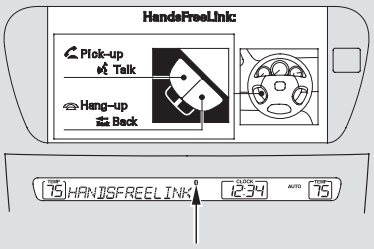


Some phones may send battery, signal strength, and roaming status information to HFL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models without navigation system

You will see "HANDSFREELINK" and the " " indicator on the audio display when you operate HFL.



U.S. model is shown.

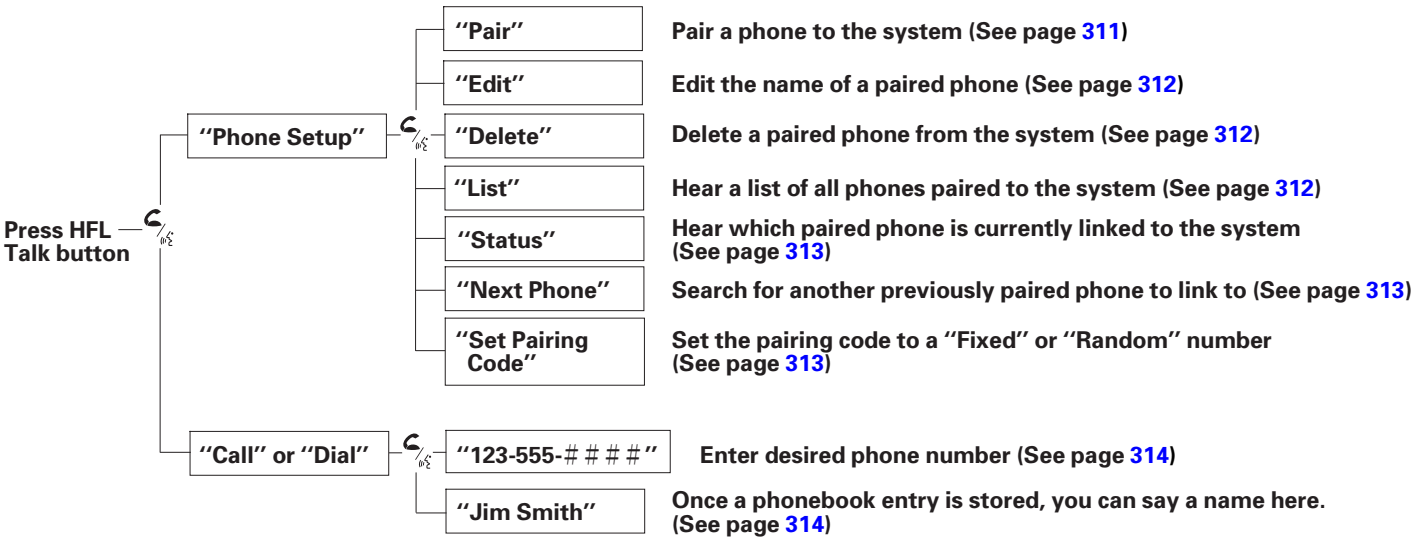
On models with navigation system
A notification that there is an incoming call, or HFL is in use, will appear on the navigation screen when the audio system is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

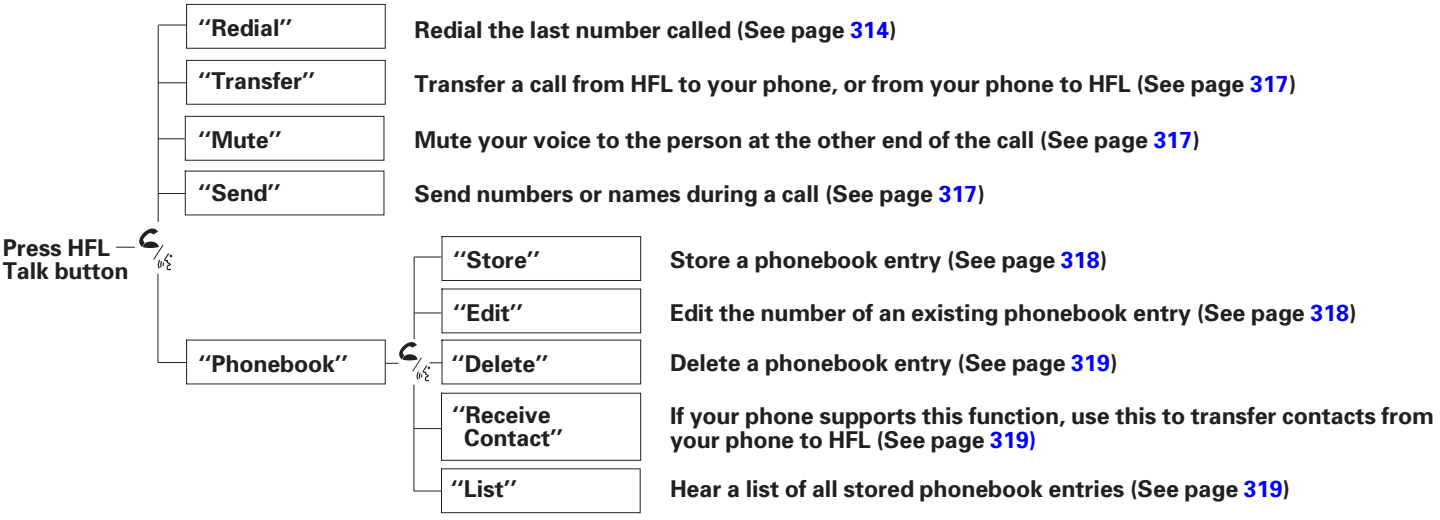
How to Use HFL

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.


Press HFL Talk button
"Phone Setup"
"Pair"
Pair a phone to the system (See page 311)
"Edit"
Edit the name of a paired phone (See page 312)
"Delete"
Delete a paired phone from the system (See page 312)
"List"
Hear a list of all phones paired to the system (See page 312)
"Status"
Hear which paired phone is currently linked to the system (See page 313)
"Next Phone"
Search for another previously paired phone to link to (See page 313)
"Set Pairing Code"
Set the pairing code to a "Fixed" or "Random" number (See page 313)
"Call" or "Dial"
"123-555-# # # #"
Enter desired phone number (See page 314)
"Jim Smith"
Once a phonebook entry is stored, you can say a name here. (See page 314)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

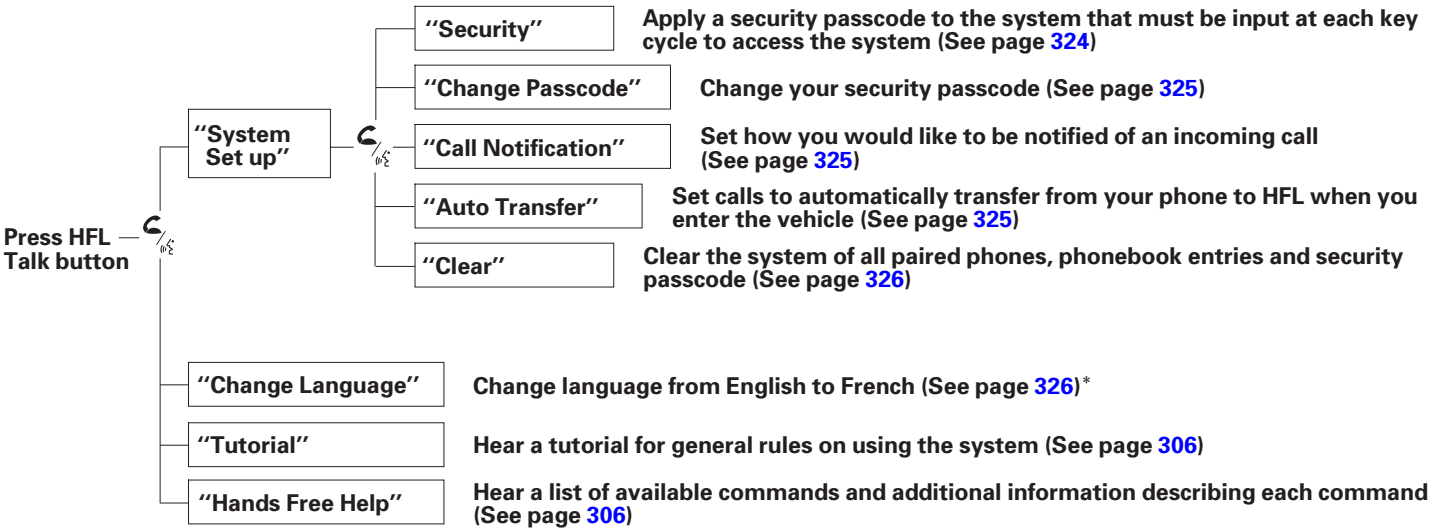

Press HFL Talk button
"Redial"
Redial the last number called (See page 314)
"Transfer"
Transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL (See page 317)
"Mute"
Mute your voice to the person at the other end of the call (See page 317)
"Send"
Send numbers or names during a call (See page 317)
"Phonebook"
"Store"
Store a phonebook entry (See page 318)
"Edit"
Edit the number of an existing phonebook entry (See page 318)
"Delete"
Delete a phonebook entry (See page 319)
"Receive Contact"
If your phone supports this function, use this to transfer contacts from your phone to HFL (See page 319)
"List"
Hear a list of all stored phonebook entries (See page 319)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®


Press HFL Talk button
"System Set up"
"Security"
Apply a security passcode to the system that must be input at each key cycle to access the system (See page 324)
"Change Passcode"
Change your security passcode (See page 325)
"Call Notification"
Set how you would like to be notified of an incoming call (See page 325)
"Auto Transfer"
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle (See page 325)
"Clear"
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries and security passcode (See page 326)
"Change Language"
Change language from English to French (See page 326)*
"Tutorial"
Hear a tutorial for general rules on using the system (See page 306)
"Hands Free Help"
Hear a list of available commands and additional information describing each command (See page 306)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.
∗ : Canadian models

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use HFL, you need to pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system.

Phone Setup
This command group is available for paired cell phones.

Phone pairing tips
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Your phone must be in discovery or search mode to pair. Refer to your phone's manual.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If after three minutes your phone is not ready to pair or a phone is not found, the system will time out and return to idle.

To pair a cell phone:
1. Press and release the HFL Talk button. If you are pairing a phone for the first time, HFL will give you information about the pairing process. If it is not the first phone you are pairing, say "**Phone setup**" and say "**Pair**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and put your phone in discovery or search mode. HFL will give you a 4-digit pairing code and begin searching for your phone.
3. When your phone finds a Bluetooth device, select HFL from the options and enter the 4-digit code from the previous step.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the newly paired phone.

On U.S. models with navigation system
Once the pairing process is completed, AcuraLink may display a connection confirmation screen. This screen is used to create a data connection between your cell phone and the AcuraLink system. You can choose to set up the data connection now, or do it later. If you want to do it now, exit the HFL menu by pressing the HFL Back button one or more times.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To rename a paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Edit**" after the prompts.
3. If there is more than one phone paired to the system, HFL will ask you which phone's name you want to change. Follow the HFL prompts and rename the phone.

To delete a paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Delete**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will ask you which phone you want to delete. Follow the HFL prompts to continue with the deletion.

To hear the names of all paired phones:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**List**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will read out all the paired phone's names.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To hear which paired phone is currently linked:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Status**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will tell you which phone is linked to the system.

To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Next phone**" after the prompts.
3. HFL disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone.
4. Once another phone is found, it is linked to the system. HFL will inform you which phone is now linked.

If no other phones are found or paired, HFL will inform you that the original phone is linked again.

To change the pairing code setting:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Set pairing code**" after the prompts.
3. If you want HFL to create a random code each time you pair a phone, say "**Random**." If you want to choose your own 4-digit code to be used each time, say "**Fixed**" and follow the HFL prompts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number or a name in the HFL phonebook. You can also redial the last number called.

Bluetooth is the wireless technology that links your phone to HFL. HFL uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

During a call, HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch. However, this may weaken the vehicle's battery.

To make a call using a phone number:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the phone number you want to dial.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number and say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."

Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers.

To make a call using a name in the HFL phonebook:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

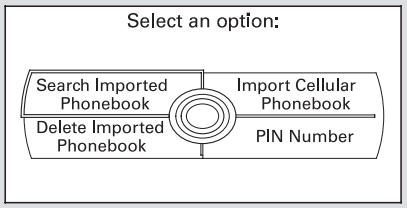
1. Say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name stored in the HFL phonebook that you want to call.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the name and make the call.

To redial the last number called by HFL:

Press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Redial**."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

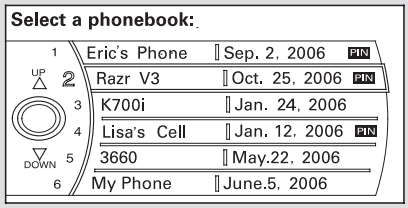
To make a call from an imported phonebook:



On models with navigation system

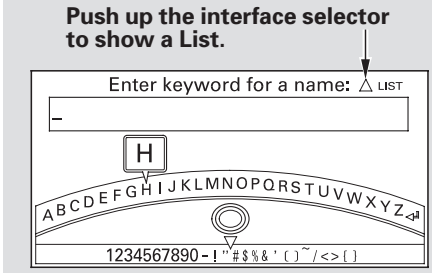
1. Press the INFO button, then select "**Cellular Phonebook**."

2. Select "**Search Imported Phonebook**."



3. Select a phonebook you want to choose a phone number from.

If the phonebook you select is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the PIN to access it. See page 322 for more information.

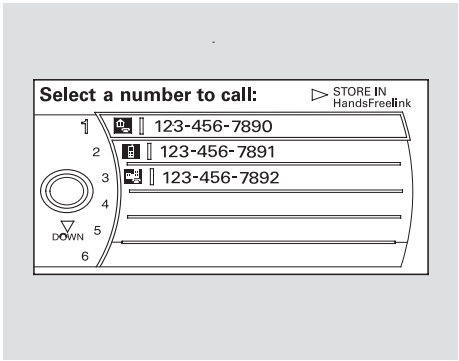


To search for a specific name in the phonebook, enter the keyword for either the first or last name.

To display all names in the phonebook, select the "**List**" option.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Select the name. All the phone numbers stored for that name will be listed.

5. Select the phone number, and push the interface selector to the right.

Selecting "**Store in HandsFreeLink**," the phone number will be stored in HFL, so that you can call it using HFL's name tag by voice.

Receiving a Call

When you receive a call, an incoming call notification (if activated) will play and interrupt the audio system if it is on.

Press the HFL Talk button to answer the call, or the HFL Back button to hang up.

Call Waiting

If your phone has Call Waiting, press and release the HFL Talk button to put the original call on hold and answer the incoming call.

To return to the original call, press the HFL Talk button again. If you don't want to answer the incoming call, disregard it and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the HFL Back button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transferring a Call

You can transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL.

Press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Transfer**."

Muting a Call

You can mute your voice to the person you are talking to during a call.

To mute your voice during a call, press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Mute**."

To unmute your voice, press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Mute**" again.

Send Numbers or Names During a Call

HFL allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

To send a name or number during a call:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Send**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name or number you want to send.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to send the tones and continue the call.

NOTE: To send a pound (#), say "pound." To send a star (*), say "star."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phonebook
You can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers in HFL. The numbers you store cannot only be phone numbers but other types, such as account numbers or passwords, which can be sent during a menu-driven call.

To store a phonebook entry:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Store**" after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to list as your phonebook entry.
4. Say the number you want to store for the name entry.
5. Follow the HFL prompts and say "**Enter**" to store the entry.

NOTE:
- Avoid using duplicate name entries.
- Avoid using "home" as a name entry.
- It is easier for HFL to recognize a multisyllabic or longer name. For example, use "Peter" instead of "Pete," or "John Smith" instead of "John."

To edit the number stored in a name:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Edit**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name entry you want to edit.
4. When asked, say the new number for that name.
5. Follow the HFL prompts to complete the edit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To delete a name:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Delete**" after the prompts.
3. Say the name you want to delete and follow the HFL prompts to complete the deletion.

To list all names in the phonebook:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**List**" after the prompts.
3. HFL begins reading the names in the order they were stored.
4. If you hear a name you want to call, immediately press the HFL Talk button and say "**Call**."

To store a specific phone number from your cell phone directly to the HFL phonebook (available on some phones):
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Receive contact**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts, select a number from your cell phone, and send it to HFL.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the number, or say "**Discard**" if it is not the number you want to store.
5. Follow the HFL prompts if you want to store another number.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cellular Phonebook
(available on some phones)
On models with navigation system

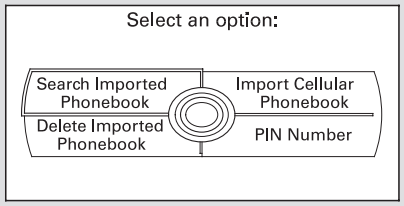
If you select **Cellular Phonebook** from the Information screen menu, you will see four HFL options.

For a list of cell phones that are compatible with this feature:

In the U.S., visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or call (888) 528-7876.

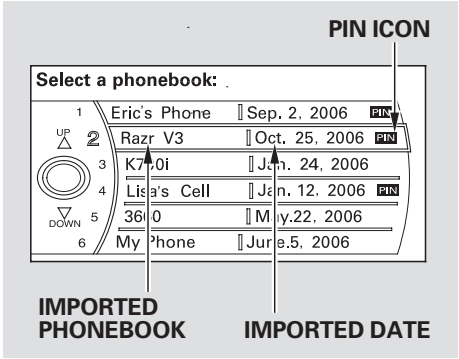
In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca,* or call (888) 9-ACURA-9.

Import Cellular Phonebook:
The entire phonebook data of the cell phone that is linked to HFL can be imported to the navigation system.



Select "**Import Cellular Phonebook**," and HFL will begin importing the phonebook. Select "**OK**" after the import is completed.

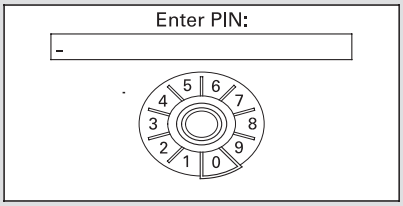
Search Imported Phonebook:
Once a phonebook has been imported, you can search the phone numbers by the person's name.


PIN ICON
Select a phonebook:
1 Eric's Phone Sep. 2, 2006 PIN
UP 2 Razr V3 Oct. 25, 2006 PIN
3 K7[illegible]0i J[illegible]n. 24, 2006
4 Lis[illegible]a's Cell J[illegible]n. 12, 2006 PIN
DOWN 5 36[illegible]0 M[illegible]y.22, 2006
6 My [illegible]hone Jur[illegible]e.5, 2006
IMPORTED PHONEBOOK
IMPORTED DATE

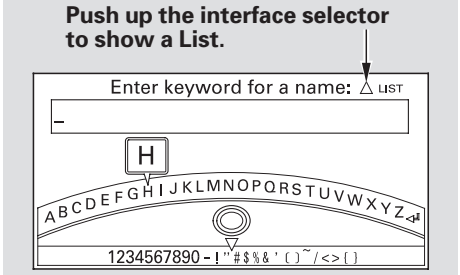
Select "**Search Cellular Phonebook**," and a list of imported phonebooks will be displayed.

Select a phonebook from the list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If the phonebook is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the 4-digit PIN.



To search for a specific name in the phonebook, enter the keyword for either the first or last name.

To display all names in the phonebook, select the "**List**" option.

Select a person from the list. Up to three category icons are displayed in the left side of the list:

These category icons indicate how many numbers are stored for the name. If a name has more than three category icons, "…" is displayed.

Select the person's number you want to call, and press the HFL Talk button.

CONTINUED

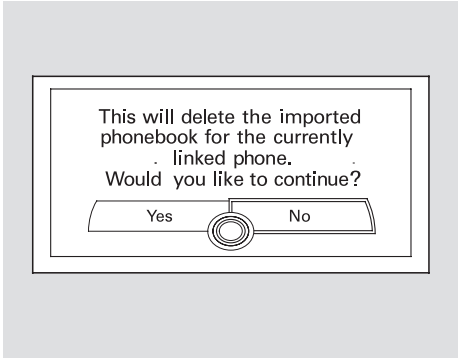
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delete Imported Phonebook:
You can delete any imported phonebook.

Select "**Delete Imported Phonebook**," and a list of imported phonebooks will be displayed.

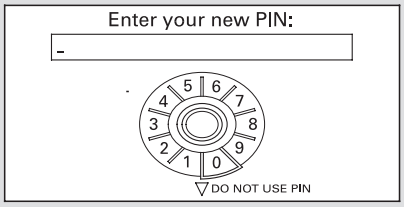
Select a phonebook you want to delete. If the phonebook is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the 4-digit PIN number.

After making a selection, the following screen will appear.



Select "**Yes**," then "**OK**" to complete the deletion.

PIN Number
You can add, change, or remove a PIN number from any phonebook.

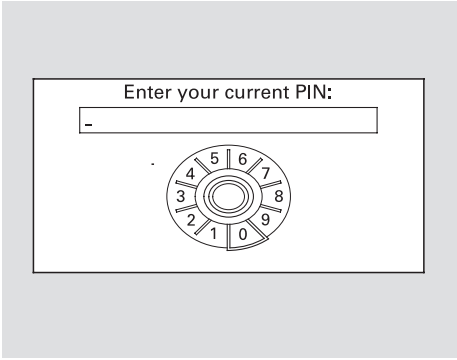


To add a PIN:
If you have selected a phonebook without a PIN, you will see the above display.

Enter the new 4-digit PIN. You will have to re-enter the PIN for confirmation.

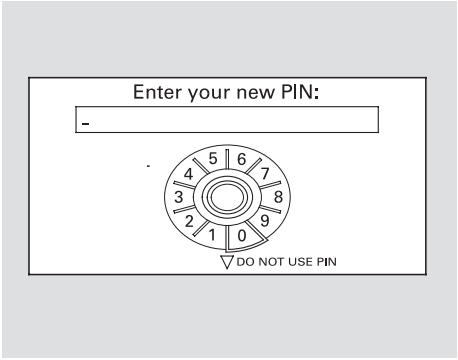
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To change the PIN to a new number:



Select the phonebook you want. The display will change as shown above.

Enter the current PIN for this phonebook.



The display will change as shown above.

Enter the new 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN for verification.

To remove a PIN:

Select "**PIN number**," then select "**Do not use PIN**" after you enter the current PIN.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System Setup
This command group allows you to change or customize HFL basic settings.

To set a 4-digit passcode to lock the HFL system for security purposes:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Security**"after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the 4-digit passcode you want to set.
4. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number.

NOTE: Once a passcode is set, you will need to enter it to use HFL each time you start the vehicle. If you forget the code, your dealer will have to reset it for you, or you will have to clear the entire system (see page 326).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To change your security pass code:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Change passcode**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the new 4-digit passcode.
4. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number.

To select either a ring tone or a prompt as the incoming call notification*:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Call notification**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say "**Ring tone**" or "**Prompt**." You can also say "**Off**" for no audible incoming call notification.

* : The default setting is a ring tone.

To activate or deactivate the auto transfer function:
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position.

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Auto transfer**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will let you know if auto transfer is on or off, depending on the previous setting. Follow the HFL prompts to change the setting.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To clear the system:
This operation clears the passcodes, paired phones, all names in the HFL phonebook, and all imported phonebook data.

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Clear**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to continue to complete the clearing procedure.

You can also clear the system when you have forgotten the passcode and cannot access HFL. When HFL asks you for the passcode, say "**System clear**." Paired phones, all names in the HFL phonebook and all imported phonebook data will be lost.

Quick Language Selection

Canadian models only
To quickly change the language:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say the language you want to change to in that language.
2. Follow the HFL prompts.

Change Language

Canadian models only
To change the system language between English and French:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Change language**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts to change the language to English or French.

If you have not named your paired phone in the language you just selected, HFL will ask you to name it in the current language.

When French is your currently selected language, you can give voice commands in French.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® name and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt *Bluetooth*® Audio when it is playing. Audio will resume when the call is ended.

U.S. models only

In addition, you cannot use HFL while using AcuraLink.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

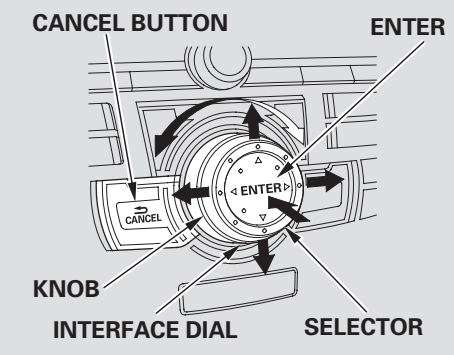
On models with navigation system

AcuraLink® enhances your ownership experience by providing a direct communication link between your vehicle and the Acura Server. Working through the XM radio satellite, AcuraLink works in conjunction with the navigation system, *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL), and audio system in your vehicle. It displays and receives several kinds of messages, including:

- Operating tips and information on your vehicle's features.
- Important recall and safety information.
- Maintenance information to keep your vehicle in top condition.
- Diagnostic information to provide information about any problems with your vehicle.

Interface Dial

Most AcuraLink functions are controlled by the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.



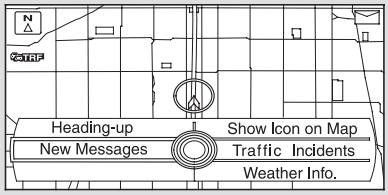
The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

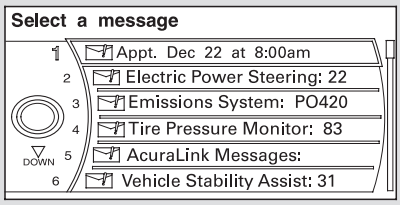
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reading Messages

If you have new messages, an envelope icon appears in the top right corner of the navigation screen.



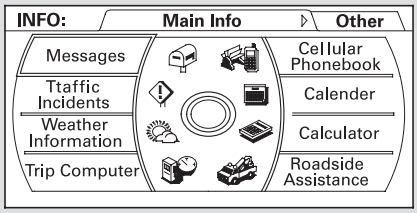
To open a message:
Press ENTER on the interface selector, then select New Messages from the navigation system map menu.


Select a message
1 Appt. Dec 22 at 8:00am
2 Electric Power Steering: 22
3 Emissions System: P0420
4 Tire Pressure Monitor: 83
5 AcuraLink Messages:
6 Vehicle Stability Assist: 31
DOWN

A list of all messages will be shown. New messages will be at the top. Select the message you want to read by pressing ENTER.

A red exclamation will be marked on an envelope icon with an important message.

To view previously read messages:

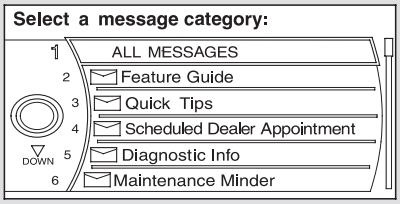


Press the INFO button. The information screen will be shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)



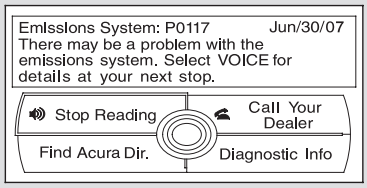
Select “Messages”, then select a message category. Select the message you want to read and press ENTER.

Unread messages have a closed envelope icon next to them. The icon disappears when it has already been read.

NOTE: Only Diagnostic Info messages appear on the navigation screen while driving. They indicate if your vehicle has a problem that may need immediate attention (see page 339).

After purchasing your vehicle, messages may not appear immediately.
Your dealer has to register the vehicle identification before you can receive messages. This can take several days to process.

Message Options


Emissions System: P0117 Jun/30/07
There may be a problem with the emissions system. Select VOICE for details at your next stop.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Diagnostic Info

When you open a message, you can read a summary of it, and then choose one of several options. If an option is not available for a message, that option will not be highlighted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delete — Select this option to delete the current message.

Voice — Select this option to hear a voice read the entire message. This gives you more information than the screen can display at one time. When you select the Voice option, it changes to a Stop Reading option. Select the option again to stop the voice.

Call — Select this option to call a phone number embedded in the message. When you select **Call**, the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) dials the number for you.

To make a call, your *Bluetooth*® compatible phone must be paired to the vehicle's HandsFreeLink system, powered on, and located within the vehicle (see page 311).

Find Nearest Dealer — Select this option to find the nearest Acura dealer using the navigation system.

Call Your Dealer — Select this option to call the Acura dealer you purchased your vehicle from. AcuraLink also directs you to this dealer so you can schedule a maintenance appointment or receive information about a message. If your assigned servicing dealer changes, AcuraLink will reset to call that dealer.

Diagnostic Info — Select this option to get more information about the current diagnostic message. To use this option, your cellphone must be paired with the HFL. In addition, the paired phone must have a compatible data service and be set up with the AcuraLink system to make a data connection. Access the handsfreelink.com website to find out which data services are currently compatible with AcuraLink.

Message Preferences
To set your AcuraLink preferences (the types of messages you want to receive, if any), visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com*, and choose what you would like to receive. If you do not have internet access, call Acura Client Services at (800) 382-2238; they can set your message preferences for you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Deleting Messages

NOTE: Diagnostic info and recall/campaign messages can only be deleted by your dealer.

To delete a single message:

- Press the INFO button to bring up the Information screen.
- Scroll to the Messages option, then select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Select the message category that contains the message you want to delete.
- Use the interface knob to scroll up or down to the message title you want to delete, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to Delete with the interface knob, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

To delete all messages:

NOTE: The Delete All Messages command does not apply to Diagnostic Info and Recall messages. They can only be deleted by your dealer.

- Press the SETUP button to view the setup screen.
- Select Other by pushing the interface selector to the right.
- Use the interface knob to scroll to the AcuraLink/Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the Delete Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the category with the messages you want to delete, and select the category by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

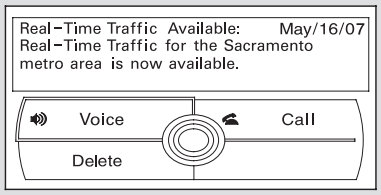
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Message Categories

There are six message categories in AcuraLink: Quick Tips, Feature Guide, Maintenance Minder, Recalls/Campaigns, Diagnostic Info, and Scheduled Dealer Appointment. The system can store up to 255 messages.

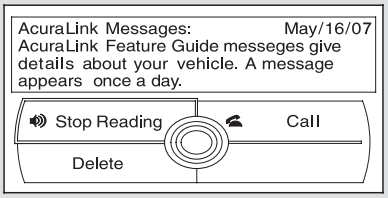
Message categories can be added, revised, or deleted through broadcast messages from Acura.

Quick Tips



These messages, based on updated vehicle information and comments from other TSX owners, supplement your Owner's Manual. They provide you with relevant information for a safe and enjoyable ownership experience. For additional information, call Acura Client Services directly through HFL.

Feature Guide

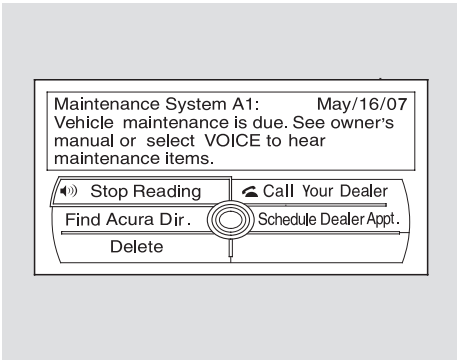

AcuraLink Messages: May/16/07
AcuraLink Feature Guide messeges give details about your vehicle. A message appears once a day.
Stop Reading
Call
Delete

During the first 90 days of ownership, a number of messages appears each day. These messages help you to use and understand the features of your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Maintenance Minder


Maintenance System A1: May/16/07
Vehicle maintenance is due. See owner's manual or select VOICE to hear maintenance items.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Schedule Dealer Appt.
Delete

These messages provide detailed information about the service needed for your vehicle. When a maintenance message appears on the multi-information display, a list of needed maintenance items is provided through an AcuraLink message. These messages tell you the exact maintenance needed, helping you to avoid unnecessary maintenance costs.

You can use the following message options:

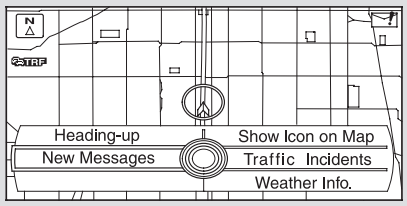
- Make an appointment from the schedule at the dealer.
- Reschedule the appointment with the dealer.
- Call your dealer for an appointment.
- Find the nearest dealer.

Automated Appointment

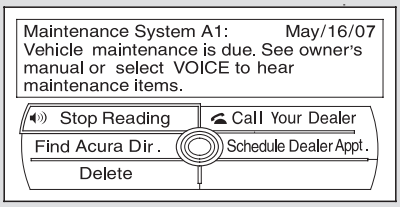
You can make an appointment with your dealer through the AcuraLink when you receive a maintenance minder message.

To use the automated appointment function, you should visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com*, register some required settings, and complete the Phone-Data Connection set-up (see page 342). Your *Bluetooth*® compatible phone should also be paired and linked to your vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HFL (see page 311).

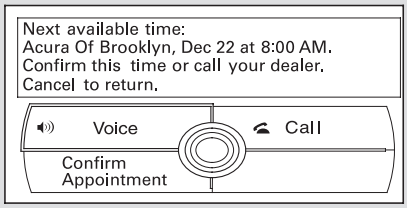
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When you see the maintenance minder message on the multi-information display, you will also receive a message in the navigation screen. To open the message, press ENTER. Select “New Messages,” then press ENTER. You will see the list of all messages. The most recent message is listed at the top.


Maintenance System A1: May/16/07
Vehicle maintenance is due. See owner's manual or select VOICE to hear maintenance items.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Schedule Dealer Appt.
Delete

Select the received message, then press ENTER. You will see the message as shown. To make an appointment, select “Schedule Dealer Appt.” then press ENTER.

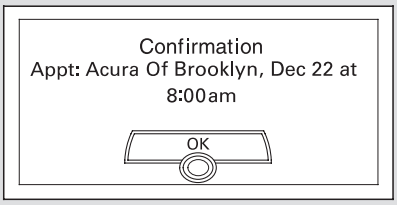


The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you an appropriate appointment date and time on the navigation screen. If you accept this appointment, select “Confirm Appointment,” then press ENTER.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

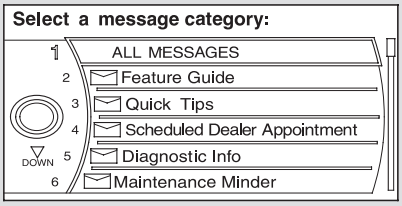


The confirmation message will be displayed on the screen. Make sure to confirm the appointment date, time and dealer. If it is OK, press ENTER.

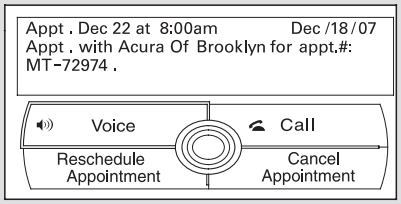
If you want to change or reschedule the appointment date, select "Cancel," then press ENTER.

Scheduled Dealer Appointment

To reschedule the appointment:



Press the INFO button to go to the information screen. Select "Messages," then select "Scheduled Dealer Appointment" from the message category list. Then press ENTER.

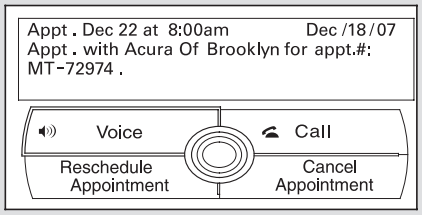


You will see the screen to reschedule as shown. To make an appointment, select "Reschedule Appointment," then press ENTER.

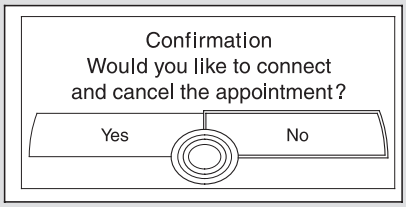
The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you a new appointment date and time on the navigation screen. If you accept this appointment, select "Confirm Appointment," then press ENTER.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To cancel the appointment:



Select “Messages” on the information screen, then press ENTER. Select “Scheduled Dealer Appointment” from the message category list. Then press ENTER. To cancel the appointment, select “Cancel Appointment,” then press ENTER.



The system will request you to confirm the cancel on the navigation screen. To cancel the appointment, select “YES,” then press ENTER. If you select “NO,” the screen goes back to the previous message display.

The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you the confirmation on the navigation screen. If you accept the cancel, press ENTER.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

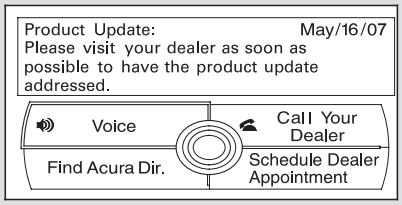
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

If you select the cancel appointment, you cannot try to reschedule the appointment. If you want to change or reschedule the appointment date, call your dealer directly with HFL.

Using automated appointment, your registered dealer through My Acura is automatically selected. If you want to select another dealer, such as in case of an emergency, find the nearest dealer and call the dealer directly with HFL.

When a maintenance appointment is due soon, you will also receive an appointment reminder message.

Recall/Campaigns


Product Update: May/16/07
Please visit your dealer as soon as possible to have the product update addressed.
Voice
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Schedule Dealer Appointment

If your vehicle is affected by a recall or other important safety information, a letter will be mailed to you about the issue and how to fix it. If you don't get your vehicle fixed, you will also receive a reminder message through AcuraLink. You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

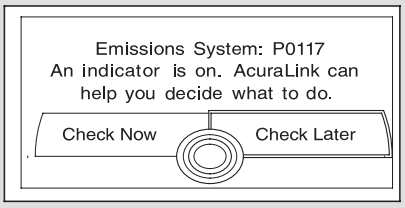
For this reason, it is important that we retain your current phone number. Please update your information using My Acura at *www.owners.acura.com.*

Diagnostic Info

When an indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the Multi-Information Display (MID), AcuraLink can provide information about the cause of the indicator or message and the recommended action to address it. This helps you handle the problem as it occurs, preventing or limiting costly repairs.

The AcuraLink system cannot determine some mechanical problems (such as squeaks or rattles) that are not triggered by the diagnostic indicator monitors.

For more information on the instrument panel indicators, see page 60 .



When any indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the MID, AcuraLink immediately notifies you with the message, “An indicator is on. AcuraLink can help you decide what to do.”

If you do not want the information right away, select the Check Later option.

CONTINUED

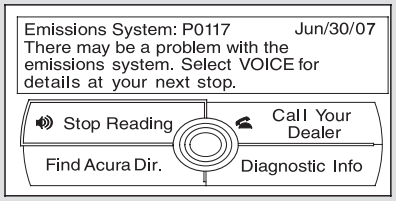
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

If you want the information now, select the Check Now option. (If the navigation screen is not active, you must select OK from the navigation disclaimer screen before you can check the information.)

Depending on the severity of the problem, the message will let you know if you should see your dealer immediately or if you can wait until a later date.

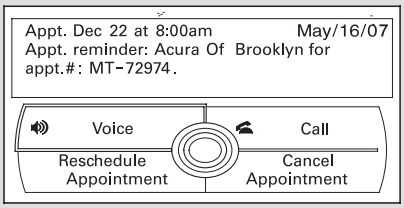
You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.


Emissions System: P0117 Jun/30/07
There may be a problem with the emissions system. Select VOICE for details at your next stop.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Diagnostic Info

When viewing a diagnostic info message through the INFO menu, you can use the Diagnostic Info option to connect to the Acura server and retrieve the latest information regarding the problem.

NOTE: There may not be any additional information, depending on the time elapsed since the previous time you retrieved the information from the Acura server.

Reminder Message



When you make an appointment through My Acura's online Schedule Service Appointment, you can be reminded in advance about that appointment through AcuraLink.

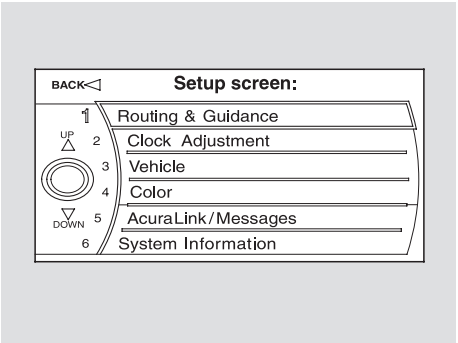
If you need to reschedule or cancel the appointment, see page 336 .

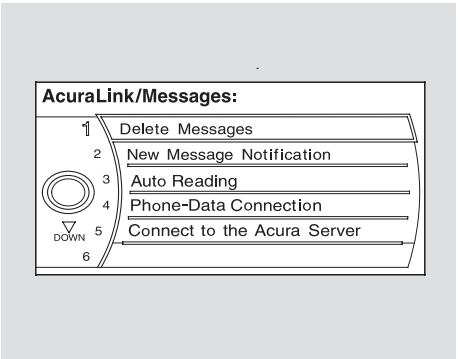
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turning the Automated Appointment preference off will disable appointment notifications in the vehicle based on appointments created or changed at My Acura's online scheduling website.

Appointments can still be created, rescheduled, and canceled from the vehicle; however the appointment information stored in the vehicle will not be updated. Any changes to those appointments should be made from the My Acura website.

AcuraLink/Message Screen





To access the following functions, press the SETUP option, push the interface selector to the right to select Other, then rotate the interface knob to select AcuraLink/Messages.

Delete Messages – Select this option to delete all stored messages within a category, except for diagnostic info and recall campaign messages. These messages can only be deleted by a certified technician after the recall is done or the problem is corrected, or through a broadcast message from Acura.

CONTINUED

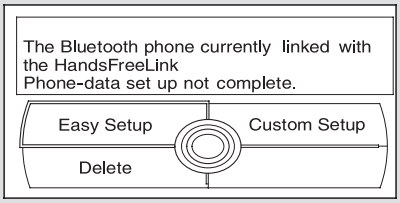
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

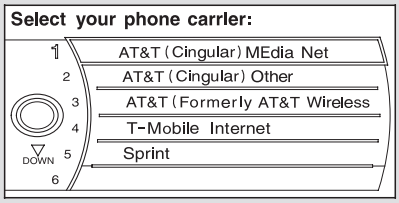
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

New Message Notification – Select ON if you want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon appears on the navigation screen). Select OFF if you do not want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon does not appear on the screen). Messages can still be accessed using the INFO menu. If you would like to stop receiving messages, visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com* to change your messaging preferences.

Auto Reading – Select ON to have the system automatically read each message to you. Select OFF to manually select the Voice option when you want a message read to you.

Phone-Data Connection – Select this option to begin the process required to connect to Acura. This is used to access the most recent diagnostic information when a problem occurs.





NOTE: For the Phone Data Connection button to be active, you need a *Bluetooth*® compatible and enabled cell phone paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL). To complete the data connection setup, the paired phone must have a compatible data service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To find more information on *Bluetooth*® compatible and enabled cell phones, visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* or call the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876.

Connect to the Acura Server — The default setting is prompt. When a diagnostic info message appears, and you select the Check Now option, the system will prompt you before connecting to the Acura server. If you do not wish to connect at that time, select No at the prompt, and you will see the information from the onboard database. The "Auto" setting will remove the prompt when you select the Check Now option and will automatically connect to the Acura server. This setting only applies when you have a *Bluetooth*® enabled phone that is paired with HFL and you have completed the Phone-Data Connection setup.

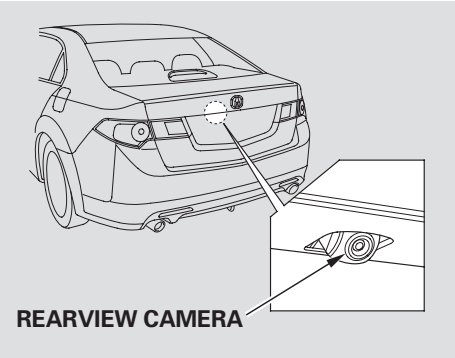
As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rearview Camera and Monitor

On vehicles with navigation system



Whenever you shift to reverse (R) with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the rearview is shown on the navigation system screen.

For the best picture, always keep the rearview camera clean, and do not cover the camera lens. To avoid scratching the lens when you clean it, use a moist, soft cloth.

When in reverse, the navigation system "hard" buttons are locked out, except the " ☼ ◗ " button. Pressing and releasing the button allows you to switch the brightness of the rearview camera image between the night and the day positions.

You can also adjust the brightness of the rearview camera image by turning the knob on the interface dial.

NOTICE

The camera brightness cannot be adjusted by voice control.

Since the rearview camera display area is limited, you should always back up slowly and carefully, and look behind you for obstacles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what gasoline to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period 346
Fuel Recommendation 346
Service Station Procedure 347
Refueling..... 347
Tighten Fuel Cap Message 349
Opening and Closing the Hood..... 350
Oil Check 352
Engine Coolant Check 353
Fuel Economy 354
Accessories and Modifications 357
Carrying Cargo 359

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

Break-in Period

Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not tow a trailer.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

Fuel Recommendation

4-cylinder models

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number of 91 or higher. Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause occasional metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. Use of a gasoline with a pump octane number less than 87 can lead to engine damage.

6-cylinder models

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade gasoline can lead to engine damage.

On all models

We recommend using quality gasolines containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits.

In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend, in areas where it is available, the use of gasoline that does NOT contain manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact your authorized dealer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

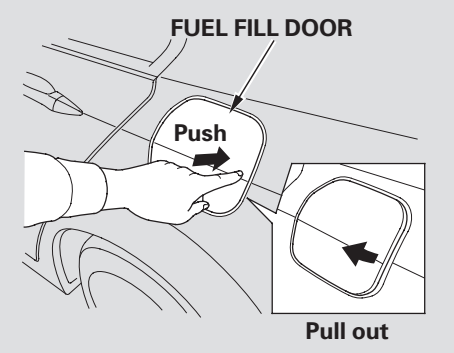
Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 15% MTBE by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol.

If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, contact your dealer or visit My Acura at *owners.acura.com* (In Canada, visit *www.myacura.ca).*

On vehicles with manual transmission
You may hear a knocking noise from the engine if you drive the vehicle at low engine speed (below about 1,000 rpm) in a higher gear. To stop this, raise the engine speed by shifting to a lower gear.

Refueling



1. Park with the driver's side closest to the gas pump.
2. Make sure the driver's door is unlocked. The fuel fill door always locks or unlocks in conjunction with the driver's door.

   The vehicle doors and the fuel fill door will automatically relock if the remote transmitter unlock function is used. In this instance, the security relock function can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.
3. Outside of the vehicle, push on the right side edge of the fuel fill door in the middle. The fuel fill door will pop up slightly. Pull it outward to open it.

CONTINUED

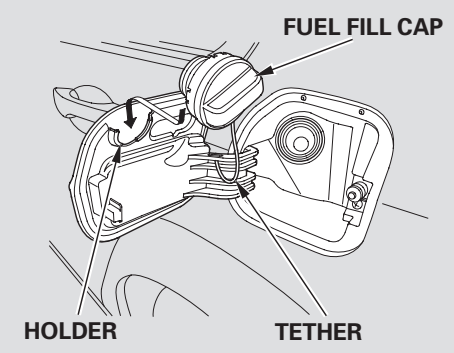
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedures

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank equalizes. The fuel fill cap is attached to the fuel filler with a tether. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

5. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to "top off" the tank. This leaves some room in the fuel tank for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.

   If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with your vehicle's fuel vapor recovery system. The system helps keep fuel vapor from going into the atmosphere. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once. If you do not properly tighten the cap, you will see a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message on the multi-information display. If the system still detects an evaporative system leak after retightening the cap, the malfunction indicator lamp may come on (see page 472).

7. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches. If the door won't close fully, do not force it. Unlock the drivers door first.

NOTICE

The fuel door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.

Tighten Fuel Cap Message

Your vehicle's on board diagnostic system will detect a loose or missing fuel fill cap as an evaporative system leak. The first time a leak is detected a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message appears on the multi-information display.

Turn the engine off, and confirm the fuel fill cap is installed. If it is, loosen it, then retighten it until it clicks at least once. The message should go off after several days of normal driving once you tighten or replace the fuel fill cap. To scroll to another message, press the INFO button.

The "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message will appear each time you restart the engine until the system turns the message off.

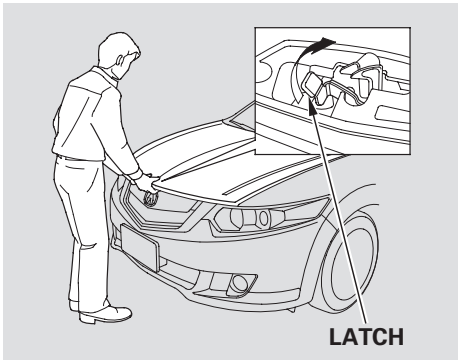
If the system still detects a leak in the vehicle's evaporative emissions system, the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) comes on. If the fuel fill cap was not already tightened, turn the engine off, and check or retighten the fuel fill cap until it clicks at least once. The MIL should go off after several days of normal driving once the cap is tightened or replaced. If the MIL does not go off, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. For more information, see page 472 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedure

Opening and Closing the Hood

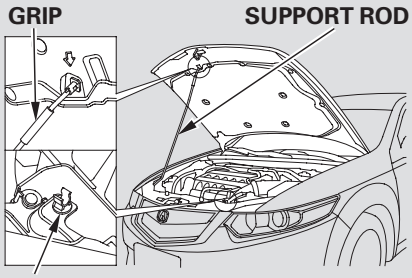
1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release handle located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.



2. Reach in between the hood and the front grille with your fingers. The hood latch handle is above the “A” logo. Push this handle up to the right until it releases the hood. Lift the hood.

If the hood latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

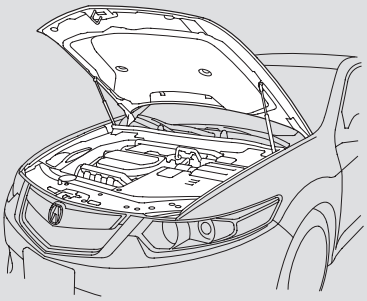
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4-cylinder models

3. *4-cylinder models*
Holding the grip, pull the support rod out of its clip. Insert the end into the designated hole in the hood marked by an arrow.

To close the hood, lift it up slightly to remove the support rod from the hole. Put the support rod back into its holding clip. Lower the hood to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then let it drop. Make sure it is securely latched.


6-cylinder models

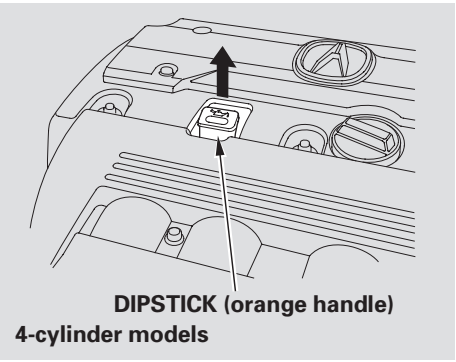
6-cylinder models
Lift the hood up most of the way. The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

To close the hood, lower it to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then press down firmly with your hands. Make sure the hood is securely latched.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedure

Oil Check

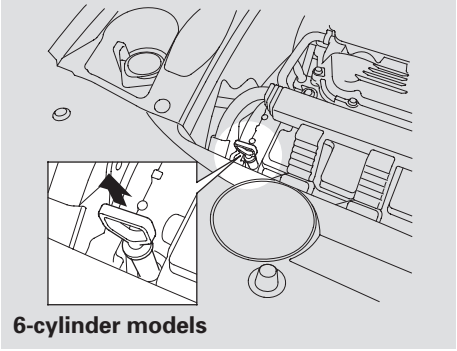


4-cylinder models

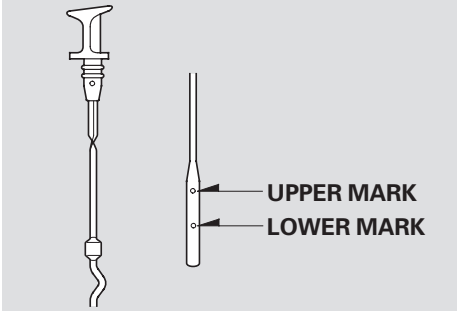
Park the vehicle on a level surface. Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1. Remove the dipstick (orange handle/loop).

2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.


6-cylinder models

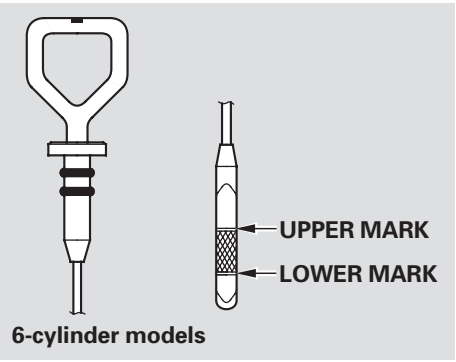
3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.



4-cylinder models

4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

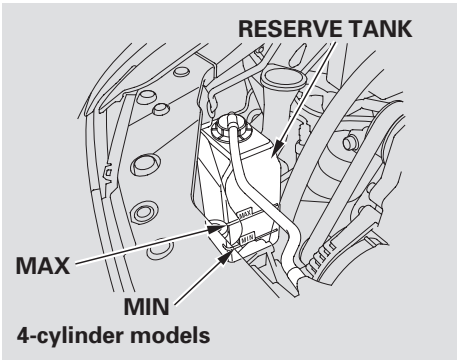
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6-cylinder models

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 415 .

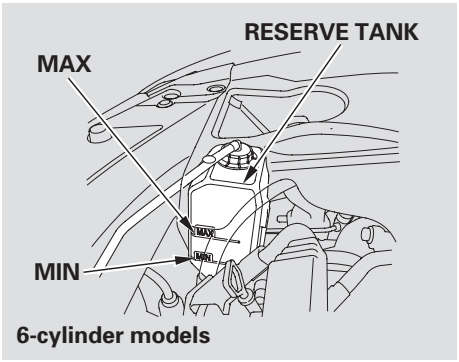
Engine Coolant Check



4-cylinder models

Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 420 for information on adding the proper coolant.

Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 410 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.



6-cylinder models

See page 413 for the engine coolant location.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

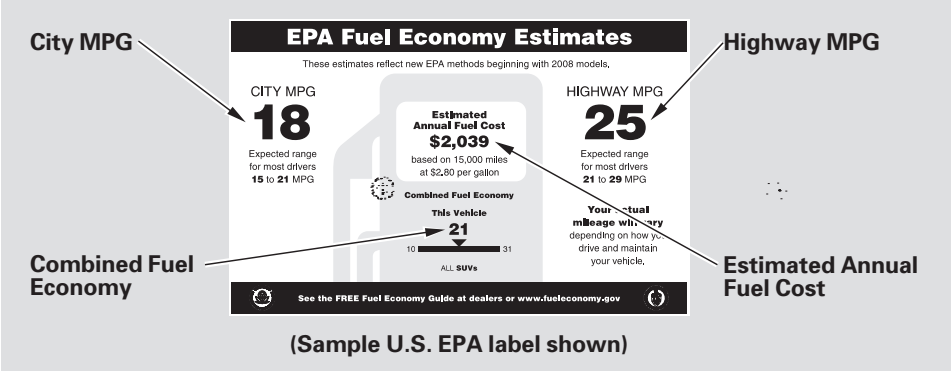
Fuel Economy

Actual Mileage and EPA Fuel Economy Estimates Comparison. Fuel economy is not a fixed number. It varies based on driving conditions, driving habits and vehicle condition. Therefore, it is not possible for one set of estimates to predict fuel economy precisely for all drivers in all environments.

The EPA fuel economy estimates shown in the example to the right are a useful tool for comparison when buying a vehicle. EPA estimates include:

City MPG – Represents urban driving in light traffic. A range of miles per gallon achieved is also provided.

Highway MPG – Represents a mixture of rural and interstate driving, in a warmed-up vehicle, typical of longer trips in free-flowing traffic. A range of miles per gallon achieved is also provided.


City MPG
EPA Fuel Economy Estimates
These estimates reflect new EPA methods beginning with 2008 models.
CITY MPG
18
Expected range for most drivers 15 to 21 MPG
Estimated Annual Fuel Cost
$2,039
based on 15,000 miles at $2.80 per gallon
Combined Fuel Economy
This Vehicle
21
10
31
ALL SUVs
HIGHWAY MPG
25
Expected range for most drivers 21 to 29 MPG
depending on how you drive and maintain your vehicle.
Highway MPG
Combined Fuel Economy
Estimated Annual Fuel Cost
See the FREE Fuel Economy Guide at dealers or www.fueleconomy.gov

(Sample U.S. EPA label shown)

Combined Fuel Economy – Represents a combination of city and highway driving. The scale represents the range of combined fuel economy for other vehicles in the class.

Estimated Annual Fuel Cost – Provides an estimated annual fuel cost, based on 15,000 miles in the U.S. or 20,000 km in Canada per year multiplied by the cost per gallon (based on EPA fuel cost data) divided by the combined fuel economy.

For more information on fuel economy ratings and factors that affect fuel economy, visit *www.fueleconomy.gov* (Canada: Visit *www.vehicles.gc.ca*)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy Factors

The following factors can lower your vehicle's fuel economy:

- Aggressive driving (hard acceleration and braking)
- Excessive idling, accelerating and braking in stop-and-go traffic
- Cold engine operation (engines are more efficient when warmed up)
- Driving with a heavy load or the air conditioner running
- Improperly inflated tires

Improving Fuel Economy

Vehicle Maintenance

A properly maintained vehicle maximizes fuel economy. Poor maintenance can significantly reduce fuel economy. Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display (see **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 410). For example:

- **Use the recommended viscosity motor oil, displaying the API Certification Seal (see page 416).**
- **Maintain proper tire inflation** — An underinflated tire increases "rolling resistance," which reduces fuel economy.
- **Avoid carrying excess weight in your vehicle** — It puts a heavier load on the engine, increasing fuel consumption.
- **Keep your vehicle clean** — In particular, a build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel economy.

Drive Efficiently

- **Drive moderately** — Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking increase fuel consumption.
- **Observe the speed limit** — Aerodynamic drag has a big effect on fuel economy at speeds above 45 mph (75 km/h). Reduce your speed and you reduce the drag. Trailers, car top carriers, roof racks and bike racks are also big contributors to increased drag.
- **Always drive in the highest gear possible** — If your vehicle has a manual transmission, you can boost your fuel economy by up shifting as early as possible.
- **Avoid excessive idling** — Idling results in 0 miles per gallon (0 kms per liter).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy

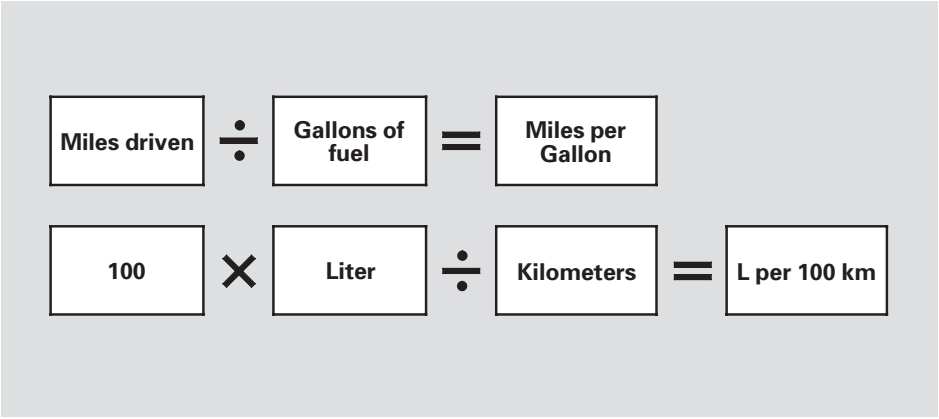
- **Minimize the use of the air conditioning system** – The A/C puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.
- **Plan and combine trips** – Combine several short trips into one. A warmed-up engine is more fuel efficient than a cold one.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Measuring Techniques

Direct calculation is the recommended source of information about your actual fuel economy. Using frequency of fill-ups or taking fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate measures of fuel economy. Fuel economy may improve over the first several thousand miles (kilometers).

Checking Your Fuel Economy



1) Fill the fuel tank until the nozzle automatically clicks off.
2) Reset trip counter to zero.
3) Record the total gallons (liters) needed to refill.
4) Follow one of the simple calculations above.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Acura accessories, can make your vehicle unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

Accessories
Your dealer has Acura accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle, and are covered by warranty.

Although non-Acura accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling and stability.

⚠ WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags, anti-lock brakes, and tire pressure monitoring system.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 475) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying Your Vehicle
Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Acura components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

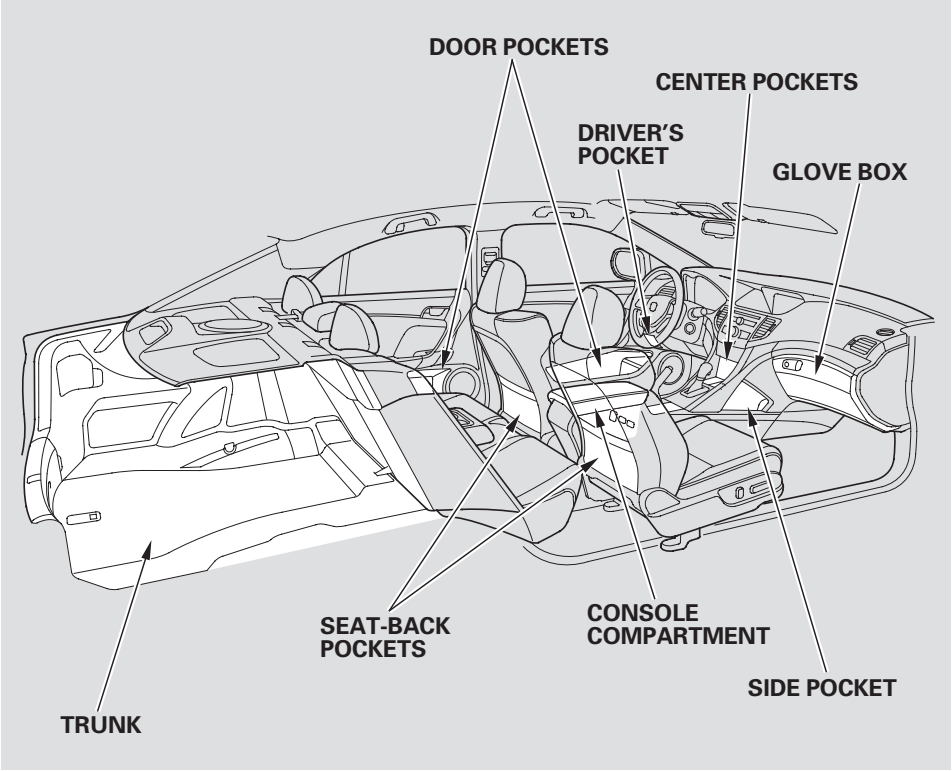
Some examples are:

- Lowering the vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit can affect the handling and stability.
- Non-Acura wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components and will not be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).
- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety systems could make the systems ineffective.

If you plan to modify your vehicle, consult your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carrying Cargo



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Glove box
- Door and seat-back pockets
- Trunk, including the rear seats when folded down
- Center and side pockets
- Driver's pocket
- Console compartment

However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.

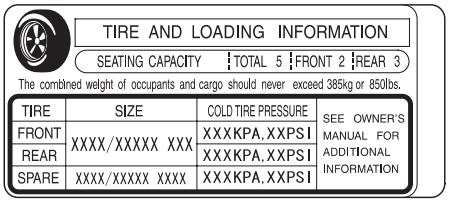
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carrying Cargo

Load Limits
The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg).

See Tire And Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit —

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

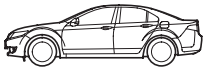
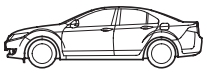
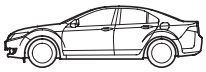
(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
(1,400 − 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Example 1		≧		+		
	Max Load (850 lbs)		Passenger Weight (150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs)		Cargo Weight (550 lbs)	
Example 2		≧		+		
	Max Load (850 lbs)		Passenger Weight (150 lbs x 4 = 600 lbs)		Cargo Weight (250 lbs)	
Example 3		≧		+		
	Max Load (850 lbs)		Passenger Weight (150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs)		Cargo Weight (100 lbs)	

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carrying Cargo

Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment

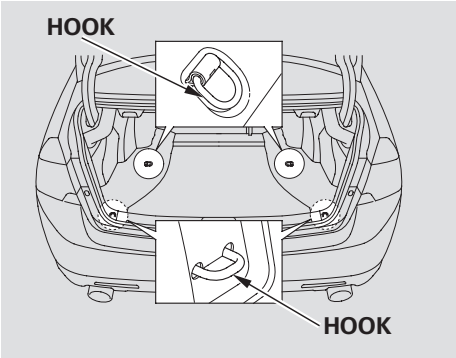
- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Do not put any items on top of the trunk panel. They can block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Keep all cargo below the bottom of the windows. If it is higher, it could interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

Carrying Cargo in the Trunk

- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.
- If you fold down the back seat, tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the trunk lid, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page 55 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cargo Hooks



Cargo hook buttons in the trunk can be used to install a net for securing items.

Cargo Net

Optional

The cargo net can be used to help hold down items stored in the trunk.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2010 TSX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the manual and automatic transmissions. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system, the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.

Preparing to Drive 366
Starting the Engine (4-cylinder models) 367
Starting the Engine (6-cylinder models) 368
Manual Transmission..... 370
Automatic Transmission..... 373
Driving with the Paddle Shifters..... 377
Parking..... 382
Braking System..... 383
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) 384
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 386
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 392
Towing a Trailer 394

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Preparing to Drive

You should do these checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle:

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the hood is fully closed.
3. Check that the trunk is fully closed.
4. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
5. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.
6. Check the seat adjustment (see page 134).
7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 145).
8. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 118).
9. Make sure the doors are securely closed and locked.
10. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 15).
11. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel, and the messages on the multi-information display (see pages 59 , 68 and 70).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine (4-cylinder models)

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. *Manual transmission:*
   Press the clutch pedal down all the way. The START (III) position does not function unless the clutch pedal is pressed.

   Automatic transmission:
   Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. Do not hold the key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds at a time. If the engine does not start right away, pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 121.

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine (6-cylinder models)

Your vehicle's starting system has an auto control mode. When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, this feature keeps the engine's starter motor running until the engine starts. Follow these instructions to start the engine:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, then release the ignition switch. You do not need to hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position to start the engine. Depending on the outside temperature, the starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts.

   If you hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.

   If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 121 .

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check Starting System Message

U.S.

If there is a problem with the starting system, you will see a "CHECK STARTING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position. You will also see this message when the auto control mode of the starting system has a problem.

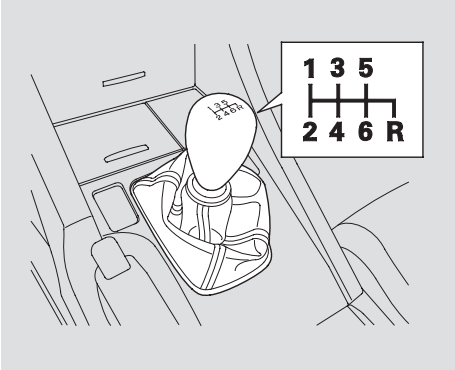
Canada

If this message is on, the ignition switch has to be held in the START (III) position manually until the engine starts. The ignition switch can be held in that position up to 15 seconds.

Even though you may be able to start the engine manually without the auto control mode of the starting system, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Transmission



On models with manual transmission
The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from any forward gear to reverse while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed (see page 372).

When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Come to a full stop before you shift into reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into reverse with the vehicle moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure the engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear.

⚠ WARNING

Rapid slowing or speeding up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.

Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle is equipped with an aluminum shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of the heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever feels cold.

Recommended Shift Points
Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you good fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	17 mph (27 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	29 mph (46 km/h)
3rd to 4th	37 mph (59 km/h)
4th to 5th	43 mph (69 km/h)
5th to 6th	49 mph (79 km/h)

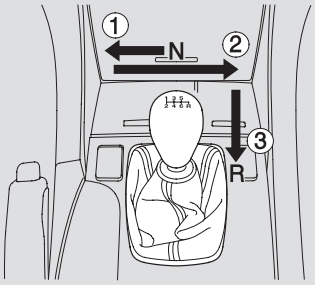
Engine Speed Limiter
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Transmission

Reverse Lockout
The manual transmission has lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from any forward gear to reverse while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed. If you cannot shift to reverse when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



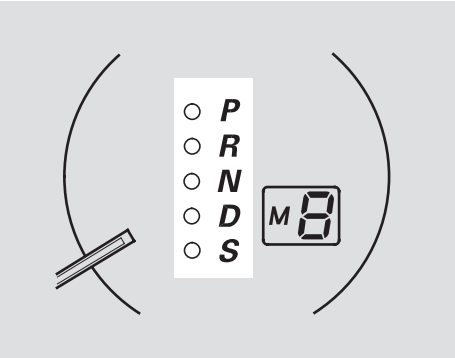
Move the shift lever in sequence.

1. With the clutch pedal pressed, move the shift lever to the first/second gear side of the neutral gate, then shift to reverse.
2. If you are still unable to shift to reverse, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition key to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.
3. Press the clutch pedal, and shift to reverse.
4. With the clutch pedal still pressed, start the engine.

If you need to use this procedure to shift to reverse, your vehicle may be developing a problem. Have it checked by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shift Lever Position Indicators



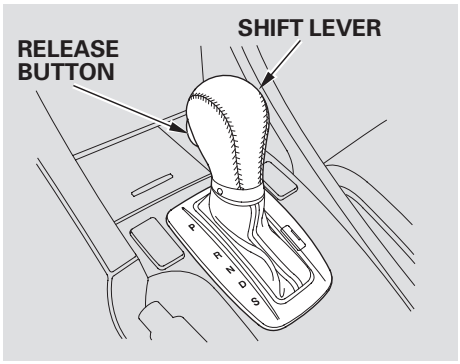
These indicators in the tachometer show which position the shift lever is in.

The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

When the “D” indicator warns of a possible problem with the transmission, you will see a “CHECK TRANSMISSION” message on the multi-information display.

Shifting



To shift from Park to any position, press firmly on the brake pedal, and press the release button on the front of the shift lever, then move the lever. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button.
R to P N to R D to S	Press the shift lever release button.
S to D D to N N to D R to N	Move the shift lever.

Park (P) — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Press the release button on the front of the shift lever to move it.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page 375.

You must also press the release button to shift into Park. To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

Reverse (R) — Press the brake pedal and the release button on the front of the shift lever to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop, and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.

Neutral (N) — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

Drive (D) — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically selects a suitable gear (1 through 5) for your speed and acceleration. You may notice the transmission shifting up at higher engine speeds when the engine is cold. This helps the engine warm up faster.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

S Position (S) — To shift into the S position, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, and move the lever to S. This position is similar to D, except only gears from first to fourth are selected. The S position keeps the transmission from cycling between fourth and fifth gears in stop-and-go driving.

With the shift lever in D or S, you can also use the paddle shifters to shift the transmission up or down. With the paddle shifters, you can operate the transmission much like a manual transmission without a clutch pedal. For more information on driving with the paddle shifters, see page 377 .

Engine Speed Limiter
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

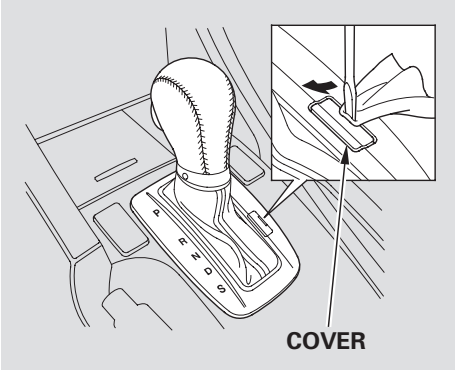
Shift Lock Release
This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

CONTINUED

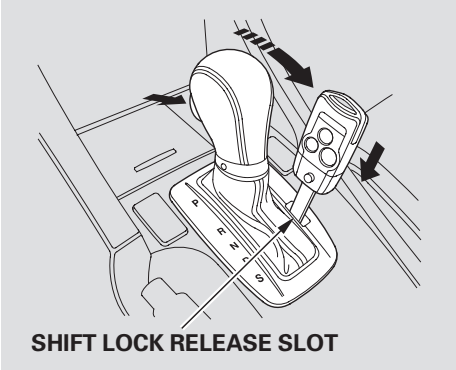
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission



3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover to prevent scratches. Use a small flat-tip screwdriver or metal fingernail file to carefully pry up the edge of the cover and remove it from the slot.

4. Insert the key in the shift lock release slot.



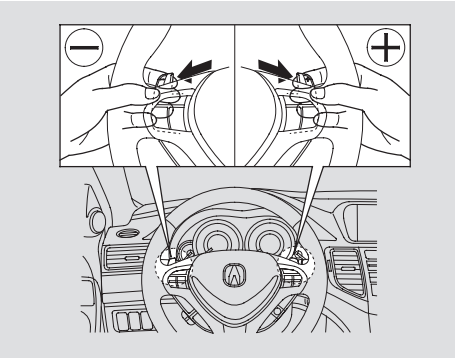
5. Push down on the key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

6. Remove the key from the shift lock release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the right side. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

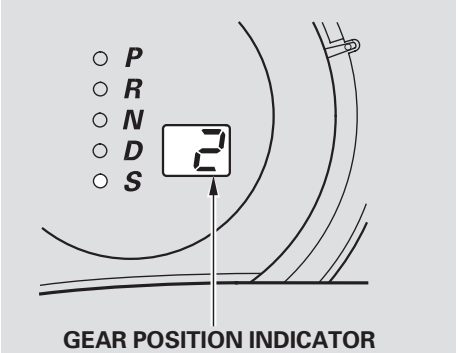
If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have it checked by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Paddle Shifters in the D position (D-Paddle Shift Mode)
When you are driving in the D position, you can shift the transmission up or down manually with the paddle shifters.



To shift up or down, use the + (right) or − (left) paddle shifter on either side of the steering wheel.



GEAR POSITION INDICATOR

Each time you pull + (right), the transmission shifts to a higher gear. Pull − (left) to downshift. You will see the selected gear number on the instrument panel.

When you pull either paddle shifter, the gear position indicator shows you the selected gear number.

Downshifting with the paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphills. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters

The transmission control system monitors the accelerator pedal use and your driving conditions. When you press the accelerator pedal as in normal driving, the system judges that you are driving at a constant cruising speed without using the paddle shifters. Under these conditions, D-paddle shift mode is canceled, and the transmission automatically returns to drive mode (D).

6-cylinder models
Hold the + paddle shifter for 2 seconds to return to drive mode (D).

When the transmission returns to drive mode (D), the displayed gear number disappears.

The transmission remains in the selected gear if you do not accelerate.

Each time you pull either paddle shifter, the transmission shifts one gear up or down. If you want to shift up or down more than two gears, pull the paddle shifter twice, pause, and then pull it again.

The automatic transmission will not allow you to shift up or down if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower gear.

  If you try to do this, the gear position indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to a higher gear.

Here are the speed ranges for downshifting.

To shift from	Speed range
5 → 4	under 118 mph (190 km/h)*1 under 130 mph (209 km/h)*2
4 → 3	under 87 mph (140 km/h)*1 under 84 mph (135 km/h)*2
3 → 2	under 55 mph (88 km/h)
2 → 1	under 24 mph (38 km/h)

*1 : 4-cylinder models
*2 : 6-cylinder models

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher gear.
- You pull both paddle shifters at the same time.

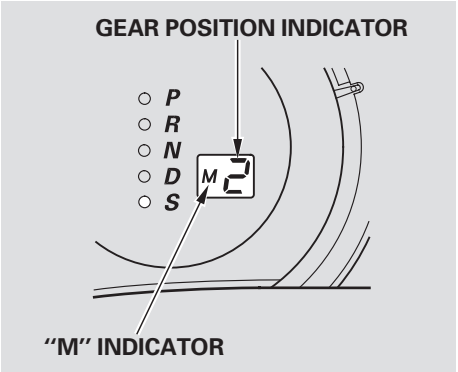
The transmission downshifts to first gear and returns to drive mode (D) when the vehicle comes to a complete stop or the vehicle speed is about 6 mph (10 km/h).

If there is a problem in the transmission while you are driving with the paddle shifters, the D indicator flashes, the D-paddle shift mode is canceled, and the transmission returns to drive mode (D).

Using the Paddle Shifters in the S position (Sequential Shift Mode)

With the shift lever in the S position, you can manually shift up or down with the paddle shifters. The transmission goes into the sequential shift mode and holds the selected gear.

To enter the sequential shift mode, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, move the lever to the S position, then pull either paddle shifter. To return to drive mode (D), move the shift lever to the D position. While you are driving in the sequential shift mode, the transmission will not automatically return to drive mode (D).



When you move the shift lever from "D" to "S" position and pull either paddle shifter, the gear position indicator displays "M" along with the selected gear number.

To upshift, pull the + (right) paddle shifter. To downshift, pull the − (left) paddle shifter.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters

When you accelerate from a stop, the transmission starts in first gear, and you must manually upshift between first and fifth gears. Make sure you upshift before the engine speed reaches the tachometer's red zone.

The transmission remains in the selected gear (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1). There is no automatic downshift when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor.

When you are driving in 4th or 5th gear, the transmission downshifts to the lower gear under the following conditions:

- The vehicle slows down to a certain speed.
- You press the brake pedal.

Downshifting with the paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphills. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

The transmission also shifts automatically as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. It downshifts to first gear when the vehicle speed reaches 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

The automatic transmission will not allow you to shift up or down if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower gear.

  If you try to do this, the gear position indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to a higher gear.

  If the vehicle speed decreases below the redline of the selected lower gear while the indicator is flashing, the transmission downshifts, and the indicator displays the selected gear.
- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher gear.
- You pull both paddle shifters at the same time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Here are the speed ranges for upshifting and downshifting.

To shift from	Speed range
1 → 2	over 0 mph (0 km/h)
2 → 3	over 6 mph (10 km/h) *1 over 9 mph (15 km/h) *2
3 → 4	over 20 mph (32 km/h) *1 over 18 mph (29 km/h) *2
4 → 5	over 32 mph (52 km/h) *1 over 38 mph (60 km/h) *2

*1 : 4-cylinder models
*2 : 6-cylinder models

To shift from	Speed range
2 → 1	under 31 mph (50 km/h)
3 → 2	under 62 mph (100 km/h)
4 → 3	under 90 mph (145 km/h) *1 under 94 mph (150 km/h) *2
5 → 4	under 124 mph (200 km/h) *1 under 130 mph (209 km/h) *2

*1 : 4-cylinder models
*2 : 6-cylinder models

Starting in Second Gear

When you are in sequential shift mode, and the vehicle is stopped, pull the + (right) paddle shifter to shift to second gear. You will see "M2" in the display. Starting in second gear helps to reduce wheelspin in deep snow or on a slippery surface.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

Parking Tips

- Make sure the moonroof and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the trunk or take them with you.
- Lock the doors.

  Check the indicator on the instrument panel to verify that the security system is set.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.
- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, put it in first gear.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, put it in reverse gear.
- Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking System

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The emergency brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, builds up heat, reduces their effectiveness and reduces brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious and alert in your driving.

Braking System Design
The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.

Brake Pad Wear Indicators
All four brakes have audible brake wear indicators.

If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS Indicator

If this indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

When the ABS indicator comes on, you will also see a “CHECK ABS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If the ABS indicator comes on while driving, test the brakes as shown on page 473 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 473 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

The VSA indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator.

Important Safety Reminders

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with the steering control during braking.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start the engine and monitors the pressure in your tires while driving.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message.

Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

When the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator is on, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's tire information placard.

It is possible that the pressures shown on the multi-information display and the pressures you manually measure are slightly different.

If the difference is significant or you cannot make the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator and message on the multi-information display go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

If you think you can safely drive a short distance to a service station, proceed slowly to the station, then inflate the tire to the recommended pressure.

If the tire is flat, or if the tire pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tire with the compact spare tire (see page 458).

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Because tire pressure varies by temperature and other conditions, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on unexpectedly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For example, if you check and fill your tires in a warm area, then drive in extremely cold weather, the tire pressure will be lower than measured and could be underinflated and cause the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator to come on. Or, if you check and adjust your tire pressure in cooler conditions, and drive into extremely hot conditions, the tires may become overinflated. However, the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator will not come on if the tires are overinflated.

Refer to page 446 for tire inflation guidelines.

If there is a problem with the TPMS, this indicator begins to flash. It stops flashing after approximately 1 minute, then stays on. You will also see a “CHECK TPMS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 389).

Although your tire pressure is monitored, you must manually check the tire pressures monthly.

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when the vehicle is cold, and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the vehicle placard and in the owner’s manual (see page 447).

Tire Pressure Monitor

To select the tire pressure monitor, press the INFO button several times with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.

You will see the above display on the multi-information display when all tire pressures are normal.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

U.S. model

To see the inflation pressures of all four tires, press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes as shown above.

Canadian model

Each tire pressure is shown in PSI (U.S. models) or in kPa (Canadian models).

This shows that front left tire is losing pressure.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If any of the tires has low pressure, the tire pressure monitor also shows the above message to warn you about the low tire pressure when you select the display by pressing the INFO button several times. Following this display, press the SEL/RESET button to see each tire pressure. When you continue driving after installing the spare tire, you will also see this message on the multi-information display.

If there is a problem with the TPMS, the tire pressure monitor shows a "SYSTEM FUNCTION ERROR" message and the tire pressure readings are not displayed. If this happens, you will first see a system warning message "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" on the multi-information display.

TPMS System Failure

If there is a problem with the TPMS, you will see the above message on the multi-information display.

If you see this message, the system is off and is not monitoring the tire pressures. Have the system checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Also, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator begins to flash, then stays on (see page 387).

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on, or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message, the VSA system automatically turns on even when the VSA system is turned off by pressing the VSA OFF switch (see page 393). If this happens, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF switch again.

When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tire, the TPMS system message will also be displayed on the multi-information display after several miles (kilometers) driving.

Changing a Tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS and tire monitor indicators will come on. Replace the indicated flat tire with the compact spare tire (see page 458).

After the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator stays on while driving. After several miles (kilometers) driving, this indicator begins to flash, then stays on again. You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. This is normal; the system cannot monitor the spare tire pressure. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure it is correct.

This indicator and the warning message on the multi-information display will go off, after several miles (kilometers) driving, when the spare tire is replaced with the specified regular tire equipped with the tire pressure monitor sensor.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by your dealer or a qualified technician.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Never use a puncture-repairing agent in a flat tire. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor. Have the flat tire repaired by your dealer as soon as possible.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and the low tire position on the low tire pressure monitor do not go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system. You will also see the VSA activation indicator blink.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

VSA Activation Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA Activation indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

If this indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays on or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

When the VSA system indicator comes on, you will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

NOTE: The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

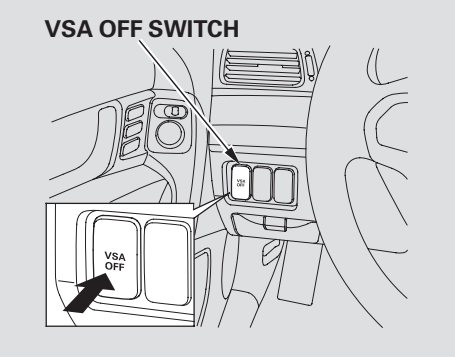
If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on (see page 386), or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message with the indicator flashing (see page 389), the VSA system automatically turns on even if the VSA system is turned off with the VSA OFF switch. In this case, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF switch again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

VSA OFF Switch



This switch is under the driver's side vent. To turn the VSA system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder.

Press and hold the switch again. It turns the system back on.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.

VSA and Tire Sizes

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tires (see page 451).

If you install winter tires, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their cargo. You can also use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

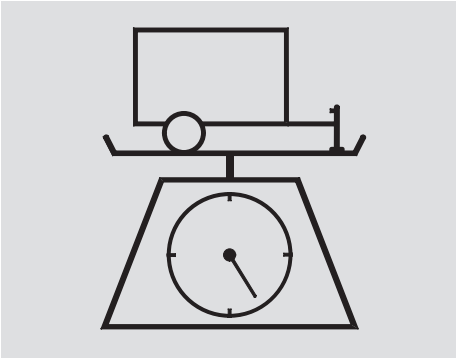
Break-In Period
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km) (see page 346).

⚠WARNING

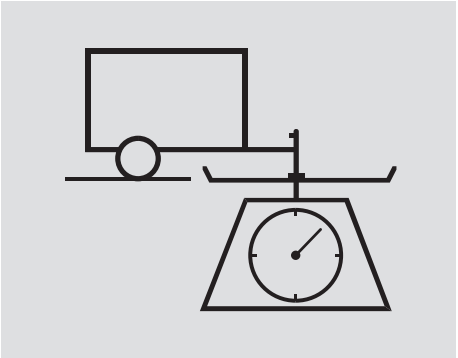
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Load Limits



Total Trailer Weight: The maximum allowable weight of the trailer and everything in or on it must not exceed 1,000 lbs (450 kg). Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and drivetrain.



Tongue Load: The weight that the tongue of a fully-loaded trailer puts on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight. Too much tongue load reduces front-tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear, then re-adjust the load as needed.

- **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):**
  The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load is:

4-cylinder models
Automatic transmission:
4,475 lbs (2,030 kg)

Manual transmission:
4,395 lbs (1,995 kg)

6-cylinder models
4,630 lbs (2,100 kg)

- **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):**
  The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axles is:

4-cylinder models
Automatic transmission:
2,410 lbs (1,095 kg)
on the front axle
2,090 lbs (950 kg)
on the rear axle

Manual transmission:
2,325 lbs (1,055 kg)
on the front axle
2,090 lbs (950 kg)
on the rear axle

6-cylinder models
2,557 lbs (1,160 kg)
on the front axle
2,083 lbs (945 kg)
on the rear axle

Checking Loads
The best way to confirm that all loads are within limits is to check them at a public scale. For public scales in your area, check your local phone book, or contact your trailer dealer or rental agency for assistance.

If you cannot get to a public scale, you can estimate the total trailer weight by adding the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer) with everything in or on the trailer.

If you normally pull the same load each time you tow a trailer, you can use a suitable scale or a special tongue load gauge to check the tongue load the first time you set up a towing combination (a fully loaded vehicle and trailer), then recheck the tongue load whenever the conditions change.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing can require a variety of equipment, depending on the size of your trailer, how it will be used, how much load you are towing, and where you tow.

To ensure the best quality, we recommend that you purchase Acura equipment whenever possible.

Discuss your needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and follow the guidelines in this section. Also make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

Hitches

Any hitch used on your vehicle must be properly bolted to the underbody.

Safety Chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Make sure the chains are secured to the trailer and hitch, and that they cross under the tongue and can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet.

If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

See your trailer dealer or rental agency for more information on installing electric brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Lights

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agencies for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow, and use only equipment designed for your vehicle.

Since lighting and wiring vary by trailer type and brand, you should have a qualified technician install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer. Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle's electrical system and affect your vehicle warranty.

Additional Towing Equipment

Many states and Canadian provinces/territories require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if they don't, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

Ask your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Pre-Tow Checklist

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the suspension and the cooling system are in good operating condition.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits.
- The hitch, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items in or on the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

- The lights and brakes on your vehicle and the trailer are working properly.
- Your vehicle tires and spare are properly inflated, and the trailer tires and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

Driving Safely With a Trailer

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving maneuvers before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines in this section.

Towing Speeds and Gears

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.

Do not exceed the limited speed when towing a trailer. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling (see "***Driving on Hills***" in the next page for additional gear information).

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On models with automatic transmission
When driving uphill and downhill, use the S position (without using the paddle shifters) to provide the proper engine power and engine braking on each gear. You can also use the paddle shifters. In this case, select third, second, or first gear with the paddle shifter; depending on the vehicle speeds and road condition. Do not use fourth and fifth gears. The recommended speed range for each gear position is shown in the table.

Gear position	Speed range
1	0 — 42 mph (0 — 67 km/h)
2, 3	19 — 62 mph (30 — 100 km/h)

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature increases and exceeds the specified limit, the transmission will also automatically downshift to the first gear even with the Sequential Sportshift Mode. This prevents the automatic transmission from overheating. In this case, the gear position "1" next to the "M" indicator in the instrument panel blinks for about five seconds, then it stays on.

Making Turns and Braking
Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

Driving on Hills
When climbing hills, closely watch your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

When driving down hills, reduce your speed and always apply engine braking by shifting down. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, when going down a steep hill, use the second gear to provide greater engine braking.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, when driving down hills, reduce your speed and use the S mode. You can also use the paddle shifters to change the gear position. Select third, second or first gear depending on the vehicle speeds and road condition. When going down a steep hill, use second gear to provide greater engine braking. Shift down to first gear when driving up steep hills.

Do not “ride” the brakes, and remember, it will take longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission to overheat.

Make sure to set the parking brake when starting off on an incline.

Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting
Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause the trailer to sway. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed, and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

Backing Up
Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel, then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left. Turn the wheel to the right to move the trailer to the right.

Parking
Follow all normal precautions when parking, including firmly setting the parking brake and putting the transmission in Park (automatic) or in 1st or reverse (manual). Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer’s tires.

Towing Your Vehicle
Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, see page 482 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance

This section explains why it is important to keep your vehicle well maintained and how to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes instructions on how to read the maintenance minder messages on the multi-information display, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your vehicle, you may want to purchase the service manual. See page 509 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your dealer.

Maintenance Safety 402
Maintenance Minder 403
Fluid Locations 412
Engine Compartment Covers 414
Adding Engine Oil 415
Changing the Engine Oil and Filter 417
Engine Coolant 420
Windshield Washers 422
Transmission Fluid 423
  Automatic Transmission 423
  Manual Transmission 426
Brake and Clutch Fluid 427
Timing Belt 428
Lights 429
Cleaning the Seat Belts 441
Floor Mats 441
Dust and Pollen Filter 442
Exterior Care 442
Wiper Blades 443
Tires 446
Checking the Battery 453
Vehicle Storage 454

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified mechanic.

Important Safety Precautions
To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle, or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.
- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

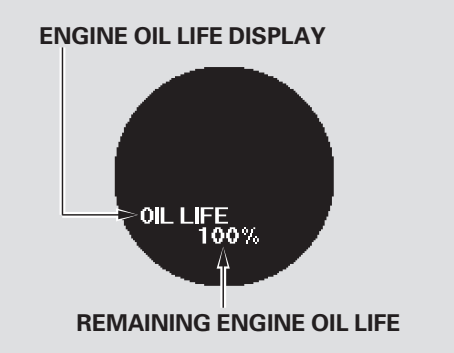
Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle displays engine oil life and maintenance service items on the multi-information display to show you when you should have your dealer perform engine oil replacement and indicated maintenance service.

Based on the engine operating conditions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining engine oil life and displays it as a percentage.

Engine Oil Life Display



To see the current engine oil life displayed on the multi-information display, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the engine oil life is displayed.

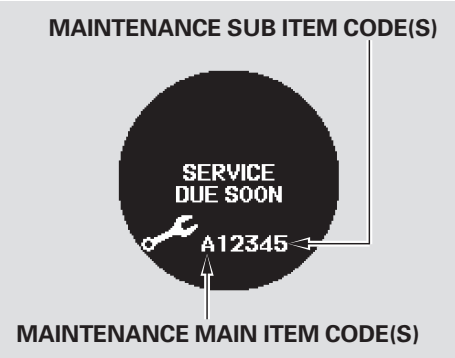
The remaining engine oil life is shown on the display according to this table:

Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)	Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)
100% — 91%	100%
90% — 81%	90%
80% — 71%	80%
70% — 61%	70%
60% — 51%	60%
50% — 41%	50%
40% — 31%	40%
30% — 21%	30%
20% — 16%	20%
15% — 11%	15%
10% — 6%	10%
5% — 1%	5%
0%	0%

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder



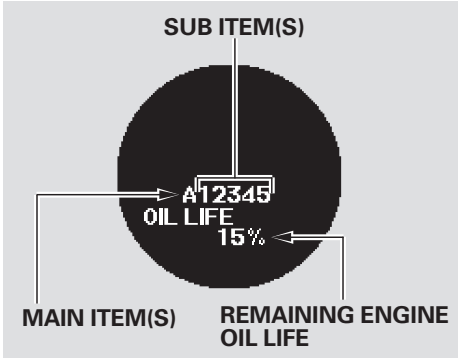
When the remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE SOON” message along with the maintenance item code(s) indicating the main and sub items required at the time of the oil change. Refer to page 417 for a complete list of the maintenance main items and sub items.

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. Once you switch the display, this message will go off.

Along with the message, the system message indicator comes on (see page 67).

The message appears on the multi-information display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

This message reminds you that your vehicle will soon be due for scheduled maintenance.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life information. Along with the “OIL LIFE” message, you will see the percentage of the remaining engine oil life and the maintenance item codes on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the remaining oil life is 5 to 1 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE NOW” message with the same maintenance items “SERVICE DUE SOON” was displayed with. When you see this message, have the indicated maintenance performed as soon as possible.

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. Once you switch the display, this message will go off.

Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message “SERVICE,” along with “5%,” and the maintenance item code are displayed on the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 1—5 percent (see page 403).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

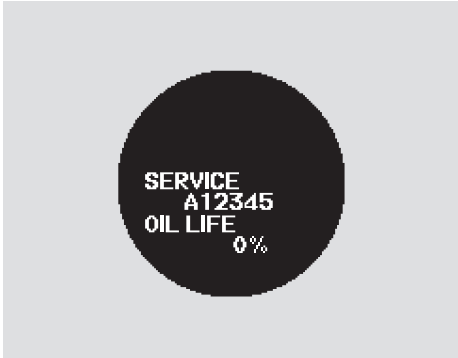
Maintenance Minder

If the indicated maintenance service is not done and the remaining engine oil life reaches 0%, the multi-information display will show the message “SERVICE PAST DUE” and the maintenance item code(s). This message is displayed when the total distance traveled is less than 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after the engine oil life became 0%.

These messages will come on every time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

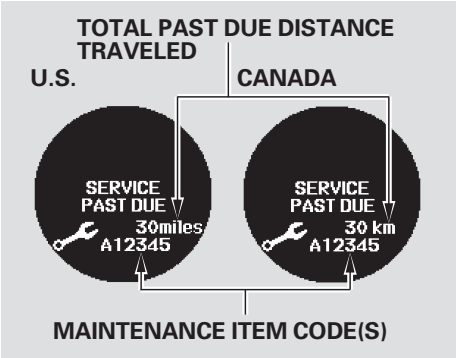
Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display as described on page 408 .

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. To see the message again, press either INFO button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message “SERVICE,” along with “0%,” and the maintenance item code are displayed on the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 0—1 percent.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

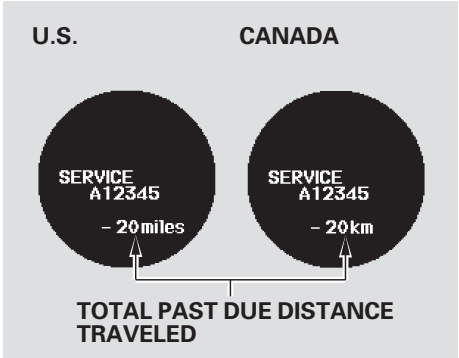


If the indicated required service is not done and the remaining engine oil life becomes 0%, the multi-information display will show a "SERVICE PAST DUE" message, the total distance traveled after the remaining oil life became 0%, and the maintenance item code(s).

This message is displayed again when you drive over 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after seeing the 0% message.

Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display as described on page 408 .

Pressing either INFO button (▲/▼) switches the display from the message to another display. To see the message again, press either INFO button repeatedly.

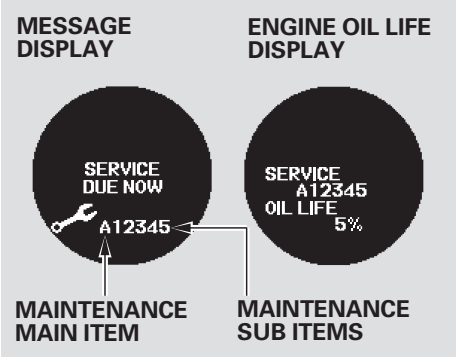


When you press the SEL/RESET button to select the engine oil life, the message "SERVICE," along with the maintenance item code(s) and the total negative distance traveled after the oil life became 0%, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

Maintenance Main Items and Sub Items



All the maintenance items displayed in the multi-information display are in code.

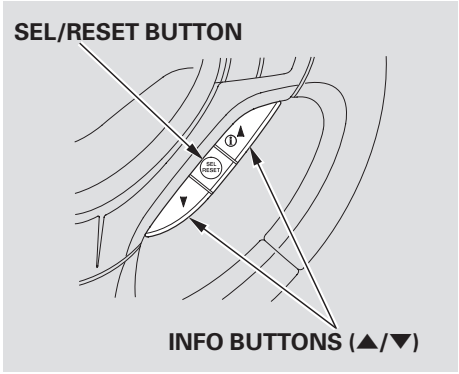
For an explanation of the maintenance codes, see page 411 .

Resetting the Engine Oil Life Display

Your dealer will reset the display after completing the required maintenance service. You will see "OIL LIFE 100%" on the display the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the maintenance minder as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.



2. If the engine oil life is not displayed, press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly.

3. Press and hold the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 10 seconds. The remaining engine oil life reset mode will be shown on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Select “RESET” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to reset the engine oil life display. The maintenance item code(s) will disappear, and the engine oil life will reset to “100.” If you want to cancel the oil life reset mode, select “CANCEL.”

Important Maintenance Precautions

If you have the required service done but do not reset the display, or reset the display without doing the service, the system will not show the correct maintenance intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when maintenance is needed.

Your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service. However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out your Maintenance Journal or Canadian Maintenance Log. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend using Acura parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

U.S. Vehicles:
Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display.

Owner's Maintenance Checks
You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the appropriate page listed.

- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 352 .
- Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 353 .
- Automatic transmission — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 423 .
- Brakes — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 427 .
- Tires — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 446 .
- Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, and license plate lights monthly. See page 429 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

Symbol	Maintenance Main Items
A	● Replace engine oil*
B	● Replace engine oil* and oil filter ● Inspect front and rear brakes ● Check parking brake adjustment ● Inspect these items: ● Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots ● Suspension components ● Driveshaft boots ● Brake hoses and line (including ABS/VSA) ● All fluid levels and condition of fluids ● Exhaust system# ● Fuel lines and connections#

Symbol	Maintenance Sub Items
1	● Rotate tires
2	● Replace air cleaner element If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). ● Replace dust and pollen filter If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). ● Inspect drive belt
3	● Replace transmission fluid Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the maintenance minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed at 60,000 miles (100,000 km), then every 30,000 miles (48,000 km). (For A/T only.)
4	● Replace spark plugs ● Replace timing belt and inspect water pump (6-cylinder models only) If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), in very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C), or towing a trailer, replace every 60,000 miles (U.S.)/100,000 km (Canada). ● Inspect valve clearance
5	● Replace engine coolant

*: If the message "SERVICE DUE NOW" does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

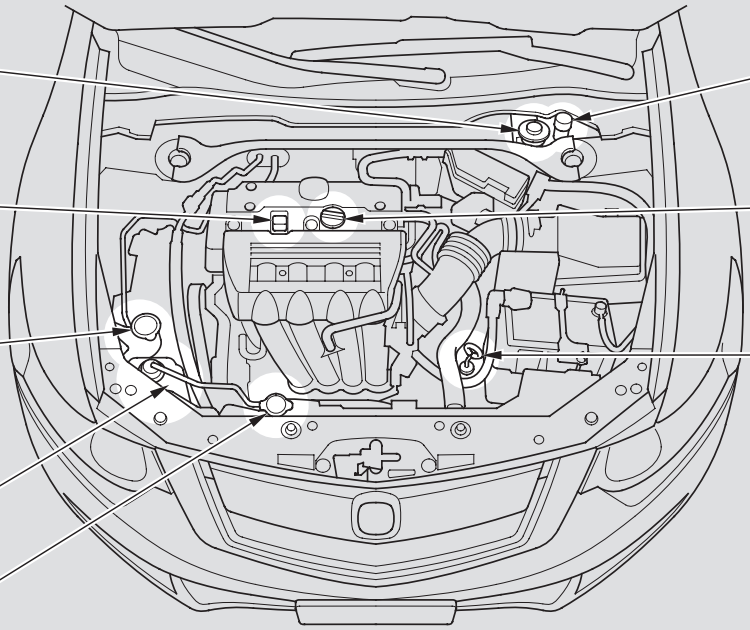
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty in the first column on page 410.

NOTE:
- Independent of the maintenance messages on the multi-information display, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 only if they are noisy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fluid Locations

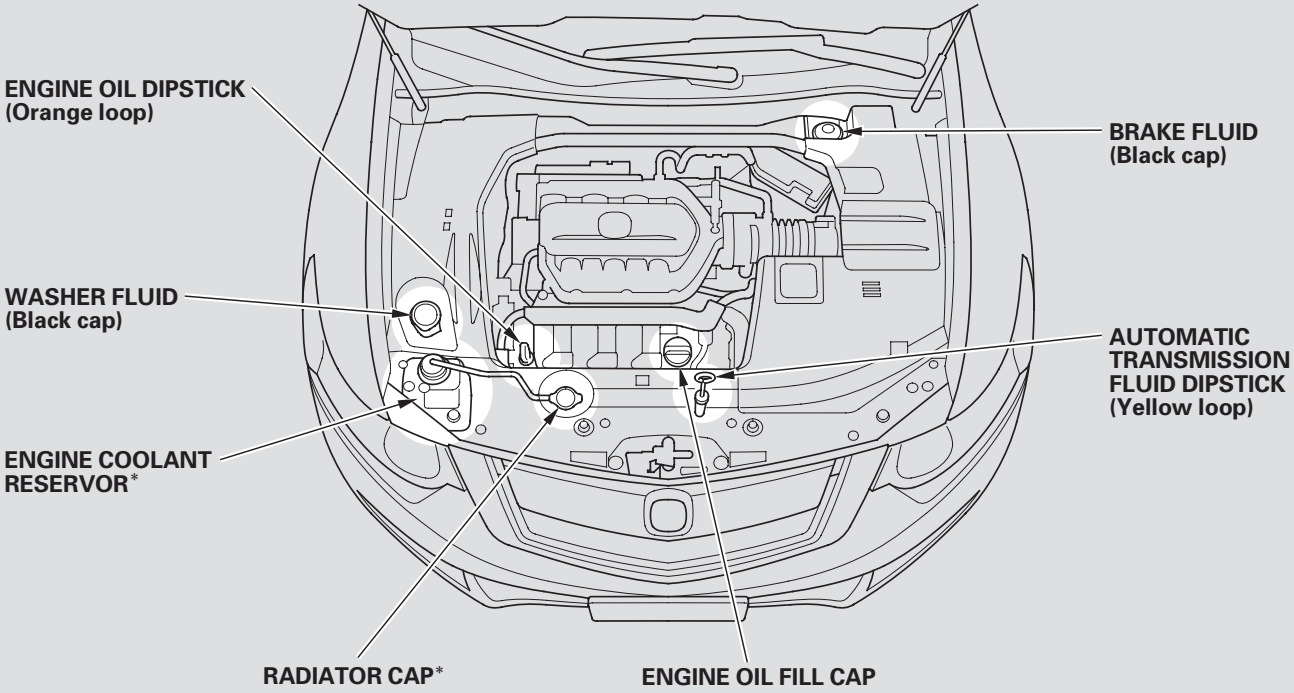
4-cylinder models



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fluid Locations

6-cylinder models



* : Located under the cover

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Covers

6-cylinder models only

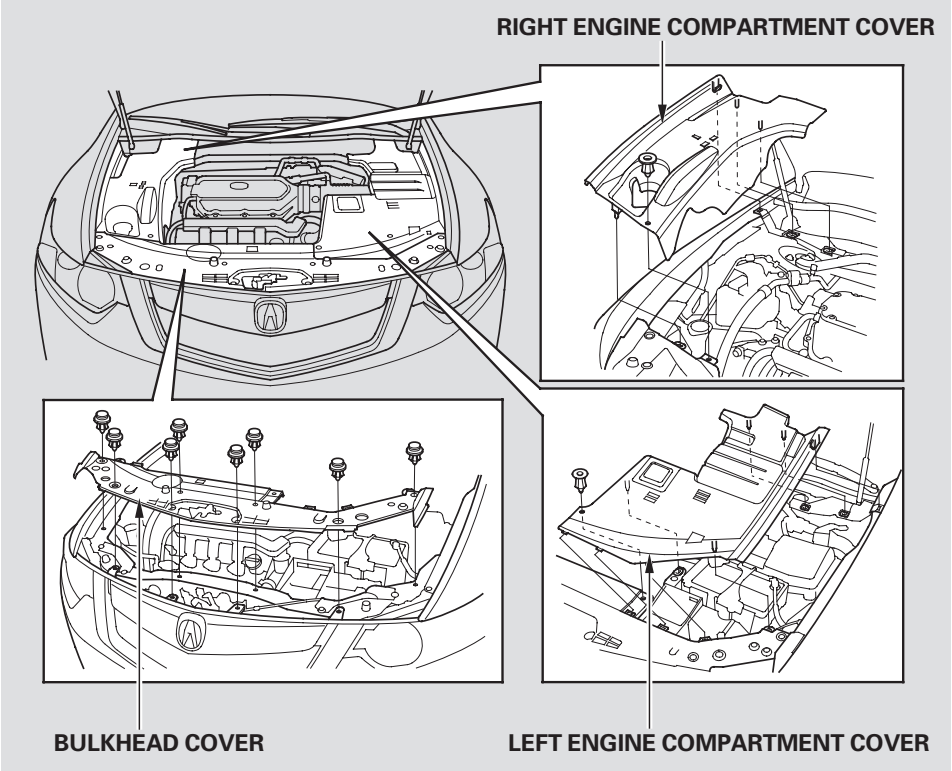
The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by several covers. You may need to remove the covers when you perform some simple maintenance work.

To remove the covers:

1. Remove the holding clip(s).
2. Remove the right and left engine compartment covers by pulling up.
3. Pull the bulkhead cover straight up to remove.

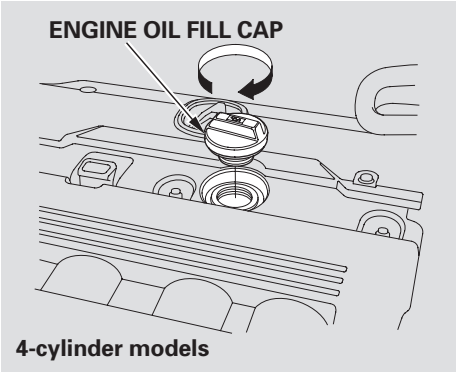
After replacing the right engine compartment cover, make sure the washer fluid cap is firmly in place.

When reinstalling the covers, make sure the pins and tabs are in their proper positions, and put the holding clip(s) back in place securely.



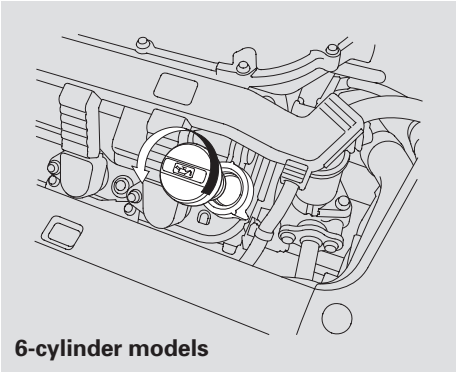
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Oil



4-cylinder models

Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.



6-cylinder models

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes, and recheck the oil level on the engine oil dipstick. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil displaying the API Certification Seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

CONTINUED

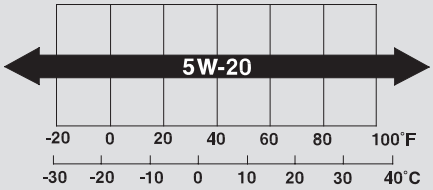
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Oil

Acura Motor Oil is the preferred 5W-20 lubricant for your vehicle. It is highly recommended that you use Acura Motor Oil in your vehicle for optimum engine protection. Make sure the API Certification Seal says "For Gasoline Engines."

API CERTIFICATION SEAL

The oil viscosity or weight is provided on the container's label. 5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your vehicle to improve cold weather starting and fuel economy.



Ambient Temperature

Synthetic Oil
You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil: it displays the API Certification Seal and it is the proper weight. You must follow the oil and filter change intervals shown on the multi-information display.

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

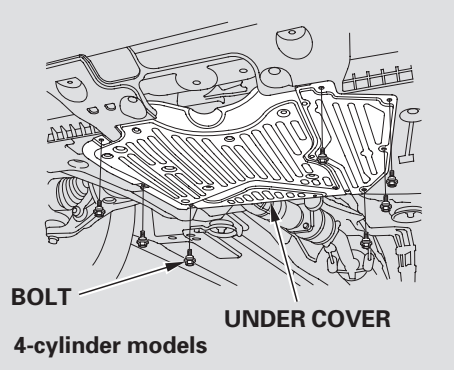
Changing the Engine Oil and Filter

Always change the oil and filter according to the maintenance messages shown on the multi-information display. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

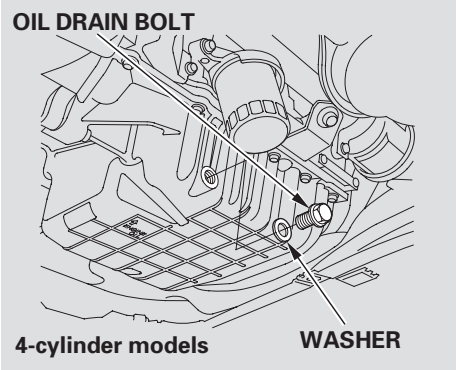
Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled technician.

1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.

2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.



3. *4-cylinder models*
   Remove the bolts located on the underside of the body with a wrench, then remove the under cover.

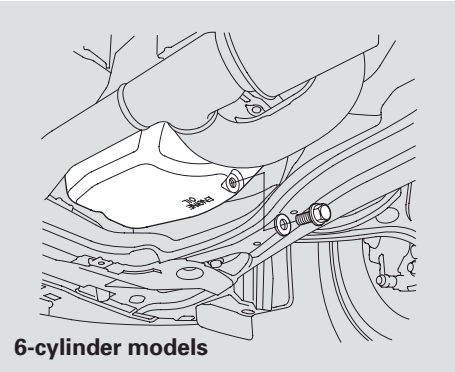


4. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.

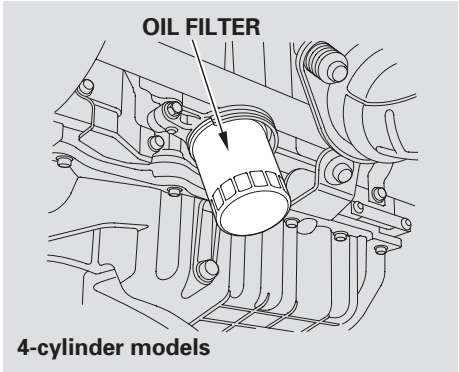
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the Engine Oil and Filter



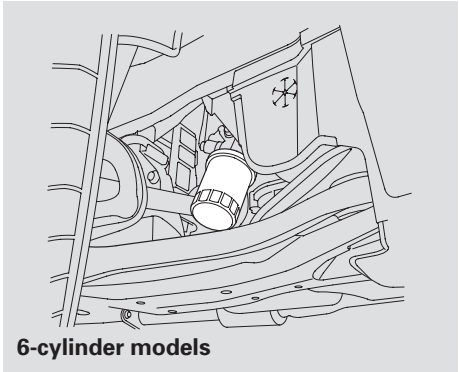
6-cylinder models



4-cylinder models

5. Remove the oil filter and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your dealer) is required.

   Make sure the oil filter gasket is not stuck to the contacting surface of the engine. If it is, remove it before installing a new oil filter.



6-cylinder models

6. Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it. Make sure to clean off any dirt and dust on the contacting surface of a new oil filter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten it to:
   29 lbf·ft (39 N·m , 4.0 kgf·m)

8. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

   Engine oil change capacity (including filter):
   4-cylinder models
   4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)

   6-cylinder models
   4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

9. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator should go out within 5 seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

10. Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.

11. Turn off the engine, let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more oil.

12. *4-cylinder models*
    Install the under cover and tighten the bolts securely.

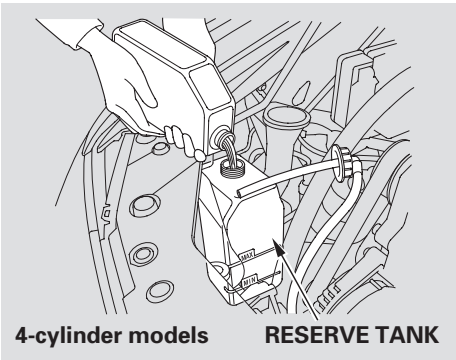
NOTICE

Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

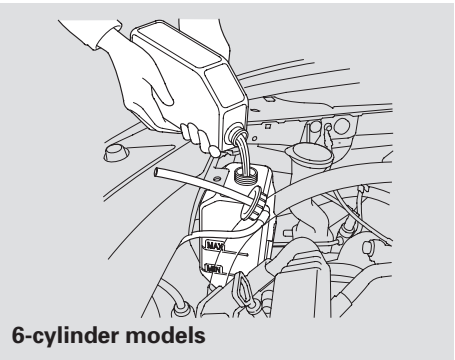
Engine Coolant

Adding Engine Coolant



4-cylinder models RESERVE TANK

If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.



6-cylinder models

To access the radiator reserve tank, remove the right-side engine compartment cover.

Always use Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 % antifreeze and 50 % water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Except 6-cylinder models
If you regularly drive your vehicle under severe conditions in very low temperature (under −31°F, −35°C), a higher concentration of coolant should be used. Consult your Acura dealer for more information of the proper coolant.

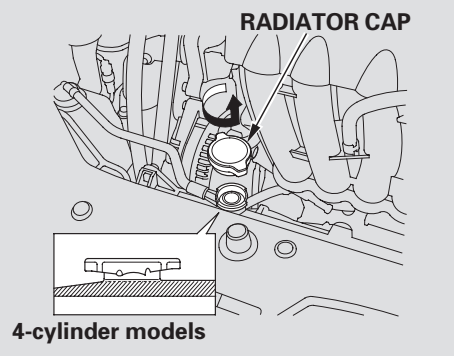
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

⚠WARNING

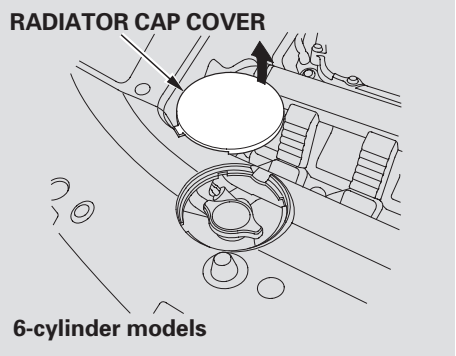
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.



4-cylinder models

1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.



6-cylinder models

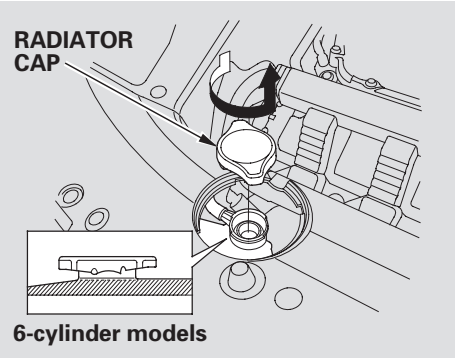
2. *6-cylinder models*
   Remove the radiator cap cover.

3. Relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pressing down.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant, Windshield Washers



6-cylinder models

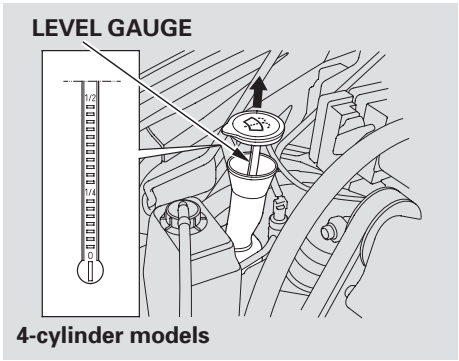
4. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.
5. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

   Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.
6. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
7. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

Windshield Washers

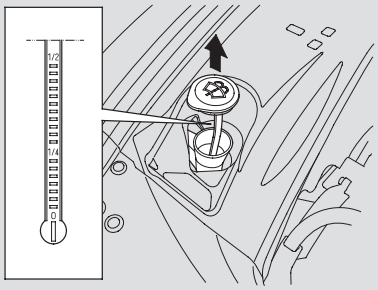
Check the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.



4-cylinder models

Check the reservoir's fluid level by removing the cap and looking at the level gauge attached to the cap.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6-cylinder models

Canadian models only
If the washer fluid is low, a "WASHER FULID LOW" message appears on the multi-information display.

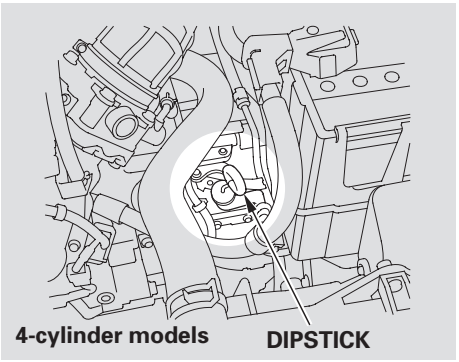
Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition the blade edges.

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump. Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.

Automatic Transmission



4-cylinder models

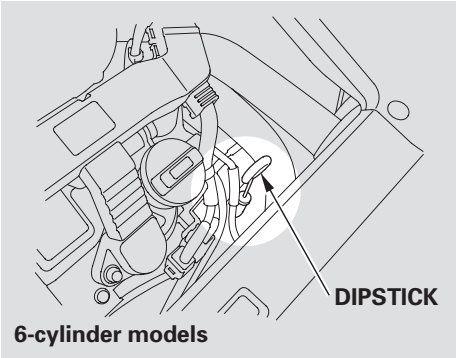
Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine, let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds (but no longer than 90 seconds) before doing step 2.

CONTINUED

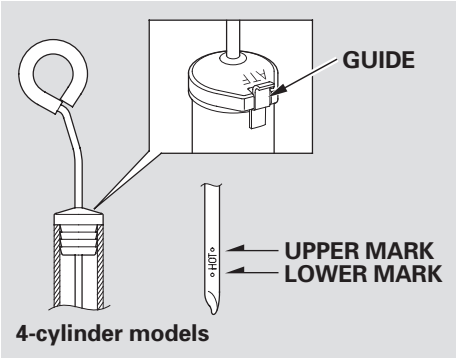
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transmission Fluid



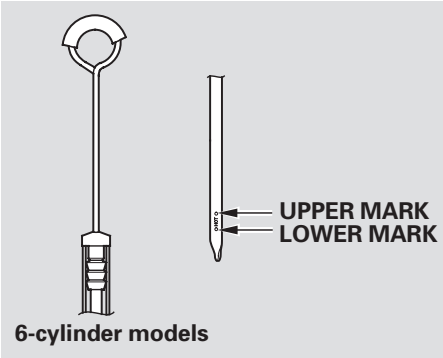
6-cylinder models

2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.



4-cylinder models

3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.



6-cylinder models

4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.

   Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

   Always use Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid).

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

   4-cylinder models
   Make sure the rubber cap on the dipstick fits in the dipstick guide and that you push the dipstick in all the way.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is indicated by a maintenance message on the multi-information display.

If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.

NOTICE

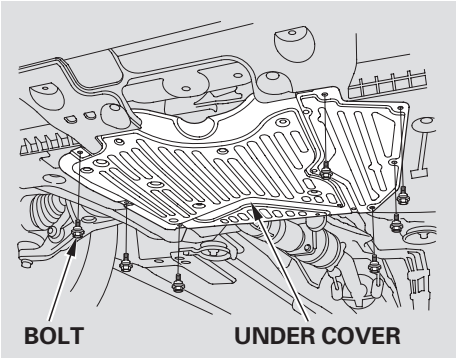
Use only Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid). Do not mix with other transmission fluids.

Using transmission fluid other than Acura ATF-Z1 may cause deterioration in transmission operation and durability, and could result in damage to the transmission.
Damage resulting from the use of transmission fluid other than Acura ATF-Z1 is not covered by the Acura new vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

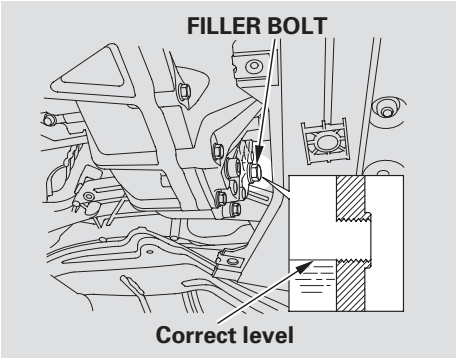
Transmission Fluid

Manual Transmission



Check the fluid level with the transmission at normal operating temperature and the vehicle sitting on level ground.

To check the transmission fluid level, remove the bolts with a wrench, then remove the under cover carefully.



Remove the transmission filler bolt, and carefully feel inside the bolt hole with your finger.

The fluid level should be up to the edge of the bolt hole. If it is not, add Acura Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) until it starts to run out of the hole. Reinstall the filler bolt, and tighten it securely.

Reinstall the under cover and tighten the bolts securely. Make sure the under cover is installed under the edge of the front bumper.

If Acura MTF is not available, you may use an SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 viscosity motor oil with the API Certification seal that says “FOR GASOLINE ENGINES” as a temporary replacement. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives, and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is indicated by a maintenance message on the multi-information display.

If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake and Clutch Fluid

Check the fluid level in the reservoirs monthly. There are up to two reservoirs, depending on the model. They are:

- Brake fluid reservoir (all models)
- Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission models only)

You will also see the "BRAKE FLUID LOW" message on the multi-information display when the brake fluid level is low.

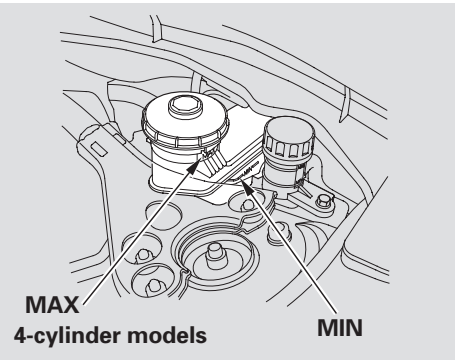
Replace the brake fluid every 3 years, independent of the maintenance message in the multi-information display.

Always use Acura Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Acura brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Acura Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

Brake Fluid

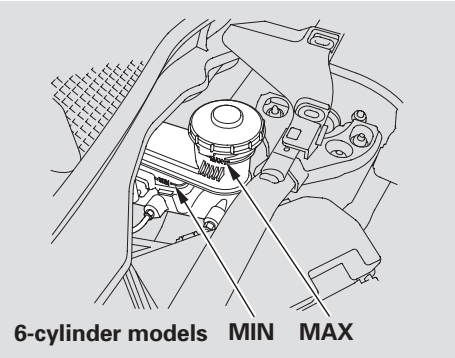


The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

CONTINUED

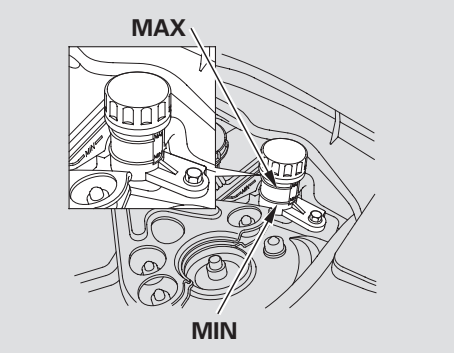
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake and Clutch Fluid, Timing Belt



Clutch Fluid

Manual Transmission only



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

A low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.

Timing Belt

6-cylinder models

The timing belt should be replaced according to the maintenance minder (see page 411).

Replace the timing belt every 60,000 miles (U.S.) or every 100,000 km (Canada) if you regularly drive your vehicle in any of the following conditions:

- In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).
- In very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C).
- If you frequently tow a trailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustments should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

Low Beam Headlight Bulb Replacement

All models except Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

The low beam headlight bulbs are high voltage discharge tube bulbs. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed. Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a low beam headlight bulb yourself. If a low beam headlight bulb fails, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it replaced.

Replacing a Headlight Bulb

High beam headlights on all models
Low beam headlights on Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

Your vehicle has halogen headlight bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

Halogen headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

CONTINUED

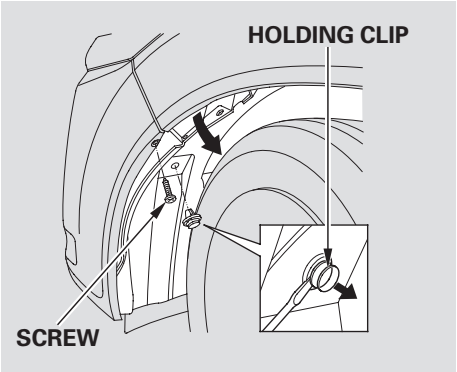
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights

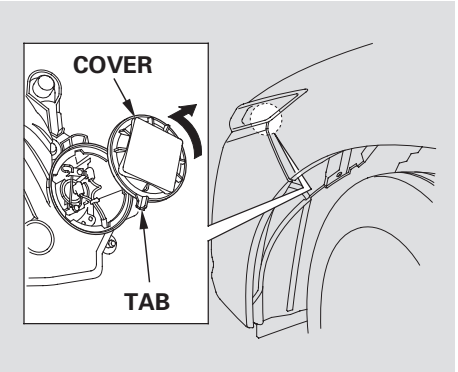
Low Beam Headlight

Canadian TSX with 4-cylinder engine

1. To change the passenger's side bulb, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, and turn off the engine. To change the driver's side bulb, turn the steering wheel to the right.



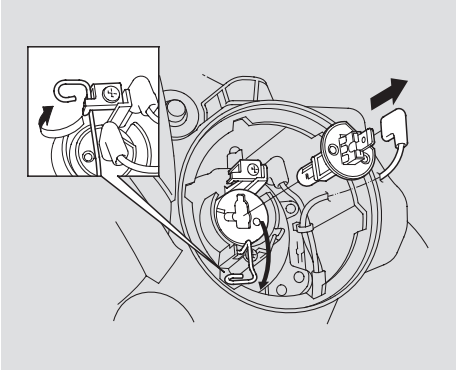
2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the inner fender, and remove the screw with a Phillips-head screwdriver.



3. Pull the inner fender cover away from the fender and bumper.

4. Remove the cover on the back of the headlight assembly by turning the tab counterclockwise.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5. Unclip the end of the hold-down wire from its slot. Pivot it out of the way.

6. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pulling the connector straight back, then remove the bulb.

7. Insert the new bulb into the hole, making sure the tabs are in their slots.

8. Push the electrical connector onto the new bulb. Make sure it is connected securely.

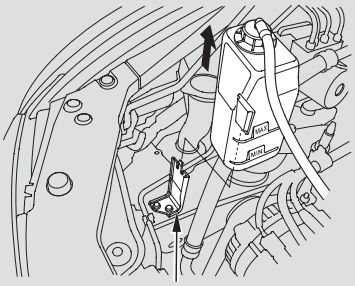
9. Pivot the hold-down wire back in place, and clip the end into the slot.

10. Reinstall the cover over the back of the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

11. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

12. Put the inner fender cover in place. Install the holding clip. Lock it in place by pushing on the center. Tighten the screw securely.

High Beam Headlights



4-cylinder models

1. Open the hood.

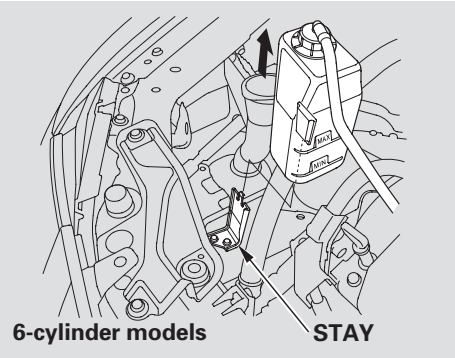
2. *6-cylinder models*
Remove all engine compartment covers (see page 414).

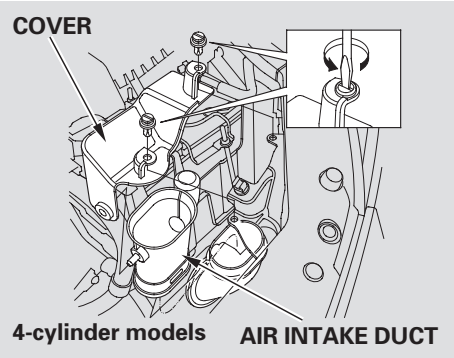
3. To change a bulb on the passenger's side, remove the engine coolant reserve tank by pulling it out of its stay.

CONTINUED

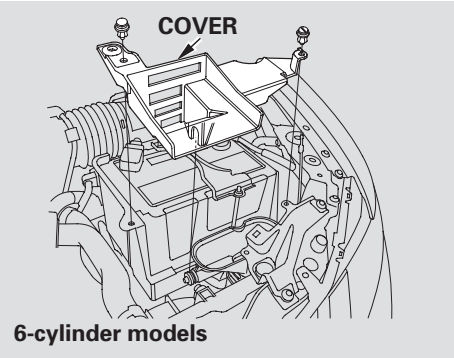
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights



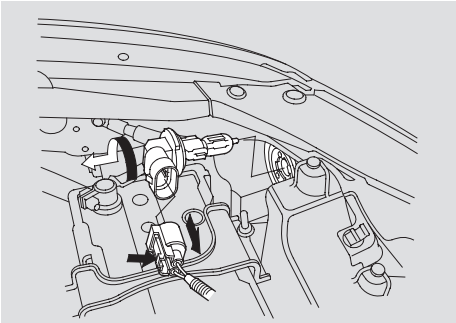


4-cylinder models
To change a bulb on the left side, remove the two fasteners by turning the head of each fastener with a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the cover and upper part of the air intake duct.



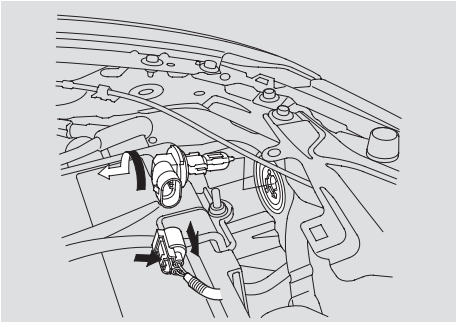
6-cylinder models
Remove the fasteners, then remove the air intake duct cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4-cylinder models

4. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab to unlock it, then slide the connector off the bulb.



6-cylinder models

5. Remove the bulb by turning it approximately one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

6. Install the new bulb, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

8. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

9. *On the passenger's side*
Reinstall the coolant reserve tank.

On the driver's side
4-cylinder models:
Reinstall the cover and upper part of the air intake duct securely. Reinstall the fasteners.

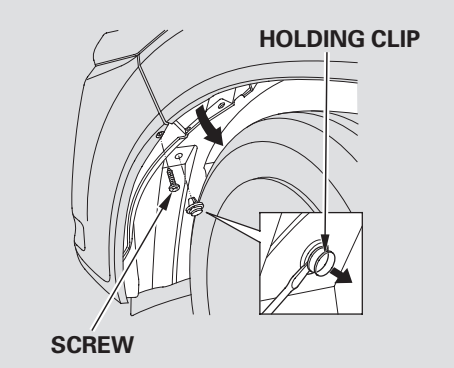
6-cylinder models:
Reinstall the air intake duct cover, then reinstall the fasteners.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights

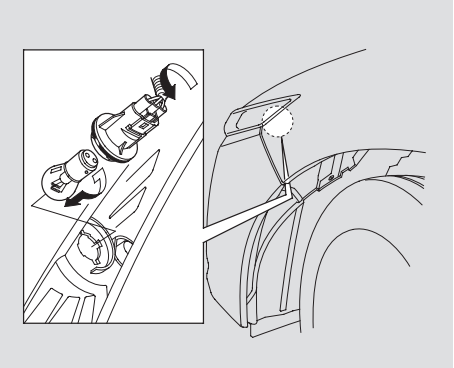
Replacing a Front Turn Signal/ Parking and Side Marker Light Bulb

1. To change the bulb on the driver's side, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, then turn off the engine. To change the bulb on the passenger's side, turn the steering wheel to the left.



2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the inner fender, and remove the screw with a Phillips-head screwdriver.

3. Pull the inner fender cover away from the fender and bumper.



4. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. To remove the burned out bulb, push it in and turn it counterclockwise until it unlocks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

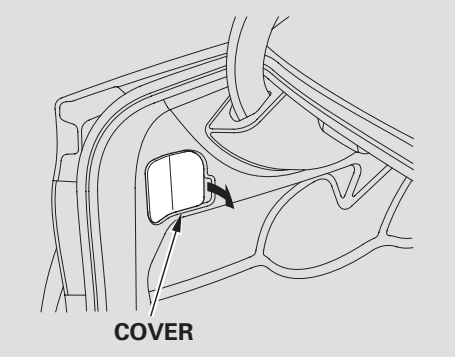
6. Install the new bulb and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

8. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

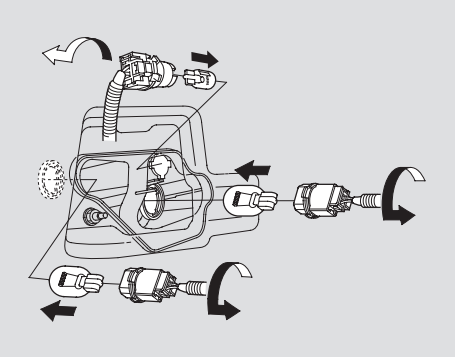
9. Put the inner fender cover in place. Install the holding clip. Lock it in place by pushing on the center. Tighten the screw securely.

Replacing Rear Bulbs (In Fenders)



1. Open the trunk.

2. Remove the light assembly cover by pulling its outside edge.



3. Determine which of the three bulbs is burned out: stop/taillight, rear side-marker, or turn signal light.

4. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise, and pull the bulb straight out of its socket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

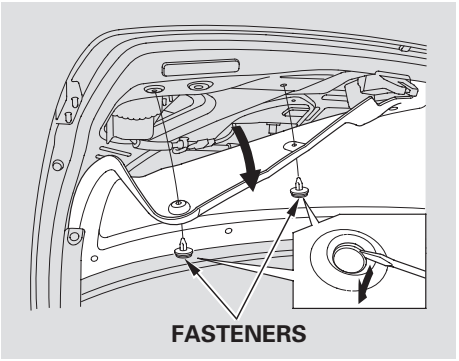
Lights

5. Push a new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms, and reinstall the socket into the light assembly by turning it clockwise until it locks.

6. Test the new bulb to make sure it works.

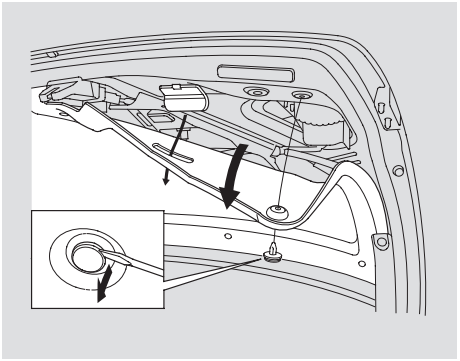
7. Reinstall the light assembly cover.

Replacing a Back-up Light Bulb (in Trunk Lid)



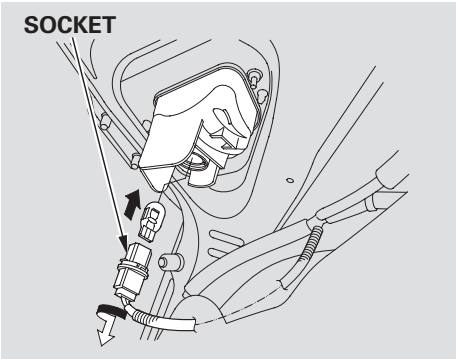
1. Open the trunk.

2. To replace a bulb on either side, remove the two fasteners on the left side, or a fastener on the right side.



3. Pull back the appropriate corner of the trunk lid lining carefully.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

6. Insert the socket back into the light assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

8. Reinstall the trunk lid lining. Make sure it is installed under the edge of the trunk seal.

9. Install the fasteners.

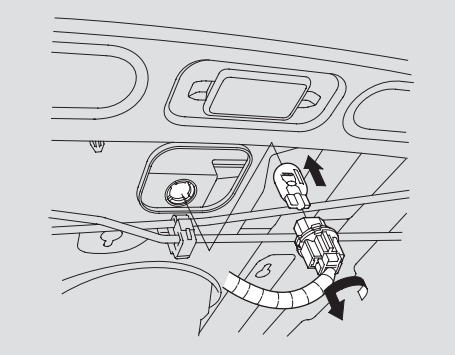
Side Turn Signal Lights
Each outside mirror has side turn signal lights. The lights should be replaced by your dealer.

Rear License Plate Light Bulbs
The license plate has two lights above it. The bulbs should be replaced by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights

Replacing the High-mount Brake Light



1. Open the trunk, and remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counter-clockwise.
2. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
3. Reinstall the socket. Turn it clockwise until it locks. Make sure the new bulb is working.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing a Fog Light Bulb

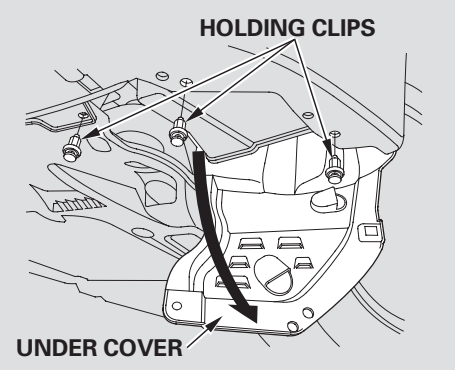
If equipped

Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The fog lights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustment should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

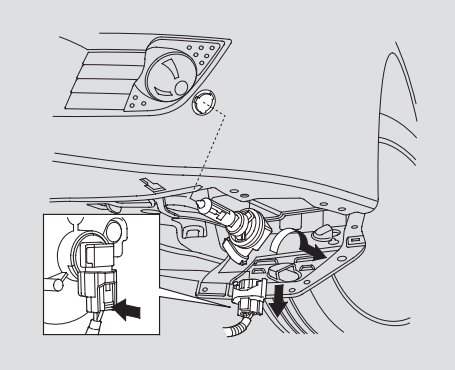


1. Remove the three holding clips with a flat-tip screwdriver.
2. Pull down the under cover from the bumper carefully.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights



3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.

4. Remove the bulb from the fog light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Install the new bulb into the hole and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

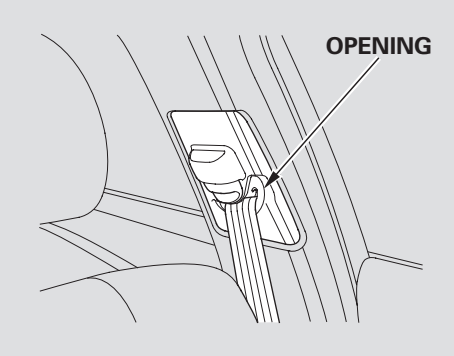
6. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

7. Turn on the fog lights to test the new bulb.

8. Reinstall the holding clips, and push in the head of each clip.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

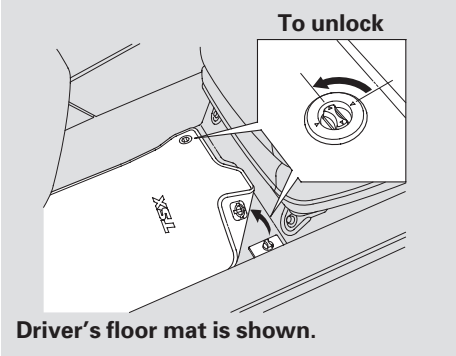
Cleaning the Seat Belts



If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up around the openings of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the openings with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

Floor Mats



Driver's floor mat is shown.

The driver's floor mat that came with your vehicle hooks over the floor mat anchors. To lock each anchor, turn the knob clockwise. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals.

When cleaning or replacing, turn the knob counterclockwise to unhook the floor mat.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Floor Mats, Dust and Pollen Filter, Exterior Care

If you remove a floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use a non-Acura floor mat, make sure it fits properly and that it can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

Make sure the rear floor mats are properly positioned. If not, the floor mat will interfere with the seat operation and make the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective.

Dust and Pollen Filter

This filter removes the dust and pollen that is brought in from the outside through the climate control system.

Have your dealer replace the filter when this service is indicated by a maintenance message on the multi-information display. It should be replaced every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air, or if the flow from the climate control system becomes less than usual.

Exterior Care

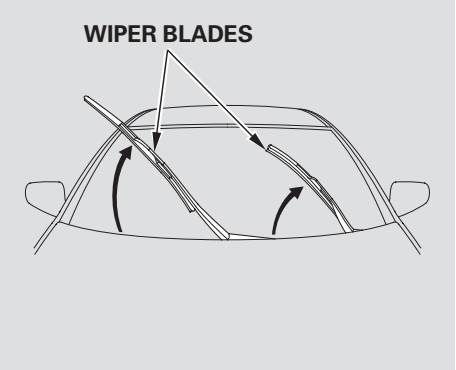
NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper Blades

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

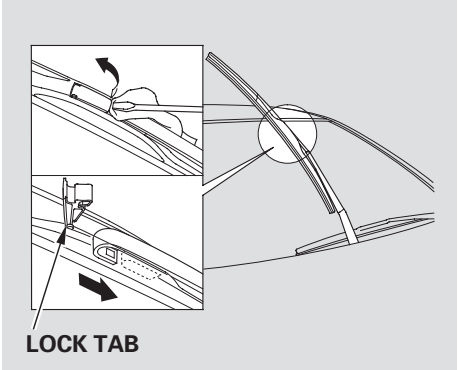


To replace a wiper blade:

1. Raise each wiper arm off the windshield, lifting the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the hood and wiper arms.



2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm:

   • Put a cloth on the edge of the lock tab to prevent scratches, then push up on the lock tab carefully with a flat-tip screwdriver.

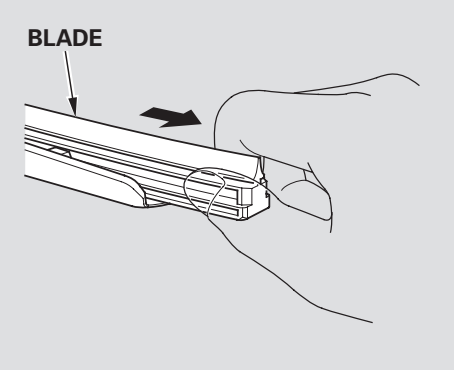
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper Blades

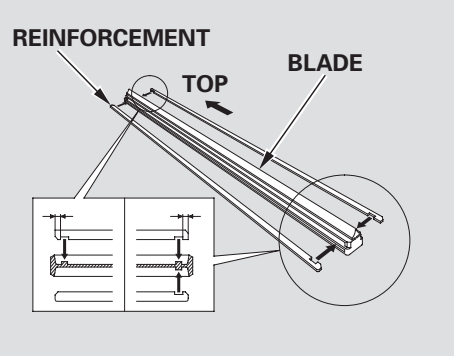
- Pivot the blade assembly toward the wiper arm until it releases from the wiper arm.

When replacing a wiper blade, make sure not to drop the wiper blade or wiper arm down on the windshield.



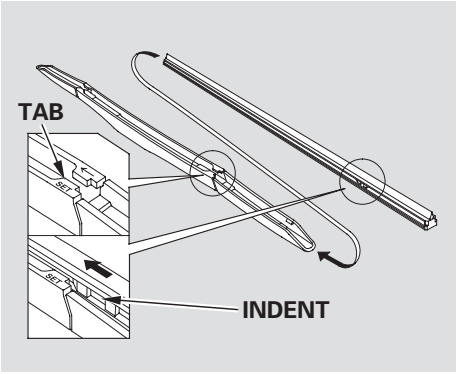
3. Remove the blade from its holder by grabbing the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.

4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.



Make sure the three rubber tabs inside the blade fit to each notch of the reinforcement, as shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5. Place the top of the wiper blade on the end of the blade assembly, and slide the blade onto the assembly in the direction pointed to by the arrow.

   Make sure the tab on the blade assembly fits in the indent of the wiper blade and the blade is completely installed.

6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Push down the lock tab. Make sure the wiper blade assembly locks in place.

7. Lower the wiper arm down against the windshield, the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tires and what to do when they need to be replaced.

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Inflation Guidelines

Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tires can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) will warn you when a tire pressure is low. See page 386 for information on the TPMS.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, we recommend that you visually check your tires every day. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tire at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm²) per month. Remember to check the spare tire at the same time.

Check the air pressures when the tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tire pressures on the next page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you check air pressures when the tires are hot (driven for several miles/kilometers), you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than the cold readings. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the recommended cold air pressure. The tire will be underinflated.

You should get your own tire pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

While tubeless tires have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tire starts losing pressure.

Recommended Tire Pressures

The following chart shows the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal driving conditions.

4-cylinder models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P225/50R17 93V	Front/Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm²)

6-cylinder models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P235/45R18 94V	Front/Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm²)

The compact spare tire pressure is: 60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

For convenience, the recommended tire sizes and cold tire pressures are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

For additional information about your tires, see page 496.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

High Speed Driving

We strongly recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you ever drive in a sanctioned competitive event at sustained high speeds (over 118 mph or 190 km/h), be sure to adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below. If you do not, excessive heat can build up and cause sudden tire failure.

4-cylinder models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure
P225/50R17 93V	35 psi (240 kPa , 2.4 kgf/cm²)

6-cylinder models only

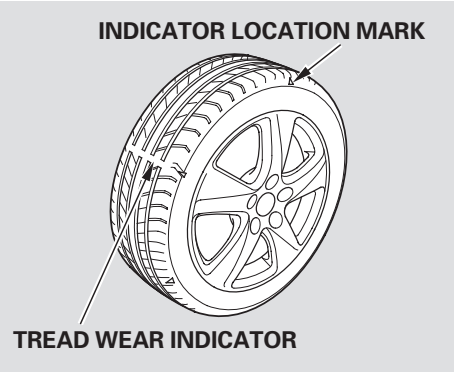
Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure
P235/45R18 94V	35 psi (240 kPa , 2.4 kgf/cm²)

Tire Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.



Your tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire.

A tire this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Service Life

The service life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including, but not limited to, driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to your regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. It is also recommended that all tires, including the spare, be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

The last four digits of the TIN (tire identification number) are found on the sidewall of the tire and indicate the date of manufacture (See **Tire Labeling** on page 496).

Tire Maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tire life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

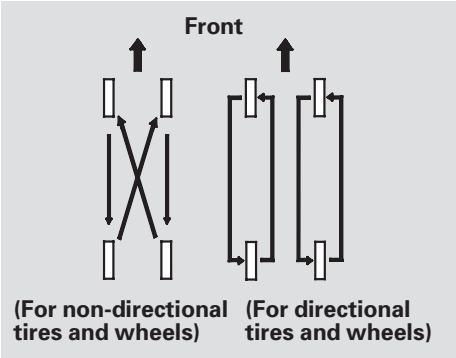
NOTICE

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only Acura wheel weights for balancing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Tire Rotation



To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tires according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display. Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated. If you purchase directional tires, rotate only front-to-back.

When the tires are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

Replace your tires with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and vehicle stability assist system (VSA) to work inconsistently.

The ABS and VSA system work by comparing the speed of each wheel. When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tire size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to activate.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Also be sure you use only TPMS specific wheels. If you do not, the tire pressure monitoring system will not work.

Replacement wheels are available at your dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Wheel and Tire Specifications

Wheels:
4-cylinder models:
17 x 7 1/2J

6-cylinder models:
18 x 8J

Tires:
4-cylinder models:
P225/50R17 93V

6-cylinder models:
P235/45R18 94V

See page 494 for DOT tire quality grading information, and page 496 for tire size information.

Winter Driving

Tires marked "M + S" or "All Season" on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design suitable for most winter driving conditions.

For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

Snow Tires

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may be lower than your original tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Tire Chains
Mount tire chains on your tires when required by driving conditions or local laws. Install them only on the front tires.

Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, Acura strongly recommends using the chains listed below, made by Security Chain Company (SCC).

Cable-type : SCC Radial Chain

4-cylinder models
SC1034

6-cylinder models
SC1038

When installing cables, follow the manufacturer's instructions, and mount them as tight as you can. Make sure they are not contacting the brake lines or suspension. Drive slowly with them installed. If you hear them coming into contact with the body or chassis, stop and investigate. Remove them as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

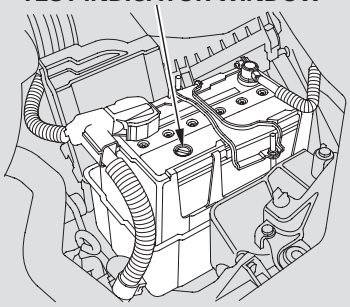
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

Wheels
Clean the wheels as you would the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

Aluminum alloy wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing. Cleaning the wheels with harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush can damage the clear-coat. To clean the wheels, use a mild detergent and a soft brush or sponge.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

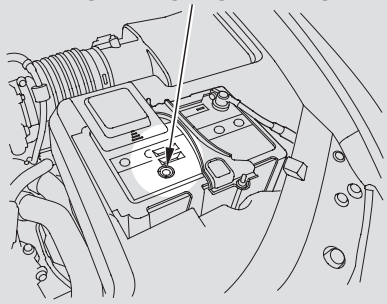
Checking the Battery



4-cylinder models

Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colors.

The location of the test indicator window varies between manufacturers.



6-cylinder models

6-cylinder models
To see the battery label, remove the left side engine compartment cover (see page 414).

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your dealer or a qualified technician.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash your hands after handling.**

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking the Battery, Vehicle Storage

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (−) cable first, and reconnect it last.

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected, or goes dead, the time setting may be lost. To reset the time, see page 289 .

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system may disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the code (see page 288).

On vehicles with navigation system
The navigation system will also disable itself. The next time you turn on the ignition switch, the system will require you to enter a PIN before it can be used. Refer to the navigation system manual.

Vehicle Storage
If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in reverse (manual) or Park (automatic).
- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and trunk seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and trunk seals.
- Cover the vehicle with a "breathable" cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

456

2010 TSX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tire 458
Changing a Flat Tire 459
If the Engine Won't Start 464
Jump Starting 466
If the Engine Overheats 469
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 471
Charging System Indicator 471
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 472
  Readiness Code 472
Brake System Indicator 473
Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually 474
Fuses 475
Fuse Locations 479
Emergency Towing 482

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

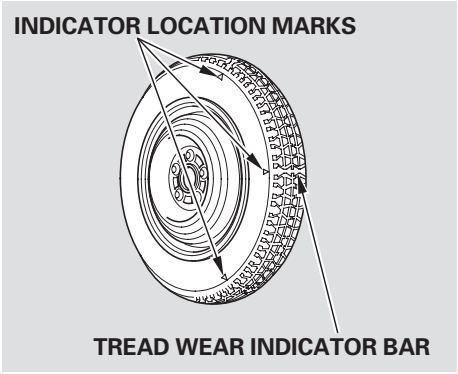
Compact Spare Tire

Use the compact spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

Check the air pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tire.
- Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- After the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator stays on. After several miles (kilometers) driving with the spare, this indicator begins to flash, then stays on again. You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 389).



Replace the tire when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tire, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you have a flat tire while driving, stop in a safe place to change it. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an exit or an area that is far away from the traffic lanes.

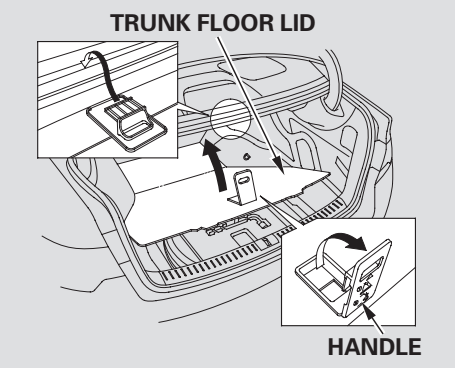
⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tire.

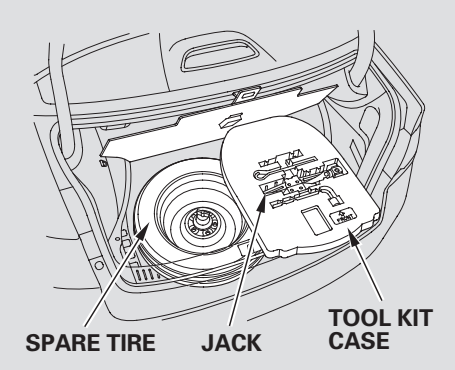


3. Open the trunk. Pull up the handle on the trunk floor lid. Raise the lid by lifting it up with the handle, then hook the handle to the trunk opening to keep the lid open.

CONTINUED

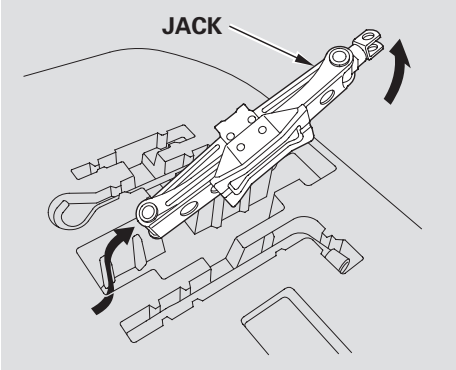
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing a Flat Tire



4. Take the tool kit case out of the trunk.

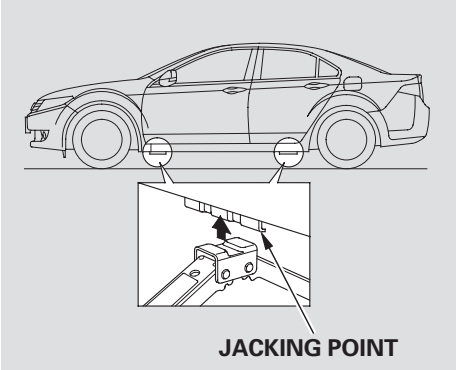
5. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tire out of its well.



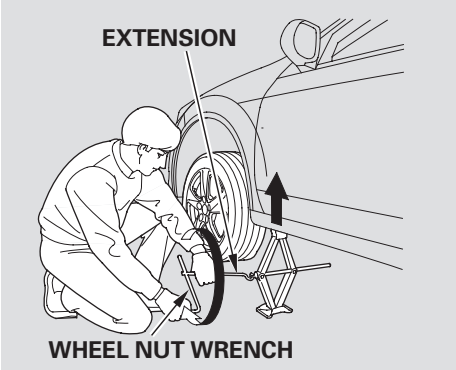
6. Take the jack out of the tool kit case.

7. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

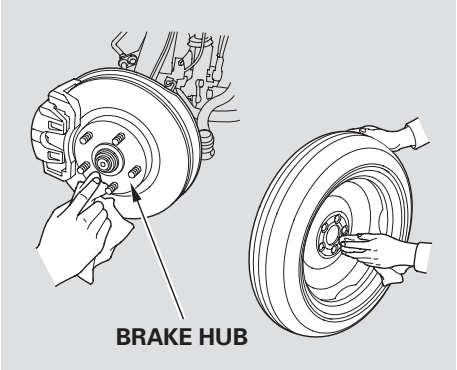


8. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



9. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.

10. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tire. Handle the wheel nuts carefully; they may be hot from driving. Place the flat tire on the ground with the outside surface facing up.



11. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

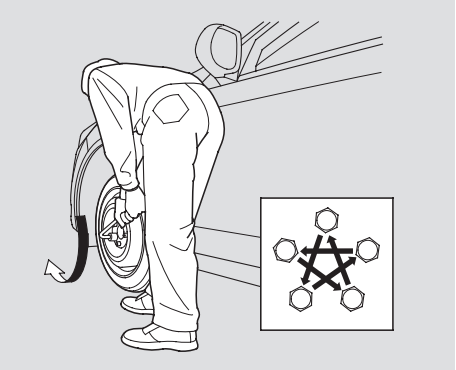
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

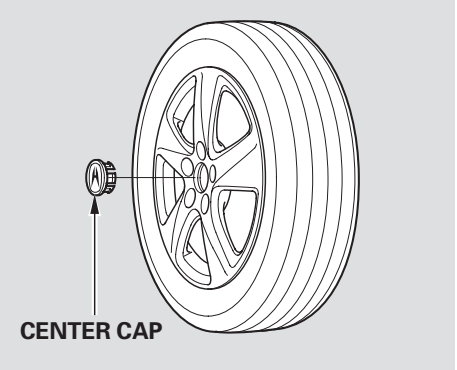
Changing a Flat Tire

12. Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.

13. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.

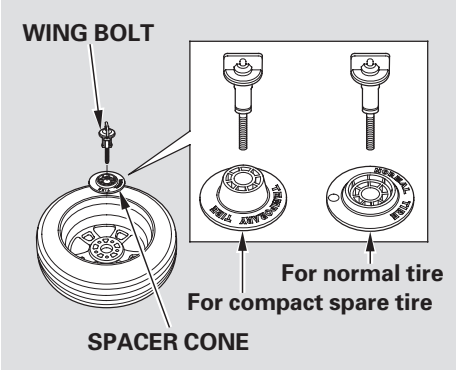


14. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.
    Tighten the wheel nuts to:
    80 lbf·ft (108 N·m , 11 kgf·m)



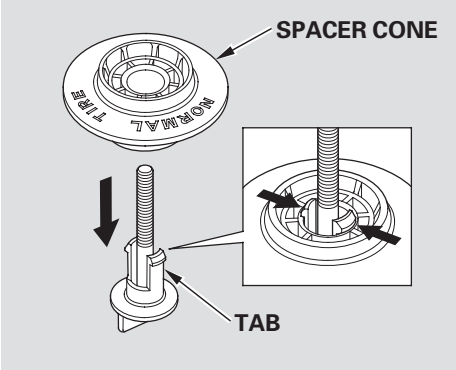
15. Remove the center cap before storing the flat tire in the trunk well.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



16. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.

17. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.



To remove the spacer cone, squeeze the tabs on the wing bolt to disengage it from the center of the spacer cone, then pull the bolt downward.

To install the wing bolt to the spacer cone, reverse this procedure.

18. Secure the flat tire by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.

19. Store the jack and tools in the tool kit case. Place the tool kit case in the flat tire.

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

20. Store the center cap in the trunk. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged. Unhook the handle from the trunk opening and lower the trunk floor lid, then close the trunk lid.

21. Your vehicle's original tire has a tire pressure monitoring system sensor. To replace a tire, refer to **Changing a Tire with TPMS** (see page 390).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. If you have a manual transmission, the clutch pedal must be pushed all the way to the floor or the starter will not operate. With an automatic transmission, it must be in Park or neutral.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 466 .
- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 482 .

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery connections (see page 453). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 466).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Starter Operates Normally
In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using a properly coded key? An improperly coded key will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 121).
- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 367.
- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the low fuel indicator may not be working.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 475).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 482.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting

Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start your vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

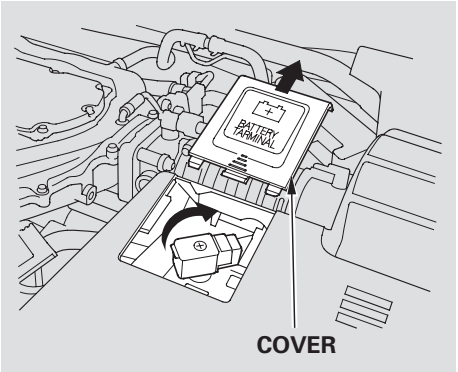
To jump start your vehicle:

1. Open the hood, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or frozen, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

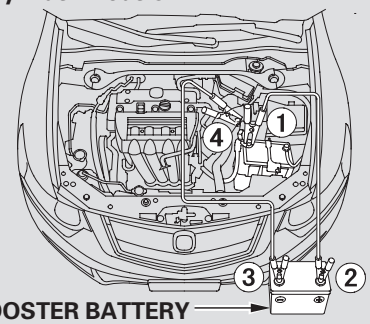
2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: climate control, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in neutral (manual) or Park (automatic), and set the parking brake.



3. *6-cylinder models*
   Slide out the battery terminal cover. The battery terminal cover can be removed without removing the left side engine compartment cover.

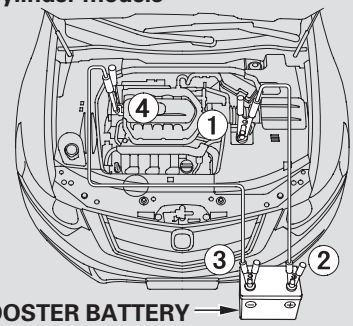
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4-cylinder models

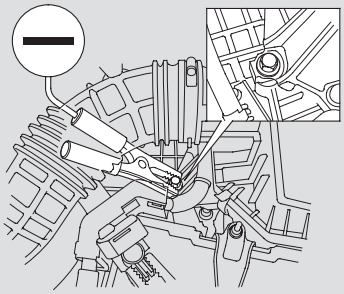


The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

6-cylinder models



4. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.



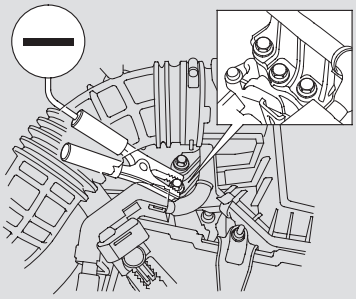
4-cylinder models with automatic transmission

5. *4-cylinder models*
   Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (−) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the engine mounting bolt (automatic) or the transmission mounting bolt (manual), as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

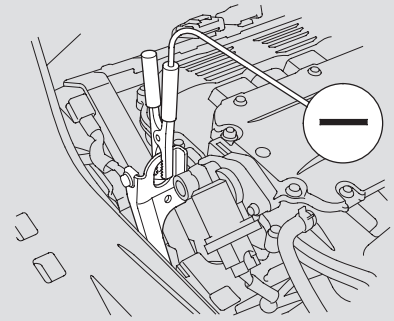
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting



4-cylinder models with manual transmission



6-cylinder models

6-cylinder models
Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (−) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the engine hanger as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

6. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.

7. Start the vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

8. Once your vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery.

9. *6-cylinder models*
   Install the battery terminal cover.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The pointer of the vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.).

You will also see a "WATER TEMP HOT" message on the multi-information display (see page 69).

If your vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood.

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to the engine.

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral (manual) or Park (automatic), and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.
4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 482).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Overheats

6. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank (see page 353). Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.

7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer reaches the middle of the temperature gauge or lower before checking the radiator.

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.

9. Start the engine, and set the temperature to maximum heat (climate control to AUTO at " Hi "). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.

10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 482).

11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Oil Pressure Indicator, Charging System Indicator

Low Oil Pressure Indicator

This indicator should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible, and you should take immediate action.

You will also see a "CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL" message on the multi-information display when this indicator comes on.

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the hood, and check the oil level (see page 352). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 415).
4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 482).

Charging System Indicator

If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

You will also see a "CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 61).

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If this indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your vehicle, the indicator coming on could be due to a loose or missing fuel fill cap. Tighten the cap until it clicks at least once. Tightening the cap will not turn the indicator off immediately; it can take several days of normal driving.

If the indicator comes on repeatedly, even though it may turn off as you continue driving, have your vehicle checked by the dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on with the "D" indicator.

You will also see a "CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 60).

Readiness Code

Your vehicle has certain "readiness codes" that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If the battery in your vehicle has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes may be erased. It can take several days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for an emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to **Emissions Testing** for more information (see page 503).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake System Indicator

U.S. Canada

The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and as a reminder to check the parking brake. It will stay on if you do not fully release the parking brake.

If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 427).

You will also see a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” message on the multi-information display.

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system’s dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

You will also see a “CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display when this indicator comes on.

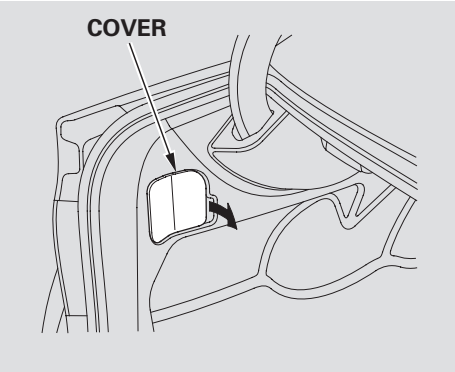
Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed and repaired as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 482).

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

If the ABS indicator and the VSA system indicator come on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

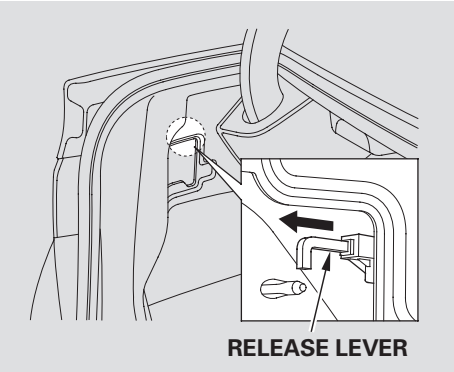
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually



If there is a problem with the power door lock system and you cannot unlock the driver's door, use the release lever behind the left side cover in the trunk.

If you also cannot unlock the trunk due to the power door lock system malfunction, see page 132 and open the trunk manually.

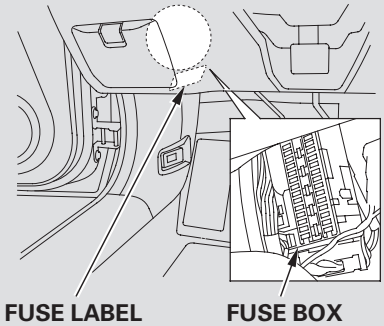


To open the fuel fill door, pull the release lever rearward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses

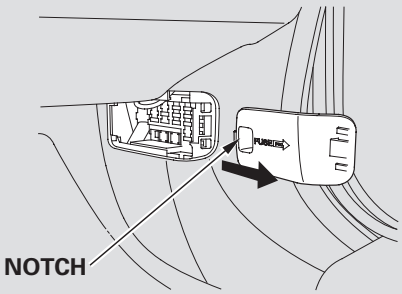
INTERIOR (Driver's side)



The vehicle's fuses are contained in three fuse boxes.

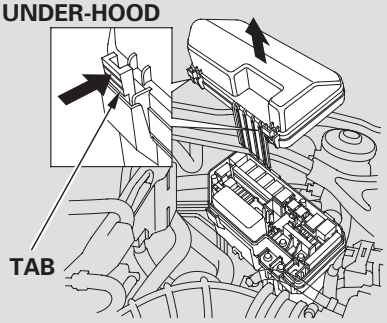
The driver's side interior fuse box is under the dashboard on the driver's side. The fuse label is attached to the side panel.

INTERIOR (Passenger's side)



The passenger's side interior fuse box is on the lower passenger's side panel. To remove the fuse box lid, put your finger in the notch on the lid, and pull it upward slightly, then pull it toward you and take it out of its hinges.

UNDER-HOOD



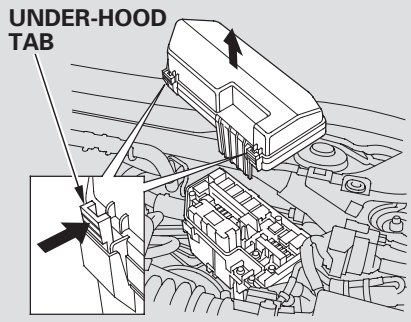
4-cylinder models

The under-hood fuse box is on the driver's side. To open it, push the tabs as shown.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses



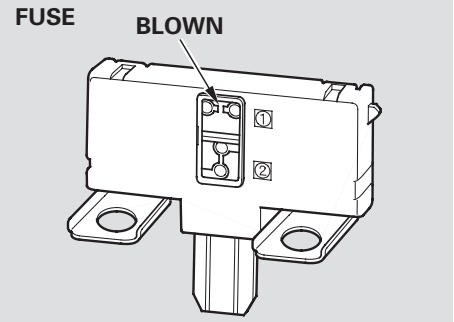
6-cylinder models

Checking and Replacing Fuses

If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 479 , 480 and 481 , or the diagram on the fuse box lid or the fuse label, which fuse or fuses control that component. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is not the cause. Replace any blown fuses and check if the device works.

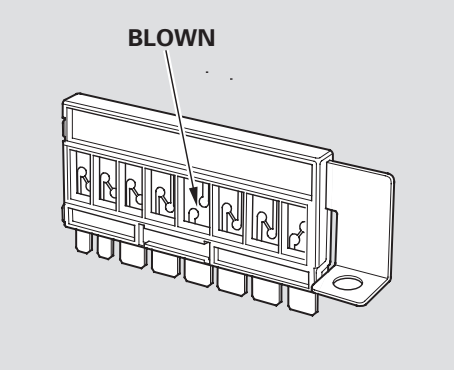
1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.

2. On the under-hood and passenger's side interior fuse boxes, remove the cover from each fuse box.

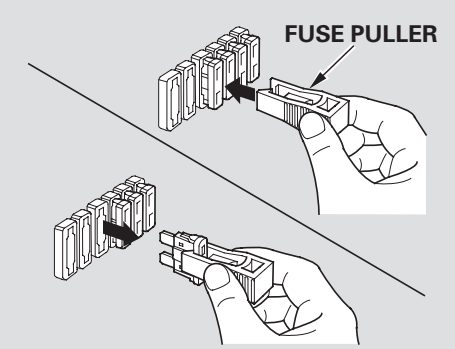


3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-hood fuse box by looking at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.

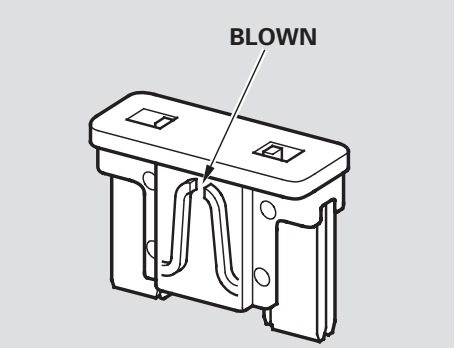
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Also check the combined fuse box in the under-hood fuse box.



4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse boxes by pulling out each one with the fuse puller provided on the back of the under-hood fuse box cover.

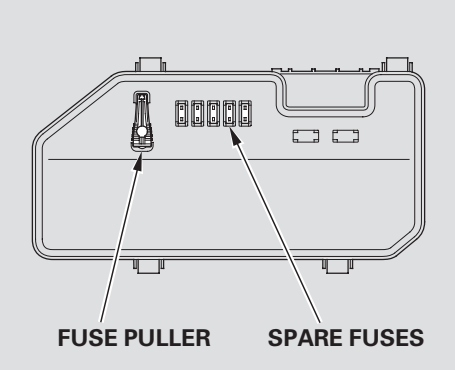


5. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses



Your vehicle has spare fuses on the back of the under-hood fuse box cover.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate that anything is wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

NOTICE

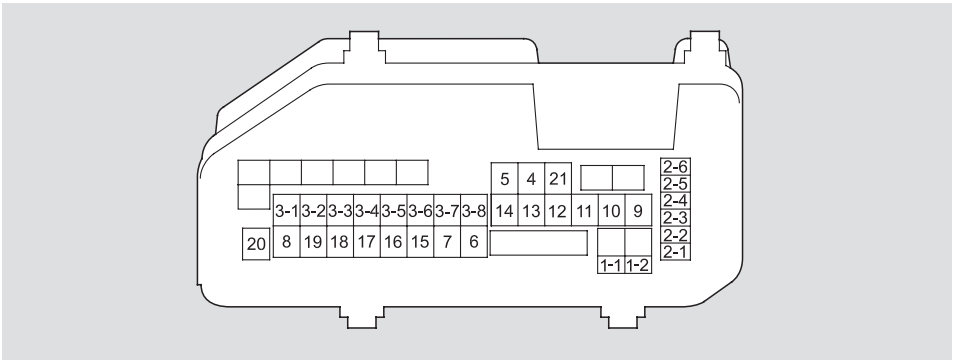
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1 − 1	100 A*1 120 A*2	Battery
1 − 2	40 A	Passenger's Side Fuse Box
2 − 1	70 A	EPS
2 − 2	(40 A)	Passenger's Side Fuse Box
2 − 3	30 A	ABS/VSA FSR
2 − 4	—	Not Used
2 − 5	30 A	ABS/VSA Motor
2 − 6	—	Not Used

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
3 − 1*1	30 A	Wiper Motor
3 − 1*2	30 A	Sub Fan Motor
3 − 2*1	—	Not Used
3 − 2*2	30 A	Wiper Motor
3 − 3	30 A	Main Fan Motor
3 − 4	30 A	Driver's Side Light Main
3 − 5	(60 A)	Driver's Side Fuse Box
3 − 6	30 A	Passenger's Side Light Main
3 − 7	(40 A)	Driver's Side Fuse Box

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
3 − 8	50 A	IG Main
4	40 A	Rear Defroster
5*1	20 A	Sub Fan Motor
5*2	—	Not Used
6	—	Not Used
7	—	Not Used
8	40 A	Heater Motor
9	15 A	Hazard
10	10 A	Horn
11	—	Not Used
12	15 A	Stop
13	15 A	IG Coil
14	15 A	FI Sub
15	10 A	Back Up
16	7.5 A	Interior Lights
17	15 A	FI Main
18	15 A	DBW
19*1	—	Not Used
19*2	7.5 A	Back Up FI ECU
20	7.5 A	MG Clutch
21	7.5 A	Engine Oil Level*1, Fan RLY*2

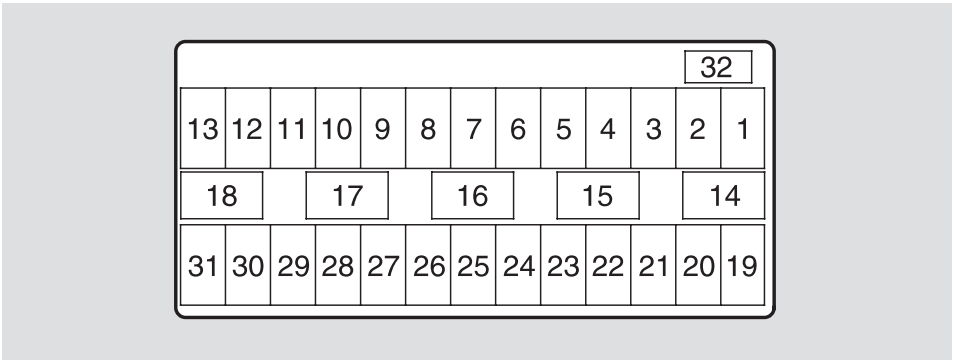
*1: 4-cylinder models
*2: 6-cylinder models

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX (Driver's Side)



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	—	Not Used
2	(7.5 A)	Seat Memory
3	15 A	Washer
4	10 A	Wiper
5	7.5 A	Meter
6	7.5 A	ABS/VSA
7	15 A	ACG
8	(7.5 A)	STS*1, Starter DIAG*2

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
9	20 A	Fuel Pump
10	(10 A)	VB SOL*3
11	10 A	SRS
12	7.5 A	ODS (Occupant Detection System)
13	(7.5 A)	IG1*1, STS*2
14	—	Not Used
15	7.5 A	Daytime Running Lights

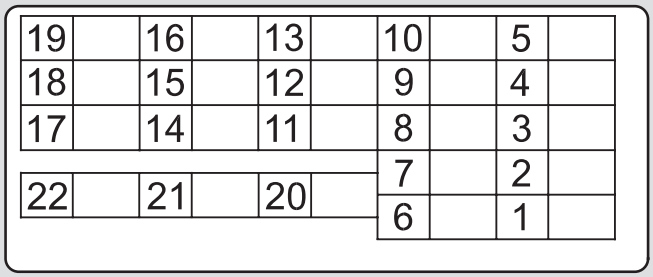
No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
16	7.5 A	A/C
17	7.5 A	Accessory, Key, Lock
18	7.5 A	Accessory
19	(20 A)	Driver's Power Seat Sliding
20	(20 A)	Moonroof
21	(20 A)	Driver's Power Seat Reclining
22	20 A	Rear Driver's Side Power Window
23	20 A	Front Accessory Power Socket
24	20 A	Driver's Power Window
25	15 A	Driver's Side Door Lock
26	(10 A)	Left Front Fog Light*3
27	10 A	Left Side Small Lights (Exterior)
28	10 A	Left Headlight High Beam
29	10 A	TPMS
30	15 A	Left Headlight Low Beam
31	—	Not Used
32	(7.5 A)	Engine Oil Level*3

*1 : 4-cylinder models
*2 : 6-cylinder models
*3 : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX (Passenger's Side)



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	10 A	Right Headlight High Beam
2	10 A	Right Side Small Lights (Exterior)
3	(10 A)	Right Front Fog Light*
4	15 A	Right Headlight Low Beam
5	—	Not Used
6	7.5 A	Interior Lights
7	—	Not Used
8	(20 A)	Passenger's Side Power Seat Reclining

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
9	(20 A)	Passenger's Side Power Seat Sliding
10	10 A	Right Side Door Lock
11	20 A	Rear Passenger's Side Power Window
12	20 A	Console Accessory Power Socket
13	20 A	Front Passenger's Power Window
14	—	Not Used

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
15	(20 A)	Premium AMP*
16	—	Not Used
17	—	Not Used
18	—	Not Used
19	(20 A)	Seat Heater
20	—	Not Used
21	—	Not Used
22	—	Not Used

∗ : If equipped

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

There are two ways to tow your vehicle:

Flat-bed Equipment — The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

Wheel-lift Equipment — The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

If, due to damage, your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do this:

Manual transmission:
- Shift the transmission to neutral.
- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.

Automatic transmission:
- Start the engine.
- Shift to D position and hold for 5 seconds, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.
- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.

NOTICE

Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 50 miles (80 km), and keep the speed below 35 mph (55 km/h).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE

The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2010 TSX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle and the locations of the identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's tires and emissions control systems.

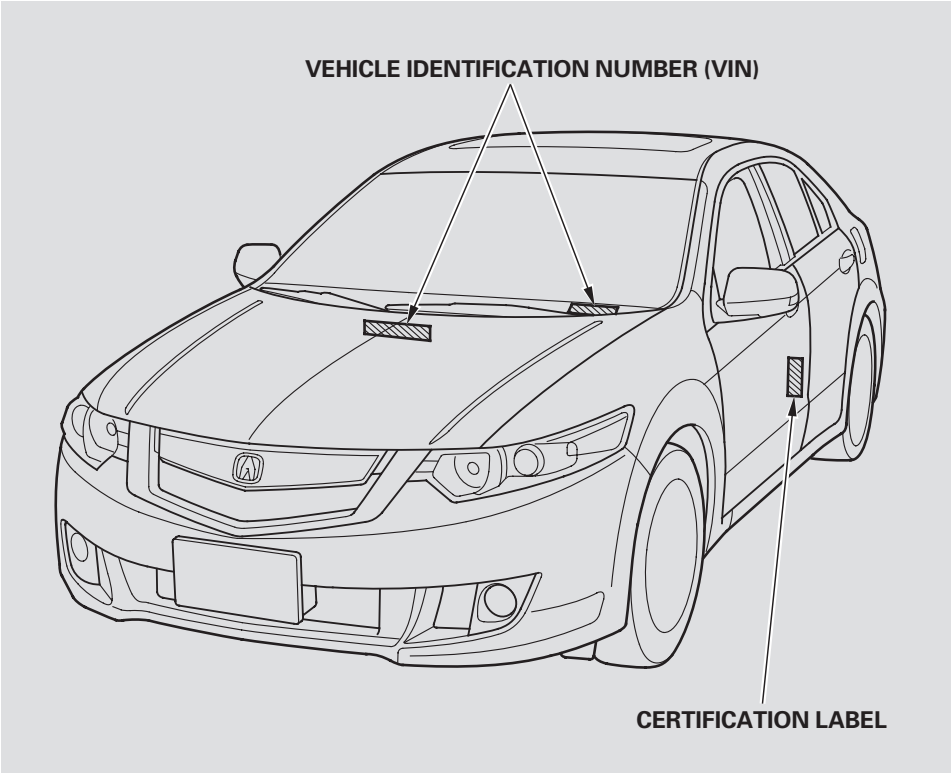
Identification Numbers 486
Specifications
(4-cylinder models) 488
Specifications
(6-cylinder models) 491
DOT Tire Quality Grading
(U. S. Vehicles) 494
Tire Labeling 496
Tire Pressure Monitoring System
(TPMS) — Required Federal
Explanation 498
Emissions Controls 500
Three Way Catalytic Converter ... 502
Emissions Testing 503

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers in various places.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your dealer uses to register your vehicle for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver's side. It is also on the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the certification label.



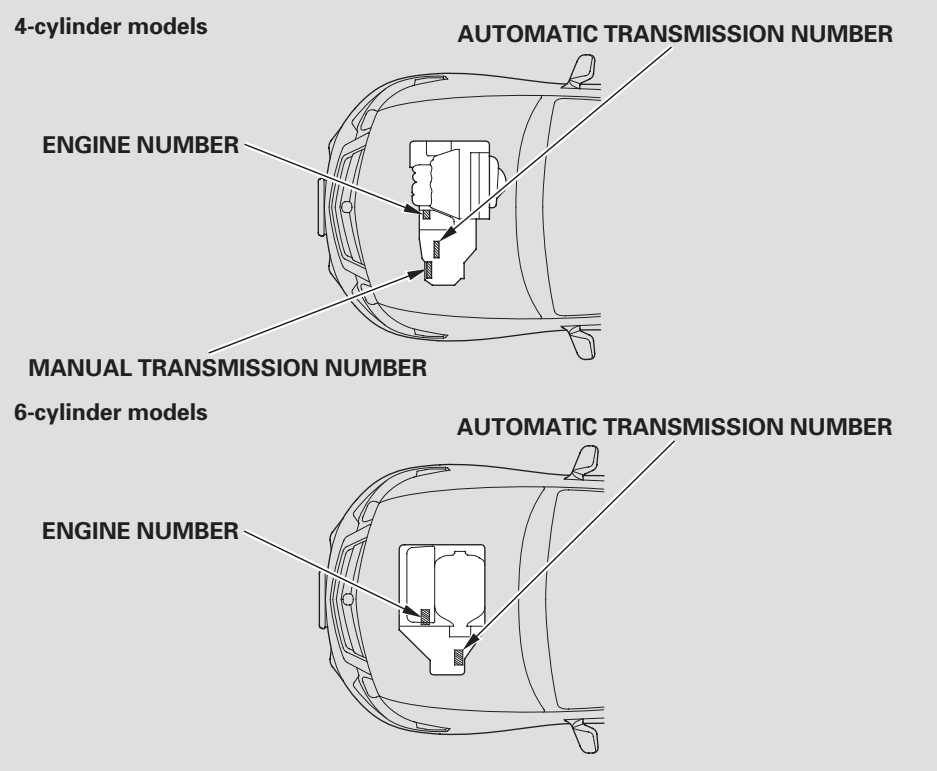
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Identification Numbers

The engine number is stamped into the front of the engine block.

6-cylinder models
You can see the engine number through the window on the front bulkhead cover.

The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications (4-cylinder Models)

Dimensions

Length		185.6 in (4,715 mm)
Width		72.4 in (1,840 mm)
Height		56.7 in (1,440 mm) 56.7 in (1,439 mm) *
Wheelbase		106.5 in (2,705 mm)
Track	Front	62.2 in (1,580 mm)
	Rear	62.2 in (1,580 mm)

* : Canadian TSX

Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Seating Capacities

Total	5
Front	2
Rear	3

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	15.8－17.6 oz (450－500 g)
Lubricant type	SP-10

Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 18.5 US gal (70 ℓ)

Capacities

Engine coolant	Change*1	
	Manual	1.64 US gal (6.2 ℓ)
	Automatic	1.61 US gal (6.1 ℓ)
	Total	
	Manual	2.19 US gal (8.3 ℓ)
	Automatic	2.17 US gal (8.2 ℓ)
Engine oil	Change*2	
	Including filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Without filter	4.0 US qt (3.8 ℓ)
	Total	5.4 US qt (5.1 ℓ)
Manual transmission fluid	Change	2.0 US qt (1.9 ℓ)
	Total	2.1 US qt (2.0 ℓ)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Total	6.9 US qt (6.5 ℓ)
Windshield washer reservoir	U.S. Models	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Canada Models	4.8 US qt (4.5 ℓ)

*1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine
Reserve tank capacity: 0.196 US gal (0.74 ℓ)

*2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications (4-cylinder Models)

Battery

Capacity	12 V — 36 AH/5 HR 12 V — 45 AH/20 HR 12 V — 47 AH/20 HR

Fuses

Interior	Driver's side	See page 480 or the fuse label attached on the side panel.
	Passenger's side	See page 481 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door.
Under-hood		See page 479 or the fuse box cover.

Engine

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke, DOHC i-VTEC 4-cylinder, gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.43 x 3.90 in (87.0 x 99.0 mm)
Displacement	144 cu-in (2,354 cm^3)
Compression ratio	11.0 : 1
Spark plugs	NGK: ILZKR7B-11S DENSO: SXU22HCR11S

Lights

Headlights	High	12 V — 60 W (HB3)
	Low	12 V — 35 W (D2S) *1 12 V — 55 W (H1) *2
Fog lights*3		12 V — 55 W (H11)
Front turn signal/ Front parking lights/ Side marker lights		12 V — 21/5 W
Rear turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W
Stop/Taillights		12 V — 21/5 W
High-mount brake light		12 V — 21 W
Back-up lights		12 V — 21 W
Rear side marker lights		12 V — 3 CP
License plate lights		12 V — 5 W
Ceiling light		12 V — 8 W
Spotlights		12 V — 8 W
Trunk light		12 V — 5 W
Door courtesy lights		12 V — 3.8 W
Vanity mirror lights		12 V — 2 W

*1 : On vehicles with high voltage discharge type headlights, replacement of a headlight bulb should be done by your dealer.
*2 : Canadian TSX
*3 : If equipped

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications (4-cylinder Models)

Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	0.08 in (2.0 mm)
Camber	Front	0°
	Rear	−1°
Caster	Front	3°48′

Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P225/50R17 93V
	Spare	T135/80D16 101M
Pressure	Front/Rear	33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm²)
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications (6-cylinder Models)

Dimensions

Length		185.6 in (4,715 mm)
Width		72.4 in (1,840 mm)
Height		56.7 in (1,440 mm)
Wheelbase		106.5 in (2,705 mm)
Track	Front	62.24 in (1,580.8 mm)
	Rear	62.27 in (1,581.6 mm)

Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Seating Capacities

Total	5
Front	2
Rear	3

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	15.8—17.6 oz (450—500 g)
Lubricant type	SP-10

Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 18.5 US gal (70 ℓ)

Capacities

Engine coolant	Change*1	1.74 US gal (6.6 ℓ)
	Total	2.27 US gal (8.6 ℓ)
Engine oil	Change*2	
	Including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)
	Without filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Total	5.3 US qt (5.0 ℓ)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	3.5 US qt (3.3 ℓ)
	Total	7.9 US qt (7.5 ℓ)
Windshield washer reservoir	U.S. Models	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Canada Models	4.8 US qt (4.5 ℓ)

*1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine
Reserve tank capacity: 0.196 US gal (0.74 ℓ)
*2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications (6-cylinder Models)

Battery

Capacity	12 V — 55 AH/5 HR 12 V — 72 AH/20 HR

Fuses

Interior	Driver's side	See page 480 or the fuse label attached on the side panel.
	Passenger's side	See page 481 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door.
Under-hood		See page 479 or the fuse box cover.

Engine

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke, SOHC VTEC 6-cylinder (V6), gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.50 x 3.66 in (89.0 x 93.0 mm)
Displacement	212 cu-in (3,471 cm^3)
Compression ratio	11.2 : 1
Spark plugs	NGK: ILZKR7B11 DENSO: SXU22HCR11

Lights

Headlights	High	12 V — 60 W (HB3)
	Low	12 V — 35 W (D2S) *
Fog lights		12 V — 55 W (H11)
Front turn signal/ Front parking lights/ Side marker lights		12 V — 21/5 W
Rear turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W
Stop/Taillights		12 V — 21/5 W
High-mount brake light		12 V — 21 W
Back-up lights		12 V — 21 W
Rear side marker lights		12 V — 3 CP
License plate lights		12 V — 5 W
Ceiling light		12 V — 8 W
Spotlights		12 V — 8 W
Trunk light		12 V — 5 W
Door courtesy lights		12 V — 3.8 W
Vanity mirror lights		12 V — 2 W

* : On vehicles with high voltage discharge type headlights, replacement of a headlight bulb should be done by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications (6-cylinder Models)

Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	0.08 in (2.0 mm)
Camber	Front	−0°03′
	Rear	−1°12′
Caster	Front	3°52′

Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P235/45R18 94V
	Spare	T135/80D16 101M
Pressure	Front/Rear	33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm²)
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading
Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

Temperature
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

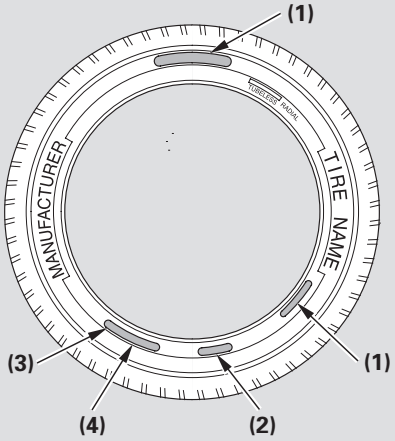
Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Labeling

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

TIRE LABELING EXAMPLE



(1) Tire Size
(2) Tire Identification Number (TIN)
(3) Maximum Tire Pressure
(4) Maximum Tire Load

Tire Size

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P235/45R18 94V

P — Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

235 — Tire width in millimeters.

45 — Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R — Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

18 — Rim diameter in inches.

94 — Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

V — Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Labeling

Tire Identification Number (TIN)
The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the following example. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

DOT B97R FW6X 2202

DOT —This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R —Manufacturer's identification mark.

FW6X —Tire type code.

2202 —Date of manufacture.
- First 2 — Week
- Last 2 — Year

Glossary of Tire Terminology
Cold Tire Pressure — The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Load Rating — Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

Maximum Inflation Pressure — The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

Maximum Load Rating — Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Recommended Inflation Pressure — The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

Treadwear Indicators (TWI) — Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — Required Federal Explanation

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Controls

The burning of gasoline in your vehicle's engine produces several by-products. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx), and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

The Clean Air Act
The United States Clean Air Act* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and what to do to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work.

* In Canada, Acura vehicles comply with the Canadian emission requirements, as specified in an agreement with Environment Canada, at the time they are manufactured.

Crankcase Emissions Control System
Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

Evaporative Emissions Control System
As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery
The onboard refueling vapor recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exhaust Emissions Controls

The exhaust emissions controls include three or four systems: PGM-FI, ignition timing control, exhaust gas recirculation (6-cylinder models), and three way catalytic converter. These systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that come out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

PGM-FI System

The PGM-FI system uses sequential multiport fuel injection. It has three subsystems: air intake, engine control, and fuel control. The powertrain control module (PCM) in automatic transmission vehicles or the engine control module (ECM) in manual transmission vehicles uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

Ignition Timing Control System

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NOx produced.

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System

6-cylinder models

The exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NOx produced when the fuel is burned.

Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NOx in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO_2), nitrogen (N_2), and water vapor.

Replacement Parts

The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Acura replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your vehicle.

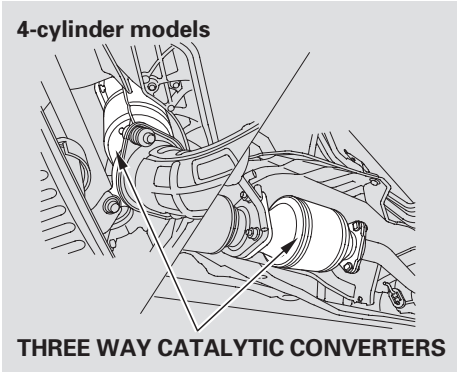
The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your vehicle. Read your warranty manual for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converter contains precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converter is referred to as a three-way catalyst, since it acts on HC, CO, and NOx. A replacement unit must be an original Acura part or its equivalent.

The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTERS

A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's three way catalytic converter.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.
- Keep the engine well maintained.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, backfiring, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Testing of Readiness Codes
If you take your vehicle for an emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain "readiness codes" that must be set in the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle retested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for retesting by doing the following.

1. Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
2. Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95°F (4° and 35°C).
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in Park (automatic) or neutral (manual). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).
6. Without touching the accelerator pedal, let the engine idle for 20 seconds.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Testing

7. Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D (automatic) or 5th (manual). Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 30 minutes.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warranty and Client Relations

Client Service Information 506
Warranty Coverages 507
Reporting Safety Defects
(U.S. Vehicles) 508
Authorized Manuals 509

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Client Service Information

Acura dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The service manager or general manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Acura Client Services.

U.S. Owners:
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Acura Client Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746

Tel: (800) 382-2238

Canadian Owners:
Acura Client Services
Honda Canada Inc.
Visit www.acura.ca for contact information

Tel: 1-888-9-ACURA-9
Fax: Toll-free (877) 939-0909

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Vortex Motor Corp.
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816

Tel: (787) 620-7546

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (see page 486)
- Name and address of the dealer who services your vehicle
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warranty Coverages

U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty — covers your new vehicle, except for the battery, emissions control systems, and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty — these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Original Equipment Battery Limited Warranty — this warranty gives up to 100% credit toward a replacement battery.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty — a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty — all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

Accessory Limited Warranty — Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty manual for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty — covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty — provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty — provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2010 Acura warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

Canadian Owners

Please refer to the 2010 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590.
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Authorized Manuals

Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)

The publications shown below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order by phone or online:

- Call Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356 (credit card orders only)
- Go online at *www. helminc. com*

If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

Publication Form Number	Form Description
61TL201	2009-2010 Acura TSX Service Manual
61TP100	2010 Acura TSX V6 Service Manual
61TL201EL	2009-2010 Acura TSX Electrical Troubleshooting Manual
61TP100EL	2010 Acura TSX V6 Electrical Troubleshooting Manual
61TL230	2009-2010 Acura TSX Body Repair Manual
31TL1610	2010 Acura TSX Owner's Manual
31TL1810	2010 Acura TSX Navigation System Owner's Manual
31TL1M10	2010 Acura TSX Maintenance Journal
31TL1Q10	2010 Acura TSX Advanced Technology Guide
ACU-R	Order Form for Previous Years- Indicate Year and Model Desired

Service Manual:
Covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the journeyman mechanic, but it is simple enough for most mechanically inclined owners to understand.

Electrical Troubleshooting Manual:
Complements the Service Manual by providing in-depth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

Body Repair Manual:
Describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

A

AAC 210, 271
Accessories..... 357
ACCESSORY
(Ignition Key Position) 122
Accessory Power Sockets..... 156
Active Head Restraints 137
AcuraLink® (U.S. only) 328
Additives, Engine Oil..... 416
Advanced Airbags..... 27
Airbag (SRS) 9, 23
Airbag System Components..... 23
Air Conditioning System..... 166
Usage 167
Air Pressure, Tires..... 447, 490, 493
Antifreeze 420
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)
Indicator..... 62, 384
Operation..... 384
Anti-theft, Audio System..... 288
Anti-theft Steering Column
Lock..... 122
Audio System 174
Auto Door Locking/
Unlocking 100, 106
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.... 21
Automatic Speed Control..... 298
Automatic Transmission..... 373
Capacity, Fluid 488, 491
Paddle Shifters..... 377
Shifting..... 373
Shift Lever Position
Indicators..... 373
Shift Lever Positions 374
Shift Lock Release..... 375
Auxiliary Input Jack..... 287

B

Battery
Charging System
Indicator..... 61, 471
Jump Starting 466
Maintenance..... 453
Specifications 489, 492
Before Driving 345
Belts, Seat..... 8, 19
Beverage Holders..... 155
Bluetooth® Audio 217, 279
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 304
Booster Seats 52
Brakes
Anti-lock System (ABS) 384
Break-in, New Linings 346
Bulb Replacement 435
Fluid 427
Parking..... 153
System Indicator..... 61, 473
Wear Indicators 383
Braking System..... 383
Break-in, New Vehicle 346
Brightness Control,
Instruments 115
Bulb Replacement
Back-up Lights 436
Brake Lights..... 435
Fog Lights 439
Front Parking Lights..... 434
Headlights 429
High-mount Brake Light 438
Rear Lights..... 435, 436
Specifications 489, 492
Turn Signal Lights..... 434, 435
Bulbs, Halogen..... 429, 439

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

C

Capacities Chart 488, 491
Carbon Monoxide Hazard 55
Carrying Cargo 359
CAUTION, Explanation of iii
CD Care 256
CD Changer 244
CD Player 189
Certification Label 486
Ceiling Light 161
Chains 452
Changing a Flat Tire 459
Changing Oil
  How to 417
  When to 403
Charging System Indicator 61, 471
Checklist, Before Driving 366
Child Safety 36
  Booster Seats 52
  Child Seats 43, 44
  Important Safety Reminders 36-54
  Infants 41
  Larger Children 51
  LATCH 46
  Risks with Airbags 37
  Small Children 42
  Tether 50
  Warning Labels 56
  Where Should a Child Sit 37
Child Seats 36
  LATCH 46
  Tether Anchorage Points 50
Childproof Door Locks 125
Cleaning the Seat Belts 441
Client Service Information 506
Climate Control System 166
Clock 289
Clutch Fluid 428
CO in the Exhaust 55, 500
Cold Weather, Starting in 367, 368
Compact Spare 458
Compass 294
Console Compartment 156
Consumer Information 506
Controls, Instruments and 57
Coolant
  Adding 420
  Checking 353
  Proper Solution 420
  Temperature Gauge 69
Courtesy Lights 162
Crankcase Emissions Control System 500
Cruise Control Indicator 66
Cruise Control Operation 298
Customer Service 506
Customized Settings 81

D

DANGER, Explanation of iii
Dashboard 3, 58
Daytime Running Lights 114
Dead Battery 466
Defects, Reporting Safety 508
Defogger, Rear Window 117
Defrosting the Windows 170
Dimensions 488, 491
Dimming the Headlights 111
Dipstick
  Automatic Transmission 423
  Engine Oil 352
Directional Signals 111
Disc Brake Wear Indicators 383
Disposal of Used Oil 419

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Doors
Auto Door Lock 100, 124
Auto Door Unlock 106, 124
Childproof Door Locks 125
Locking and Unlocking..... 124
DOT Tire Quality Grading 494
Downshifting, Manual Transmission..... 370
Driver and Passenger Safety..... 5
Driving 365
Economy 354
Driving Position Memory System..... 142
Dual Temperature Control..... 171
Dust and Pollen Filter 442

E

Economy, Fuel 354
Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator..... 65
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) System..... 392
Emergencies..... 457
Battery, Jump Starting 466
Brake System Indicator 473
Changing a Flat Tire 459
Charging System Indicator 471
Checking the Fuses..... 475
Fuel Fill Door, Opening Manually 474
Hazard Warning Flashers 117
Jump Starting 466
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 471
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 472
Overheated Engine 469
Towing 482
Emergency Brake..... 153
Emergency Flashers 117
Emergency Towing 482
Emissions Controls..... 500
Emissions Testing 503
Engine
4-cylinder Engine 489
6-cylinder Engine 492
Adding Engine Coolant..... 420
Coolant Temperature Gauge 69
If It Won't Start 464
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 472
Oil Life Display 403
Oil Pressure Indicator 471
Oil, What Kind to Use 415
Overheating..... 469
Specifications 489, 492
Speed Limiter..... 371, 375
Starting 367, 368
Engine Compartment Covers..... 414
Engine Speed Limiter 371, 375
Ethanol in Gasoline 347
Evaporative Emissions Controls.. 500
Exhaust Fumes 55
Expectant Mothers, Use of Seat Belts by 17

F

Fan, Interior..... 169
Features..... 165
Filling the Fuel Tank..... 347
Filters
Dust and Pollen 442
Oil 417
Flashers, Hazard Warning..... 117
Flat Tire, Changing a 459
Floor Mats 441

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Fluids
Automatic Transmission..... 423
Brake..... 427
Clutch..... 428
Manual Transmission 426
Windshield Washer..... 110, 423
Fog Lights 115
Folding Rear Seats..... 138
Four-way Flashers 117
Front Airbags 9, 25
Fuel..... 346
Fill Door and Cap..... 347
Gauge 68
Low Fuel Indicator 67
Octane Requirement 346
Oxygenated 347
Tank, Refueling 347
Tighten Fuel Cap Message 349
Fuel Economy 354
Fuses, Checking the..... 475

G

Gas Mileage, Improving 354, 355
Gasoline 346
Gauge 68
Low Fuel Indicator 67
Octane Requirement 346
Tank, Refueling 347
Gas Station Procedures..... 347
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature 69
Fuel..... 68
Gearshift Lever Positions
Automatic Transmission..... 373
Manual Transmission 370
Glove Box 157
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)..... 361, 395

H

Halogen Headlight Bulbs..... 429
HandsFreeLink® 304
Hazard Warning Flashers..... 117
Headlights 111
Aiming..... 429
Automatic Lighting Off..... 113
Automatic Lighting On 112
Daytime Running Lights 114
High Beam Indicator..... 66
Lights On Indicator 66
Reminder Chime..... 111
Replacing Halogen Bulbs 429, 439
Turning on 111
Head Restraints 14, 135
Heated Mirrors 146
Heaters, Seat 141
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver..... 301
Hood, Opening and Closing 350
Horn 4, 109
Hydraulic Clutch..... 428

I

Identification Number, Vehicle.... 486
Ignition
Keys..... 119
Switch..... 122
Timing Control System..... 501
Immobilizer System..... 121
Important Safety Precautions 6

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Indicators, Messages (MID) 60, 79
ABS (Anti-lock Brake) 62
Brake (Parking and Brake System) 61, 473
Charging System 61, 471
Cruise Control 66
Cruise Main 66
Door/Trunk Open 11, 65
DRL (Daytime Running Lights) 114
EPS (Electric Power Steering) .. 65
Fog Light 66
High Beam 66
High Temperature (Coolant) 69
Key (Immobilizer System) 61
Lights On 66
Low Fuel 67
Low Oil Pressure 60, 471
Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS 64, 386
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 472
Security System 67
Side Airbag Off 62
Seat Belt 19, 60
SRS 31, 62
Starting System 369
System Message 67
TPMS 386, 389
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 64
VSA Activation 63
VSA System 63
Indicators, Instrument Panel 60
Infant Restraint 41
Infant Seats 41
Tether Anchorage Points 50
Inflation, Proper Tire 447, 490, 493
INFO Buttons 71
Inside Mirror 145
Inspection, Tire 448
Installing a Child Seat 44
Tether Anchorage Points 50
Using LATCH 46
Instrument Panel 59
Instrument Panel Brightness 115
Instruments and Controls 57
Interface Dial 222
Interior Lights 161
Introduction i
iPod® 199, 259

J

Jacking up the Vehicle 461
Jack, Tire 460
Jump Starting 466

K

Keys 119

L

Label, Certification 486
Lane Change, Signaling 111
Language Selection 87
Lap/Shoulder Belts 15, 20
LATCH System 46
Lights
Bulb Replacement 429
Indicator 59
Parking 111
Turn Signal 111
Load Limits 360
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) 122

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Locks
- Anti-theft Steering Column 122
- Childproof Door 125
- Fuel Fill Door 347
- Glove Box 157
- Lockout Prevention 125
- Power Door 124
- Trunk 130

Low Coolant Level 353
Low Fuel Indicator 67
Lower Gear, Downshifting to a 370
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 60, 471
Lower Anchors 46
Lubricant Specifications
- Chart 488, 491

Luggage, Storing (Cargo) 359

M

Maintenance 401
- Automated Appointment 334
- Minder 403
- Main Items and Sub Items 408
- Owner's Maintenance Checks 410
- Safety 402

Malfunction Indicator Lamp 472
Manual Transmission 370
Manual Transmission Fluid 426
Memory, Driving Position 142
Meters, Gauges 59, 68
Methanol in Gasoline 347
Mirrors 145
- Adjusting 145
- Heated 146
- Reverse Tilt 146

Modifying Your Vehicle 358
Moonroof 151
MP3 ..... 190, 210, 251, 271
Multi-information Display 70

N

Neutral Gear Position 374
New Vehicle Break-in 346
Normal Shift Speeds 371
NOTICE, Explanation of i
Numbers, Identification 486

O

Octane Requirement, Gasoline 346
Odometer 73
Oil
- Change, How to 417
- Change, When to 403
- Checking Engine 352
- Pressure Indicator 60, 471
- Selecting Proper Viscosity Chart 416

ON (Ignition Key Position) 122
Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery 500
Outside Mirrors 145
Outside Temperature 74
Overheating, Engine 469
Owner's Maintenance Checks 410
Oxygenated Fuels 347

P

Paddle Shifters 377
Panel Brightness Control 115
Park Gear Position 374
Parking 382
Parking Brake 153
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 61, 473

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Lights ... 111
Parking Over Things that Burn ... 382
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ... 33
PGM-FI System ... 501
Pollen Filter ... 442
Power Door Locks ... 124
Power Seat Adjustments ... 134
Power Socket Locations ... 154, 156
Power Windows ... 147
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts ... 17
Protecting Adults and Teens ... 11
  Additional Safety Precautions ... 18
  Advice for Pregnant Women ... 17
Protecting Children ... 36
  General Guidelines ... 36
  Protecting Infants ... 41
  Protecting Larger Children ... 51
  Protecting Small Children ... 42
  Using Child Seats with Tethers ... 50
  Using LATCH ... 46

R

Radiator Overheating ... 469
Radio/Disc Sound System ... 174
Radio Theft Protection ... 288
Radio, XM® ... 183, 236
RDS ... 179, 227
Readiness Code ... 472
Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement ... 435, 436
Rear Seats, Folding ... 138
Rearview Camera ... 344
Rearview Mirror ... 145
Rear Window Defogger ... 117
Reclining the Seat Backs ... 134
Recommended Shift Speeds ... 371
Refueling ... 347
Reminder Indicators ... 60
Remote Audio Controls ... 286
Remote Transmitter ... 126
Replacement Information
  Engine Oil and Filter ... 417
  Fuses ... 475
  Light Bulbs ... 429
  Tires ... 450
  Wiper Blades ... 443
Replacing Seat Belts After a Crash ... 22
Reporting Safety Defects ... 508
Reserve Tank, Engine Coolant ... 353, 420
Restraint, Child ... 36
Reverse Gear Position ... 374
Reverse Lockout ... 372
Rotation, Tire ... 450

S

Safety Belts ... 8, 19
Safety, Reporting Defects ... 508
Safety Features ... 7
  Airbags ... 9
  Seat Belts ... 8
Safety Labels, Location of ... 56
Safety Messages ... iii

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Seat Belts 8, 19
Additional Information 19
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 21
Cleaning 441
Lap/Shoulder Belt 15, 20
Maintenance 22
Reminder Indicator and Beeper 19, 60
System Components 19
Use During Pregnancy 17
Wearing a Lap/Shoulder Belt 20
Seats
Adjusting 134
Folding 138
Heaters 141
Security System 292
Selecting a Child Seat 43
Selector Knob (Disc Player) 175
Sequential Shift Mode 379
Paddle Shifters 377
Serial Number 486
Service Minder 403
Service Manual 509
Service Station Procedures 347
Setting the Clock 289
Shift Lever Position Indicators 373
Shift Lock Release 375
Side Airbags 9, 29
How Your Side Airbags Work 29
How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works 32
Side Curtain Airbags 9, 31
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work 31
Signaling Turns 111
Snow Tires 451
Sound System 174
Spare Tire
Inflating 458
Specifications 490, 493
Spark Plugs 489, 492
Specifications 488, 491
Speed Control 298
Speed Limiter 371, 375
Speedometer 68
Spotlights 161
SRS, Additional Information 23
Additional Safety Precautions 34
Airbag Service 34
Airbag System Components 23
How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works 33
How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works 32
How the SRS Indicator Works 31
How Your Front Airbags Works 25
How Your Side Airbags Works 29
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work 31
SRS Indicator 31, 62
START (Ignition Key Position) 123
Starting the Engine (4-cylinder Models) 367
In Cold Weather at High Altitude 367
With a Dead Battery 466
Starting the Engine (6-cylinder Models) 368
Check Starting System Message 369
In Cold Weather at High Altitude 368
With a Dead Battery 466
Steam Coming from Engine 469

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering Wheel
Adjustments 118
Anti-theft Column Lock 122
Steering Wheel
Buttons 71, 286, 298, 304
Stereo Sound System 174
Sun Visors 159
Sunglasses Holder 158
Supplemental Restraint
System 9, 23
Servicing 34
SRS Indicator 31, 62
System Components 23
SVC (Speed-sensitive
Volume Compensation) 182, 235
Synthetic Oil 416
System Message Indicator 67
System Warning Messages,
Multi-information Display 78

T

Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 457
Technical Descriptions
DOT Tire Quality Grading 494
Emissions Control Systems 500
Three Way Catalytic
Converter 502
Temperature Gauge 69
Temperature, Outside 74
Tether Anchorage Points 50
Theft Protection, Radio 288
Three Way Catalytic Converter ... 502
Tighten Fuel Cap Message 349
Time, Setting the 289
Timing Belt 428
Tire Chains 452
Tire, How to Change a Flat 459
Tire Information 494, 496
Tire Labeling 496
Tire Pressure Monitoring
System (TPMS) 386, 498
Check TPMS 389
Low Tire Pressure/
TPMS Indicator 64, 386
Required Federal
Explanation 498
Tires 446
Air Pressure 447, 490, 493
Chains 452
Checking Wear 448
Compact Spare 458
DOT Tire Quality Grading 494
Inflation 446
Inspection 448
Pressure Monitor 76, 387
Replacing 450
Rotating 450
Service Life 449
Snow 451
Specifications 447, 451
Terminology 497
Tools, Tire Changing 460
Towing
A Trailer 394
Emergency Wrecker 482
Weight Limit 394, 395
Transmission
Checking Fluid Level,
Automatic 423
Checking Fluid Level,
Manual 426
Fluid Selection 425, 426
Identification Number 487
Shifting the Automatic 373
Shifting the Manual 370

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Treadwear 448
Trip Computer 74
Trip Meter 73
Trunk..... 130
  Emergency Opener 132
  Main Switch..... 131
  Opening..... 130
  Open Indicator 11, 65
  Opening Manually 132
Turn Signals 111

U

Unexpected, Taking Care of the..... 457
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 494
Unleaded Gasoline..... 346
USB Adapter
  Cable 201, 211, 261, 272
USB Flash Memory Device.. 208, 269
Used Oil, How to Dispose of 419

V

Vanity Mirror 159
Vehicle Capacity Load 360
Vehicle Dimensions 488, 491
Vehicle Identification Number..... 486
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System..... 392
  VSA Activation Indicator 63, 392
  VSA Off Switch 393
  VSA System Indicator 63, 392
Vehicle Storage 454
Ventilation 169
VIN 486
Viscosity, Oil..... 416
Voice Control System..... 167, 222

W

WARNING, Explanation of iii
Warning Labels, Location of 56
Warranty Coverages 507
Washers, Windshield
  Checking the Fluid Level 422
  Low Level Message..... 423
  Operation 110
Wheels
  Adjusting the Steering 118
  Alignment and Balance..... 449
  Compact Spare 458
  Wrench, Nut..... 460
Windows
  Auto Reverse..... 148
  Operating the Power 147
  Rear, Defogger 117
Windshield
  Cleaning 110
  Defroster 170
  Washers 110
Wipers, Windshield
  Changing Blades..... 443
  Operation 110
WMA..... 190, 210, 251, 271
Worn Tires 448
Wrecker, Emergency Towing..... 482

X

XM® Radio..... 183, 236

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Service Information Summary

Gasoline:
4-cylinder models
Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 91 or higher recommended (see ''Fuel Recommendations'' on page 346).

6-cylinder models
Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 91 or higher required (see ''Fuel Recommendations'' on page 346).

Fuel Tank Capacity:
18.5 US gal (70 ℓ)

Recommended Engine Oil:
API Premium grade 5W-20 detergent oil (see page 415).

Oil change capacity (including filter):
4-cylinder models
4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)

6-cylinder models
4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

Automatic Transmission Fluid:
Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid) (see page 425).

Manual Transmission Fluid:
Acura Manual Transmission Fluid preferred, or an SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 motor oil as a temporary replacement (see page 426).
Capacity:
2.0 US qt (1.9 ℓ)

Brake Fluid:
Acura Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page 427).

Tire Pressure (measured cold):
Front/Rear:
33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm^2)
Compact Spare Tire:
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm^2)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Owner's Identification

OWNER _____

_____

ADDRESS _____
STREET

_____ _____ _____
CITY STATE/PROVINCE/TERRITORY ZIP CODE/ POSTAL CODE

V. I. N. _____

DELIVERY DATE _____
(Date sold to original retail purchaser)

DEALER NAME _____ DEALER NO. _____

ADDRESS _____
STREET

_____ _____ _____
CITY STATE/PROVINCE/TERRITORY ZIP CODE/ POSTAL CODE

OWNER'S SIGNATURE _____

DEALER'S SIGNATURE _____

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of the TSX. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

POUR CLIENTS CANADIEN
AVIS IMPORTANT: Si vous avez besoin d'un Manuel du Conducteur en français, veuillez demander à votre concessionnaire de commander le numéro de pièce 33TL1C10

2010 TSX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine